



## **Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router System Management Configuration Guide, Release 6.0.x**

**First Published:** 2016-05-01

**Last Modified:** 2016-04-01

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at [www.cisco.com/go/offices](http://www.cisco.com/go/offices).

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: [www.cisco.com/go/trademarks](http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks). Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2016 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



## CONTENTS

---

### PREFACE

#### **Preface** xvii

Changes to this Document xvii

Changes to This Document xvii

Communications, Services, and Additional Information xviii

---

### CHAPTER 1

#### **New and Changed System Management Features** 1

New and changed System Management features, R53 1

Features Added or Modified in System Management, Release 6.0.x 1

---

### CHAPTER 2

#### **Configuring Profiles** 3

Restrictions of Scale Profiles 3

Information About Profiles 4

Information About Scale Profiles 4

Information About Feature Profiles 4

Relationship Between Scale and Feature Profiles 5

Configure iTCAM profile 5

How to Configure Profiles 7

Configuring the Scale Profile 7

Configuring the Feature Profile 9

Removing the Scale Profile from the Global Configuration 11

Additional References 12

---

### CHAPTER 3

#### **Upgrading and Managing Cisco IOS XR Software** 13

Overview of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages 14

Package Installation Envelopes 14

Summary of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages 15

Packages in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle	15
Software Maintenance Upgrades	15
PIE Filenames and Version Numbers	16
Filename Component Description	16
Copying the PIE File to a Local Storage Device or Network Server	18
Information About Package Management	18
Summary of Package Management	18
Adding Packages	19
Verifying Package Details	19
Activating Packages	20
Activating Multiple Packages or SMUs	21
Activating All Packages Added in a Specific Operation	21
Adding and Activating a Package with a Single Command	21
Flexible XR Install	21
Digitally Signed Images	22
Upgrading and Downgrading Packages	23
Committing the Active Software Set	23
Rolling Back to a Previous Installation Operation	23
Multiple Disks Support during Installations	24
Restrictions	24
Deactivation of fully superseded SMUs	24
Support for the Ignore Package Presence Check Option	25
Upgrading Packages	25
Downgrading Packages	26
Impact of Package Version Changes	26
Impact of Package Activation and Deactivation	26
Delaying the Return of the CLI Prompt	27
Displaying Installation Log Information	27
Examples	28
Package Management Procedures	30
Activation and Deactivation Prerequisites	30
Obtaining and Placing Cisco IOS XR Software	31
Transferring Installation Files from a Network File Server to a Local Storage Device	31
Preparing for Software Installation Operations	34

Examples	36
Adding and Activating Packages	44
Examples	50
Committing the Active Package Set	53
Examples	54
Upgrading to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 4.0	55
Deactivating and Removing Cisco IOS XR Software Packages	61
Examples	66
Rolling Back to a Previous Software Set	67
Displaying Rollback Points	67
Displaying the Active Packages Associated with a Rollback Point	68
Rolling Back to a Specific Rollback Point	69
Rolling Back to the Last Committed Package Set	69
Additional References	70

---

## CHAPTER 4

### Configuring Disk Mirroring 73

Disk Mirroring Prerequisites	73
Information About Disk Mirroring	74
How to Enable Disk Mirroring	75
Enabling Disk Mirroring	75
Replacing the Secondary Mirroring Device	76
Replacing the Primary Mirroring Device	77
Configuration Examples for Enabling Disk Mirroring	80
Additional References	81

---

## CHAPTER 5

### Software Entitlement 83

What Is Software Entitlement?	84
Implementing Smart Licensing	85
Information About Smart Licensing	85
Smart Versus Traditional Licensing	85
Create a Cisco Smart Account	86
Smart Licensing Working	86
Deployment Options for Smart Licensing	88
Configure Licenses Using Smart Licensing	89

Enable Smart Licensing	89
Verify Smart Licensing Configuration	91
Renew Smart Licensing Registration	93
De-register Smart Licensing	94
Smart Licensing Workflow	95
Cisco Smart Software Manager Overview	95
Traditional Licensing Consideration in Smart Licensing	97
Consumption Model	97
Ordering the Consumption Model Line Card using the Consumption Model	98
Implementing Default Licensing	102
Prerequisites for Configuring Software Entitlement	102
Information About Default (Traditional) Licensing	102
Types of Licenses	102
Router License Pools	102
Chassis-Locked Licenses	102
Slot-Based Licenses	102
Configure Licenses Using Default Licensing	103
Adding a License for a New Feature	103
Backing Up Licenses	105
Restoring Licenses	106
Transferring Licenses to a new Route Switch Processor 440	107
Upgrading Line Cards and Licenses	108
Troubleshooting License Issues after a Software Upgrade	109

---

**CHAPTER 6**
**Managing Router Hardware 111**

Prerequisites for Managing Router Hardware	111
Displaying Hardware Status	112
Displaying SDR Hardware Version Information	112
Displaying System Hardware Version Information	115
Displaying Software and Hardware Information	119
Displaying Router Power Consumption	120
Displaying SDR Node IDs and Status	123
Displaying Router Node IDs and Status	124
Displaying Router Environment Information	124

Configuring the Chassis Altitude	128
Displaying RP Redundancy Status	128
Displaying Field-Programmable Device Compatibility	129
RSP Redundancy and Switchover	130
Establishing RSP Redundancy	130
Determining the Active RP in a Redundant Pair	131
Role of the Standby RSP	132
Summary of Redundancy Commands	132
Automatic Switchover	132
RSP Redundancy During RSP Reload	133
Manual Switchover	133
Communicating with a Standby RP	134
CPAK	134
Modes Supported on CPAKs	134
Configuring Breakout	135
Power saving mode	135
To configure the power save option	136
Reloading, Shutting Down, or Power Cycling a Node	136
Reloading the Active RSP	137
Flash Disk Recovery	138
Using Controller Commands to Manage Hardware Components	139
Formatting Hard Drives, Flash Drives, and Other Storage Devices	139
Removing and Replacing Cards	140
Removing Line Cards	140
Replacing a Line Card with the Same Media Type and Port Count	141
Replacing a Line Card with the Same Media Type and a Different Port Count	141
Replacing a Line Card or PLIM with a Different Media Type	142
Examples: Breakout and Power saving options	142
Upgrading the CPU Controller Bits	143
Examples	144
Additional References	144

---

**CHAPTER 7**
**Configuring Flexible Command Line Interface** 147

Information About Flexible CLI Configuration Groups	147
---	-----

Flexible Configuration Restrictions	148
Configuring a Configuration Group	149
Simple Configuration Group: Example	151
Configuration Group Applied to Different Places: Example	151
Verifying the Configuration of Configuration Groups	152
Apply Groups Priority Inheritance	153
Regular Expressions in Configuration Groups	154
Configuration Examples Using Regular Expressions	161
Configuration Group with Regular Expression: Example	161
Configuration Group Inheritance with Regular Expressions: Example	163
Layer 2 Transport Configuration Group: Example	164
Configuration Group Precedence: Example	164
Changes to Configuration Group are Automatically Inherited: Example	165
Configuration Examples for Flexible CLI Configuration	165
Basic Flexible CLI Configuration: Example	165
Interface MTU Settings for Different Interface Types: Example	167
ACL Referencing: Example	169
Local Configuration Takes Precedence: Example	170
ISIS Hierarchical Configuration: Example	171
OSPF Hierarchy: Example	175
Link Bundling Usage: Example	178

---

**CHAPTER 8**

<b>Upgrading Field-Programmable Devices</b>	<b>181</b>
Upgrading Field-Programmable Device	181
Prerequisites for FPD Image Upgrades	182
Overview of FPD Image Upgrade Support	182
Automatic FPD Upgrade	182
FPD upgrade service	183
Determining Upgrade Requirement	184
Automatic FPD upgrade	184
Manual FPD upgrade	184
How to Upgrade FPD Images	185
Configuration Examples for FPD Image Upgrade	188
show hw-module fpd Command Output: Example	188



show fpd package Command Output: Example	190
upgrade hw-module fpd Command Output: Example	192
show platform Command Output: Example	193
Troubleshooting Problems with FPD Image Upgrades	193
Power Failure or Removal of a SPA During an FPD Image Upgrade	193
Performing a SPA FPD Recovery Upgrade	193
Performing a SIP FPD Recovery Upgrade	194

---

## **CHAPTER 9**      **Configuring Frequency Synchronization**    195

Overview	195
SyncE Hardware Support Matrix	196
Configuring Frequency Synchronization	198
Enabling Frequency Synchronization on the Router	198
Configuring Frequency Synchronization on an Interface	200
Verifying the Frequency Synchronization Configuration	203

---

## **CHAPTER 10**      **Configuring Network Time Protocol**    207

Prerequisites for Implementing NTP on Cisco IOS XR Software	208
Information About Implementing NTP	208
NTP-PTP Interworking	209
How to Implement NTP	210
Configuring Poll-Based Associations	210
Configuring Broadcast-Based NTP Associates	212
Configuring NTP Access Groups	214
Configuring NTP Authentication	215
Disabling NTP Services on a Specific Interface	217
Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets	219
Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server	220
Configuring NTP-PTP Interworking	221
Updating the Hardware Clock	223
Verifying the Status of the External Reference Clock	224
Examples	225
Configuration Examples for Implementing NTP	225
Configuring NTP server inside VRF interface	228

Additional References 229

---

## CHAPTER 11

### Configuring PTP 233

Overview 233

GPS ToD Support for NMEA 236

PTP Support Information 236

PTP Hardware Support Matrix 237

Restrictions 242

ITU-T Telecom Profiles for PTP 243

G.8265.1 Profile 243

Configuring PTP 244

Configuring Frequency Synchronization and Quality Settings for PTP 245

Configuring Global Profile 247

Configuring PTP Slave Interface 248

Configuring PTP Master Interface 249

Configuring Clock Interface for a PTP Master 250

Configuring PTP Hybrid Mode 251

Configuring GPS Settings for a Grand Master Clock 254

Configuration Examples 255

Slave Configuration Example 255

Master Configuration Example 256

GPS Configuration Example 256

PTP Hybrid Mode Configuration Example 256

---

## CHAPTER 12

### Configuring Network Configuration Protocol 259

The Network Configuration Protocol 259

Netconf Sessions and Operations 260

The Yang data model 260

Netconf and Yang 261

Supported Yang Models 262

Denial of Services Defence for Netconf-Yang 262

Dynamic Loading of Operational Yang Models 263

Enabling NETCONF over SSH 263

Examples: Netconf over SSH 264

Additional Reference 265

---

## CHAPTER 13

### Configuring Open Flow Agent 267

OpenFlow 268

An overview of OFA 268

Prerequisites for OpenFlow Agent 268

Restrictions for OpenFlow Agent 268

Advantages 268

About OpenFlow 269

Openflow Mode for ASR9000 269

OpenFlow Table Types 269

OpenFlow Agent Packet In and Out Feature 270

OpenFlow Agent with NetFlow Collection and Analytics 271

OFA on Cisco Routers and Switches 272

Functional Components 272

OFA on ASR 9000 series routers 272

OpenFlow Matches 272

OpenFlow Actions 275

Cisco Extension Actions 276

Set Field Actions 277

Configuring OneP for Openflow 279

Configuring a Layer 2 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent 280

Configuring a Layer 2\_Layer 3 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent 281

Configuring a Layer 3\_VRF Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent 283

Configuring a Layer 3\_Dual-stack Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent 284

Enabling TLS 285

Configuring NetFlow for the OpenFlow Agent 286

Configuration Examples: Openflow 289

Attaching a bridge domain to an Openflow Switch: Examples 289

OpenFlow Agent with NetFlow Collection and Analytics Configuration: Example 289

Usecase for Layer2 291

Usecase for Layer3 291

---

## CHAPTER 14

### Configuring Manageability 293

Information About XML Manageability	293
How to Configure Manageability	294
Configuring the XML Agent	294
Configuration Examples for Manageability	295
Enabling VRF on an XML Agent: Examples	295
Additional References	295

---

**CHAPTER 15**
**Configuring Call Home 297**

About Call Home	297
Destination Profiles	298
Call Home Alert Groups	298
Call Home Message Levels	299
Obtaining Smart Call Home	300
Anonymous Reporting	301
Configuring Call Home	301
Configuring Contact Information	302
Configuring and Activating Destination Profiles	303
Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile	305
Configuring Email	308
Enabling Call Home	309
Configuring Smart Call Home (single command)	310
Configuring Call Home Data Privacy	310
Configuring Syslog Throttling	311
Enabling AAA Authorization	311
Sending Call Home Alert group Messages Manually	312
Manually sending command output message for a Command List	313
Configuring a HTTP Proxy Server	314
Configuring Snapshot alert group	315
Configuring Anonymous Reporting	316
Configuring Call Home to use VRF	316
Configuring Source Interface	317

---

**CHAPTER 16**
**Configuring Object Tracking 319**

Prerequisites for Implementing Object Tracking	319
--	-----

Information About Object Tracking	319
How to Implement Object Tracking	320
Tracking the Line Protocol State of an Interface	320
Tracking IP Route Reachability	322
Building a Track Based on a List of Objects	323
Tracking IPSLA Reachability	325
Configuration Examples for Configuring Object Tracking	326
Additional References	326

---

## CHAPTER 17

<b>Configuring Physical and Virtual Terminals</b>	<b>329</b>
Prerequisites for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals	330
Information About Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals	330
Line Templates	330
Line Template Configuration Mode	330
Line Template Guidelines	331
Terminal Identification	331
vty Pools	331
How to Implement Physical and Virtual Terminals on Cisco IOS XR Software	332
Modifying Templates	332
Creating and Modifying vty Pools	333
Monitoring Terminals and Terminal Sessions	335
Craft Panel Interface	336
Configuration Examples for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals	336
Additional References	338

---

## CHAPTER 18

<b>Configuring Simple Network Management Protocol</b>	<b>341</b>
Prerequisites for Implementing SNMP	342
Restrictions for SNMP Use on Cisco IOS XR Software	342
Information About Implementing SNMP	342
SNMP Functional Overview	342
SNMP Manager	342
SNMP Agent	342
MIB	342
SNMP Notifications	343

SNMP Versions	344
Comparison of SNMPv1, v2c, and v3	344
Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, v3	345
SNMPv3 Benefits	346
SNMPv3 Costs	347
User-Based Security Model	347
View-Based Access Control Model	347
IP Precedence and DSCP Support for SNMP	348
Session MIB support on subscriber sessions	348
SNMP Notifications	348
Session Types	349
How to Implement SNMP on Cisco IOS XR Software	349
Configuring SNMPv3	350
Configuring SNMP Trap Notifications	351
Setting the Contact, Location, and Serial Number of the SNMP Agent	352
Defining the Maximum SNMP Agent Packet Size	353
Changing Notification Operation Values	354
Setting IP Precedence and DSCP Values	355
Configuring MIB Data to be Persistent	355
Configuring LinkUp and LinkDown Traps for a Subset of Interfaces	357
Configuration Examples for Implementing SNMP	358
Configuring SNMPv3: Examples	358
Configuring Trap Notifications: Example	362
Setting an IP Precedence Value for SNMP Traffic: Example	363
Setting an IP DSCP Value for SNMP Traffic: Example	364
Additional References	364

---

**CHAPTER 19**
**Configuring Data Collection Manager 367**

Data Collection Manager	367
Data Collection Manager and Bulkstat	367
Benefits of DCM	368
Bulkstat	368
Bulkstat Configuration Elements	369
File Data Export	375

Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Data Set	375
Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Filter Set	376
Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Instance Set	377
Configuring a Bulkstat Data Group	378
Configuring a Bulkstat Profile	379
Configuring Bulkstat Calendar Scheduling	381
Configuration Examples and Usecase Scenarios	381
Usecase-1: Collecting MIB Statistics	382
Usecase-2: Using Filters	382
Usecase-3: Collecting CLI output in XML format	384

---

## CHAPTER 20

<b>Configuring Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer</b>	<b>385</b>
Prerequisites for Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer	385
Information About Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer	386
SNMP Objects and Instances	386
Bulk Statistics Object Lists	386
Bulk Statistics Schemas	386
Bulk Statistics Transfer Options	386
Benefits of Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer	387
4arg	387
4arg Messages: Example	387
How to Configure Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer	387
Configuring a Bulk Statistics Object List	387
Configuring a Bulk Statistics Schema	388
Configuring Bulk Statistics Transfer Options	390
Monitoring Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer	393
Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer: Example	394

---

## CHAPTER 21

<b>Configuring Cisco Discovery Protocol</b>	<b>397</b>
Prerequisites for Implementing CDP	397
Information About Implementing CDP	398
How to Implement CDP on Cisco IOS XR Software	399
Enabling CDP	399
Modifying CDP Default Settings	400

Monitoring CDP	401
Examples	402
Configuration Examples for Implementing CDP	404
Additional References	404





## Preface

From Release 6.1.2 onwards, Cisco introduces support for the 64-bit Linux-based IOS XR operating system. Extensive feature parity is maintained between the 32-bit and 64-bit environments. Unless explicitly marked otherwise, the contents of this document are applicable for both the environments. For more details on Cisco IOS XR 64 bit, refer to the [Release Notes](#) for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers, Release 6.1.2 document.

This guide describes the System Management configuration details for Cisco IOS XR software. This chapter contains details on the changes made to this document.

- [Changes to this Document, on page xvii](#)
- [Changes to This Document, on page xvii](#)
- [Communications, Services, and Additional Information, on page xviii](#)

## Changes to this Document

This table lists the technical changes made to this document since it was first printed.

**Table 1: Changes to This Document**

Date	Change Summary
January 2015	Initial release of this document.
May 2015	Republished with the required documentation updates.
September 2015	Republished with the required documentation updates.

## Changes to This Document

This table lists the technical changes made to this document since it was first released.

**Table 2: Changes to This Document**

Date	Change Summary
February 2016	Initial release of this document.
May 2016	Republished with the required documentation updates.

# Communications, Services, and Additional Information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at [Cisco Profile Manager](#).
- To get the business impact you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit [Cisco Services](#).
- To submit a service request, visit [Cisco Support](#).
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions and services, visit [Cisco Marketplace](#).
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit [Cisco Press](#).
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access [Cisco Warranty Finder](#).

## Cisco Bug Search Tool

[Cisco Bug Search Tool](#) (BST) is a web-based tool that acts as a gateway to the Cisco bug tracking system that maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.



## CHAPTER 1

# New and Changed System Management Features

This chapter lists all the features that have been added or modified in this guide. The table also contains references to these feature documentation sections.

- [New and changed System Management features, R53, on page 1](#)
- [Features Added or Modified in System Management, Release 6.0.x , on page 1](#)

## New and changed System Management features, R53

Feature	Description	Release	Where Documented
Consumption Model	This feature was introduced.	Release 5.3.2	In the chapter, Software Entitlement on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router, documented at: <a href="#">Consumption Model, on page 97</a>
Overlapping Regular Expressions	This feature was introduced.	Release 5.3.2	Configuring Flexible Command Line Interface
Flexible XR Install	This feature was introduced.	Release 5.3.2	<a href="#">Flexible XR Install, on page 21</a>
CPAK support	This feature was introduced.	Release 5.3.0	<a href="#">CPAK, on page 134</a>

## Features Added or Modified in System Management, Release 6.0.x

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
Dynamic loading of Yang operational models	This feature is introduced.	Release 6.0.1	<a href="#">Dynamic Loading of Operational Yang Models, on page 263</a>

Feature	Description	Changed in Release	Where Documented
Digitally Signed Images	This feature is introduced.	Release 6.0.1	<a href="#">Digitally Signed Images , on page 22</a>
RSP IEEE 1588 port	Support for the RSP IEEE 1588 port was added for the PIDs A9K-RSP440-SE, A9K-RSP440-TR, A9K-RP-SE, A9K-RP-TR.	Release 6.0.1	<a href="#">Configuring PTP , on page 233</a>



## CHAPTER 2

# Configuring Profiles

Your router caters to different market segments on the service provider edge space. Your router is capable of supporting a wide range of market segments and features, but to make the software more efficient, you must configure the appropriate profiles to achieve the results you require.

- Different customers have different network architectures, and this puts different scale demands on the router. By configuring the *scale profile*, you can configure your router to accommodate your needs.
- The software supports a wide range of features. To optimize performance, each *feature profile* enables a subset of the total available features for a release. You must configure the appropriate profile to enable the features that you require.

**Table 3: Feature History for Configuring Profiles**

Release	Modification
Release 3.9.1	The scale profile was introduced
Release 4.0.1	The scale profile configuration was moved to admin mode. The feature profile was introduced.

This model contains the following topics:

- [Restrictions of Scale Profiles, on page 3](#)
- [Information About Profiles, on page 4](#)
- [Configure iTCAM profile, on page 5](#)
- [How to Configure Profiles, on page 7](#)
- [Additional References, on page 12](#)

## Restrictions of Scale Profiles

Video monitoring is not supported with the L3XL scale profile.

# Information About Profiles

## Information About Scale Profiles

A scale profile is a user-configurable setting that tunes the router to perform more efficiently depending on how the router is being used. You should configure a scale profile before deploying the router to production use.

Your router can be used for different market segments on the service provider edge space. Because different customers have different network architectures, which can place different scale demands on the router, it is important to configure the scale profile so that your router works as efficiently as possible within the architecture that you are using.

Possible scenarios that are taken into account by the scale profile are:

- Use of the router as a Layer 2 transport device, thus requiring the support of high Layer 2 scale numbers.
- Use of the router primarily as a Layer 3 box that provides Layer 3 virtual private network (VPN) services, thus requiring the support of a high number of Layer 3 routes.

There are three scale profiles available on your router:

- The *default scale profile* that supports deployments that require large Layer 2 MAC tables (up to 512,000 entries) and a relatively small number of Layer 3 routes (less than 512,000).
- The *Layer 3 scale profile* that supports deployments that require more Layer 3 routes (up to 1 million) and smaller Layer 2 MAC tables (less than 128,000 entries).
- The *Layer 3 XL scale profile* that supports deployments that require a very large number of Layer 3 routes (up to 1.3 million) and minimal Layer 2 functionality. Note that the support for up to 1.3 million routes is split into IPv4 scaled support and IPv4/IPv6 scaled support. You can configure up to 1.3 million IPv4 routes, or up to 1 million IPv4 routes with 128,000 IPv6 routes. The layer 3 XL scale profile does not support video monitoring.

You can increase the memory available for BGP by configuring the Layer 3 XL profile on the Cisco ASR9000 Series Router using the **hw-module profile scale l3xl** command. However, this reduces the memory available for some other processes. To activate the new profile, you need to manually reboot the system.

The memory for BGP and the other processes can be verified by using the following commands before and after the configuration:

- **show processes memory detail**
- **show bgp process performance-statistics | include RLIMIT** : This command is available only from Cisco IOS-XR release 6.1.x onwards.

## Information About Feature Profiles

To allow sufficient computation capabilities within the router, the available features within the Cisco IOS XR software image are bundled. A feature profile determines which bundle of features is available for you to use.

Although you can always configure a feature, if the feature is not supported by the active feature profile, you cannot use it.

There are two feature profiles available on your router:

- The *default profile* that supports all Cisco IOS XR software features except for IEEE 802.1ah provider backbone bridge (PBB).
- The *Layer 2 profile* that supports all Cisco IOS XR software features including IEEE 802.1ah PBB, but does not support IPv6, reverse-path forwarding (RPF) or netflow.

If the feature profile that you have configured on your router does not support a feature that you have configured, warning messages are displayed on the console, and the feature does not work. A configured feature profile takes affect only after you reload all the line cards on the router.

## Relationship Between Scale and Feature Profiles

Although you are not limited in your selection of scale and feature profiles in relation to each other, Cisco recommends using the scale and feature profiles together as indicated here:

**Table 4: Interaction between Scale and Feature Profiles**

	Default Feature Profile	Layer 2 Feature Profile
<b>Default Scale Profile</b>	Up to 512 K Layer 3 CEF <sup>1</sup> scale	PPB <sup>2</sup>
<b>Layer 3 Scale Profile</b>	Up to 1.0 M Layer 3 CEF scale Less than 128 K MAC entries	Not recommended
<b>Layer 3 XL Scale Profile</b>	Up to 1.3 M Layer 3 CEF scale	Not recommended

<sup>1</sup> Cisco Express Forwarding

<sup>2</sup> provider backbone bridge

Other pairs are not recommended. Note that the Layer 3 XL scale profile does not support video monitoring.

## Configure iTCAM profile

Both A99-12X100GE and A99-4X100GE line cards have an internal TCAM of 5MB. You can recarve internal TCAM partition at a Global Configuration level to increase entries on the L2 table and V6 table. Recarving of the TCAM partition helps in the optimal and efficient utilisation of the available memory.

**Table 5: Recarving iTCAM profile**

Default Limits	Recarving Limits
1K entries for L2	4K entries for L2 table
24K limit for V4 entries	Adjusted as required for V4 table
1.75K limit for V6 entries	3.25L entries for V6 table

## Restrictions

- This configuration is supported only on A99-12X100GE and A99-4X100GE line cards.
- For 32-bit IOS-XR, perform this configuration in the Admin Configuration mode.
- For 64-bit IOS-XR perform this configuration in the Global Configuration mode.
- Unless you reload the line cards after the configuration of iTCAM profile on the linecards, the configuration does not take effect.

## Configuration Example

To configure iTCAM profile of linecards, use the following steps:

1. Enter the Administration Configuration mode.
2. Configure iTCAM profile of line cards as **to-profile-se1** to recarve TCAM partition of line cards and change the entries to accommodate more L2 or V6 entries in the L2 table and V6 table.



### Note

If you configure the iTCAM profile as **to-default**, it enables default TCAM entries present in the linecards.

3. Reload the A99-12X100GE and A99-4X100GE line cards in the chassis.

## Configuration

```
/* Enter the Administration Configuration mode and configure iTCAM profile on an interface
   for line cards as to-profile-se1 or to-default. */
Router(admin-config)# hw-module profile itcam to-profile-se1 location 0/0/CPU0
Sun Mar 3 07:44:23.066 UTC
In order to activate this new internal tcam partition profile, you must manually reload the
line card.
Router(admin-config)# commit

/* Reload the entire router or all the line cards in the chassis. */
```

## Verification

To verify the increase in the limits of L2 and V6 entries in the L2 table and V6 table for line cards on an interface, use the **show prm server tcam summary all all detail all location *location*** command. In the output, you can see that L2 entries have increased to 4K in the L2 table, V4 entries have reduced to 1.5K in the V4 table, and V6 entries have increased to 3.5K in the V6 table.

```
Router# show prm server tcam summary all all detail np3 location 0/0/CPU0
Wed Mar 13 21:37:43.743 UTC
```

```
Node: 0/0/CPU0:
-----
```

TCAM summary for NP3:

```
TCAM Logical Table: TCAM_LT_L2 (1)
  Partition ID: 0, valid entries: 2, free entries: 22
  Partition ID: 1, valid entries: 0, free entries: 24
  Partition ID: 2, valid entries: 0, free entries: 24
  Partition ID: 3, valid entries: 0, free entries: 2012.
```



```

Partition ID: 4, valid entries: 2, free entries: 2010
TCAM Logical Table: TCAM_LT_ODS2 (2), max entries: 15360, num free: 15237
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_IFIB (0).
  VMR ID: 1, used entries: 45, allocated entries: 123
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 1, Total used entries per app id: 45 Total allocated entries:
123
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_QOS (1)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_ACL (2)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_AFMON (3)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_LI (4)
  VMR ID: 2, used entries: 0, allocated entries: 0
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 1, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_PBR (5)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
TCAM Logical Table: TCAM_LT_ODS8 (3), max entries: 3328, num free: 3295
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_IFIB (0).
  VMR ID: 1, used entries: 33, allocated entries: 33
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 1, Total used entries per app id: 33 Total allocated entries:
33
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_QOS (1)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_ACL (2)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_PBR (5)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
Application ID: NP_APP_ID_EDPL (6)
  Total vmr_ids per app id: 0, Total used entries per app id: 0 Total allocated entries:
0
RP/0/RSP1/CPU0:VKG6#

```

# How to Configure Profiles

## Configuring the Scale Profile

Before you deploy your router, you should configure the scale profile to make the system most efficient for your specific network architecture.

### Before you begin

In general, the route switch processor (RSP) with 6 GB of memory is capable of loading 1.3 million IPv4 routes. For large scale routes like 4 million, 12 GB of memory is required.

The RSP440 supports 1.3 million IPv4 routes with the default memory.



**Note** The scale profile should be configured in the administration configuration. If you previously configured the L3 scale profile in the global configuration, the following limitations apply:

- If the scale profile is set only in the global configuration, the setting takes affect.
- Scale profile settings in the administration configuration override scale profile settings in the global configuration.
- Cisco recommends that you configure all scale profile settings in the administration configuration and remove the global configuration settings. For more information, refer to [Removing the Scale Profile from the Global Configuration, on page 11](#).

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **configure**
3. **hw-module profile scale {default | l3 | l3xl}**
4. **commit**
5. **reload location all**
6. **show running-config**
7. **show hw-module profile**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure</pre>	Enters administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>hw-module profile scale {default   l3   l3xl}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# hw-module profile scale l3xl</pre> <p>Sun Nov 14 10:04:27.109 PST In order to activate this new memory resource profile, you must manually reboot the system.</p>	Specifies the scale profile for the router. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>default</b>—efficient for deployments that require large Layer 2 MAC tables (up to 512,000 entries) and a relatively small number of Layer 3 routes (less than 512,000).</li> <li>• <b>l3</b>—efficient for deployments that require more Layer 3 routes (up to 1 million) and smaller Layer 2 MAC tables (less than 128,000 entries).</li> <li>• <b>l3xl</b>—efficient for deployments that require a very large number of Layer 3 routes (up to 1.3 million) and minimal Layer 2 functionality. Note that the support</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		for up to 1.3 million routes is split into IPv4 scaled support and IPv4/IPv6 scaled support. You can configure up to 1.3 million IPv4 routes, or up to 1 million IPv4 routes with 128,000 IPv6 routes.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>reload location all</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# reload location all	Reloads the entire router or all line cards in the chassis. If you are changing the scale profile to, or from, one of the Layer 3 scale profile values, you must perform a reload of the entire system before the change is enabled.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show running-config  hw-module profile scale	Displays the configured scale profile.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show hw-module profile</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module profile scale	Displays the active scale profile. If the scale profile is different than the configured profile, the line cards have not been reloaded as required for the scale profile configuration to take place.

## Configuring the Feature Profile

Before deploying your router you should determine that the feature profile is consistent with the features that you need to use. If it is not, use this task to configure a different profile.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **configure**
3. **hw-module profile feature{default | l2}**
4. **commit**
5. **reload location {all | node-id}**
6. **show running-config**
7. **show hw-module profile feature**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure</pre>	Enters administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>hw-module profile feature{default   l2}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# hw-module profile feature l2  Wed Dec  8 08:29:54.053 PST L2 feature profile does NOT support the following features: IPv6, RPF, Netflow. In order to activate this new memory resource profile, you must manually reboot the line cards.</pre>	Specifies the feature profile for the router. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>default</b>—supports all features except provider backbone bridge (PBB).</li> <li>• <b>l2</b>—supports PBB, but does not support IPv6, reverse-path forwarding (RPF) and netflow.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>reload location {all   node-id}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# reload location 0/0/cpu0</pre>	Reloads a line card. Before the feature profile configuration becomes effective, you must reload all line cards in the router. Use the <b>reload location node-id</b> command for each line card separately.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show running-config  hw-module profile feature</pre>	Displays the configured feature profile.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show hw-module profile feature</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module profile feature all</pre>	Displays the active feature profile. If the active profile is different from the configured profile, the line cards have not been reloaded as required for the feature profile configuration to take place.

### What to do next

If you see warning messages to the console indicating that the active feature profile does not match the configured profile, you must reload the affected line card so that the configured profile matches the active profile.

```
LC/0/1/CPU0:Nov  5 02:50:42.732 : prm_server[236]: Configured 'hw-module
profile feature l2' does not match active 'hw-module profile feature default'.
You must reload this line card in order to activate the configured profile on
this card or you must change the configured profile.
```

If you see warning messages to the console indicating that some features do not match the feature profile, you should either change the feature profile configuration, or remove the non-supported features.

```
LC/0/1/CPU0:Nov 5 02:50:42.732 : prm_server[236]: Active 'hw-module profile
feature l2' does not support IPv6, RPF, or Netflow features. Please remove all
unsupported feature configurations.
```

```
*"hw-module profile feature" syntax only applies to Trident based line cards;
therefore the limitations of IPv6, reverse-path forwarding (RPF) and Netflow do
not apply to either Tomahawk or Typhoon based line cards.
```

## Removing the Scale Profile from the Global Configuration

If a scale profile is configured in the global configuration, you should duplicate the configuration in the administration configuration, and remove the global configuration as described here.



**Note** If you do not move the scale profile setting to the administration configuration, the configuration in global configuration mode takes affect.

If the scale profile is configured in both the global configuration and administration configuration, the setting in the administration configuration takes precedence.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show running-config | file *new-config-file***
2. Remove the line with the command **hw-module profile scale** from the file created in the previous step.
3. **configure**
4. **load *new-config-file***
5. **commit replace**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show running-config   file <i>new-config-file</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running-config   file new-config-file	Copies the contents of the running configuration to a file.
<b>Step 2</b>	Remove the line with the command <b>hw-module profile scale</b> from the file created in the previous step.	Takes out the profile command that is configured in the global configuration.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>load <i>new-config-file</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# load new-config-file	Replaces the running configuration with the edited file.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit replace</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit replace	Commits the changed configuration to the router.

# Additional References

## Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Profile commands	<i>Hardware Redundancy and Node Administration on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR master command index	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

## Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

## MIBs

MB	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

## Technical Assistance

Description	Link
<p>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</p> <p>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</p> <p>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</p>	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>



## CHAPTER 3

# Upgrading and Managing Cisco IOS XR Software

Cisco IOS XR software is divided into software packages so that you can select which features run on your router. This module describes the concepts and tasks necessary to add feature packages, upgrade the active set of packages, roll back to a previously active set of packages, and perform other related package management tasks.

For complete descriptions of the commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 70](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 6: Feature History for Upgrading and Managing Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	The feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	No modification.
Release 4.0.0	A procedure to upgrade software from Cisco IOS XR Release 3.x was introduced. See <a href="#">Upgrading to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 4.0, on page 55</a> . Support for installation commands was removed from EXEC mode. The ability to install software on a specific SDR was removed.
Release 6.0.1	Support was added for digitally signed images. See <a href="#">Digitally Signed Images , on page 22</a>

This module contains the following topics:

- [Overview of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages, on page 14](#)
- [Information About Package Management, on page 18](#)
- [Package Management Procedures, on page 30](#)
- [Rolling Back to a Previous Software Set, on page 67](#)
- [Additional References, on page 70](#)

# Overview of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages

Cisco IOS XR software is divided into software packages so that you can select which features run on your router. Each package contains the components to perform a specific set of router functions, such as routing, security, or modular services card (MSC) support. Bundles are groups of packages that can be downloaded as a set. For example, Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle (known as *mini*) provides the main packages for use on every router.

Adding a package to the router does not affect the operation of the router—it only copies the package files to a local storage device on the router, known as the *boot device* (such as the compact flash drive). To make the package functional on the router, you must activate it for one or more cards.

To upgrade a package, you activate a newer version of the package. When the automatic compatibility checks have been passed, the new version is activated, and the old version is deactivated.



## Note

Activating a software maintenance upgrade (SMU) does not cause any earlier SMUs or the package to which the SMU applies to be automatically deactivated.



## Note

If an interface on a router does not have a configuration and is brought up by performing no-shut operation, then upon router reload, the interface state changes to **admin-shutdown** automatically.

To downgrade a package, you activate an older version of the package. When the automatic compatibility checks have been passed, the older version is activated, and the newer version is deactivated.



## Caution

Do not perform any install operations when the router is reloading.



## Note

For more information on the features and components included in each package, refer to the release notes.

## Package Installation Envelopes

Package Installation Envelopes (PIEs) are nonbootable files that contain a single package or a set of packages (called a *composite package* or *bundle*). Because the files are nonbootable, they are used to add software package files to a running router.

PIE files have a `pie` extension. When a PIE file contains software for a specific bug fix, it is called a *software maintenance upgrade* (SMU).





**Note** Files with the `vm` extension are bootable installation files used only to replace all current Cisco IOS XR software. These files are installed from ROM Monitor mode, which causes significant router downtime. Cisco Systems recommends installing or upgrading software packages only using PIE files as described in this document. For more information on `vm` files, see *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*.

## Summary of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages

Every router includes a basic set of required packages contained in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle. Additional optional packages can be added and activated on the router to provide specific features.

### Packages in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle

The packages contained in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle are as follows:

- Operating system (OS) and minimum boot image (MBI)—Kernel, file system, memory management, and other slow changing core components.
- Base—Interface manager, system database, checkpoint services, configuration management, other slow-changing components.
- Infra—Resource management: rack, fabric.
- Routing—RIB, BGP, ISIS, OSPF, EIGRP, RIP, RPL, and other routing protocols.
- Forwarding—FIB, ARP, QoS, ACL, and other components.
- LC— Line card drivers.

The filename for this bundle is: `asr9k-mini.pie-version`.

Refer to the release notes for additional information on the specific features provided by each package.

### Software Maintenance Upgrades

A software maintenance upgrade (SMU) is a PIE file that contains fixes for a specific defect. A composite SMU is a PIE file that contains SMUs for more than one package. SMUs are added and activated using the same procedures as other PIE files. SMUs are created to respond to immediate issues and do not include new features. Typically, SMUs do not have a large impact on router operations. SMU versions are synchronized to the package major, minor, and maintenance versions they upgrade.

The affect of an SMU depends on its type:

- Process Restart SMU—Causes a process or group of processes to restart on activation.
- Reload SMU—Causes a parallel reload (of RPs and line cards).

SMUs are not an alternative to maintenance releases. They provide quick resolution of immediate issues. All bugs fixed by SMUs are integrated into the maintenance releases. For information on available SMUs, contact Cisco Technical Support, as described in *Obtaining Technical Assistance* in the monthly [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation](#).



**Note** Activating a software maintenance upgrade (SMU) does not cause any earlier SMUs, or the package to which the SMU applies, to be automatically deactivated.

#### Related Topics

[Updating Software Images Without a Router Reload](#)

## PIE Filenames and Version Numbers

PIE filenames have two formats: one for composite-package PIEs (bundles) and one for single-package PIEs. A *composite-package file* is a PIE file that contains multiple packages.



**Note** Hyphens in the filename are part of the filename.

[Table 7: PIE Filenames, on page 16](#) shows the filenames for available PIE types.

**Table 7: PIE Filenames**

Software Delivery Type	Filename	Example
Composite (Bundle) PIE	<i>platform-composite_name.pie-major.minor.maintenance</i>	asr9k-mini.pie-3.7.2
Single package PIE	<i>platform-package_type.-p.pie-major.minor.maintenance</i>	asr9k-mpis.pie-3.7.2
Composite SMU	<i>comp-platform-composite_name.ddts.pie</i>	comp-asr9k-001.CSCec98xxx.pie
Single package SMU	<i>platform-package_type-major.minor.maintenance.ddts.pie</i>	asr9k-base-3.7.2.CSCei45xxx.pie
<b>Note</b>	A SMU composite name usually is “001”, which means the SMU is the first SMU for that DDTS. In rare cases in which the same DDTS requires multiple composite SMUs, a second composite version number is released as “002”. In the previous example, a second composite SMU “comp-002.CSCec98766” would be created for DDTS CSCec98766.	

## Filename Component Description

The filename components for all packages are described in [Table 8: Composite- and Single-Package Filename Components, on page 16](#).

**Table 8: Composite- and Single-Package Filename Components**

Component	Description
<i>platform</i>	Identifies the platform for which the software package is designed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The platform designation is “asr9k.”</li> </ul>

Component	Description
<i>composite_name</i>	<p>Identifies a specific composite package.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The only composite PIE file at this time is named “mini” and includes all packages described in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle.</li> </ul>
<i>package_type</i>	<p>Identifies the type of package the file supports (<i>package_type</i> applies only to single-package PIEs). Package types include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mcast—Multicast package</li> <li>• mgbl—Manageability package</li> <li>• mpls—MPLS package</li> <li>• k9sec—Security package</li> <li>• diags—Diagnostics package</li> <li>• fpd—Field-programmable device package</li> <li>• doc—Documentation package</li> </ul>
<i>major</i>	<p>Identifies the major release of this package.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A major release occurs when there is a major architectural change to the product (for example, a major new capability is introduced).</li> <li>• All packages operating on the router must be at the same major release level.</li> <li>• A major release is the least frequent release and may require a router reboot.</li> </ul>
<i>minor</i>	<p>Identifies the minor release of this package.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A minor release contains one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New features</li> <li>• Bug fixes</li> </ul> </li> <li>• The minor release version does not have to be identical for all software packages operating on the router, but the operating packages must be certified by Cisco as compatible with each other.</li> <li>• A minor release may require a router reboot.</li> </ul>
<i>maintenance</i>	<p>Identifies the maintenance release of this package.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A maintenance release contains a collection of bug fixes for a package.</li> <li>• The maintenance release version does not have to be identical for all software packages operating on the router, but the major and minor versions of the maintenance release must match those of the package being updated.</li> <li>• A maintenance release does not usually require a router reboot.</li> </ul>
ddts	<p>SMUs only. Identifies a DDTS<sup>3</sup> number that describes the problem this SMU addresses. DDTS is the method used to track known bugs and the resolutions or workarounds for those issues.</p>

Component	Description
px	Identifies images that are compatible with hardware that uses the x86 architecture. Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 4.2, -px releases replace the -p releases.

<sup>3</sup> distributed defect tracking system

## Copying the PIE File to a Local Storage Device or Network Server

To add an optional package or upgrade or downgrade a package, you must copy the appropriate PIE file to a local storage device or to a network file server to which the router has access.

If you need to store PIE files on the router, we recommended storing PIE files on the hard disk. Flash disk0: serves as the boot device for packages that have been added or activated on the system. Flash disk1: is used as a backup for disk0:.



**Tip** Before copying PIE files to a local storage device, use the **dir** command to check to see if the required PIE files are already on the device.

# Information About Package Management

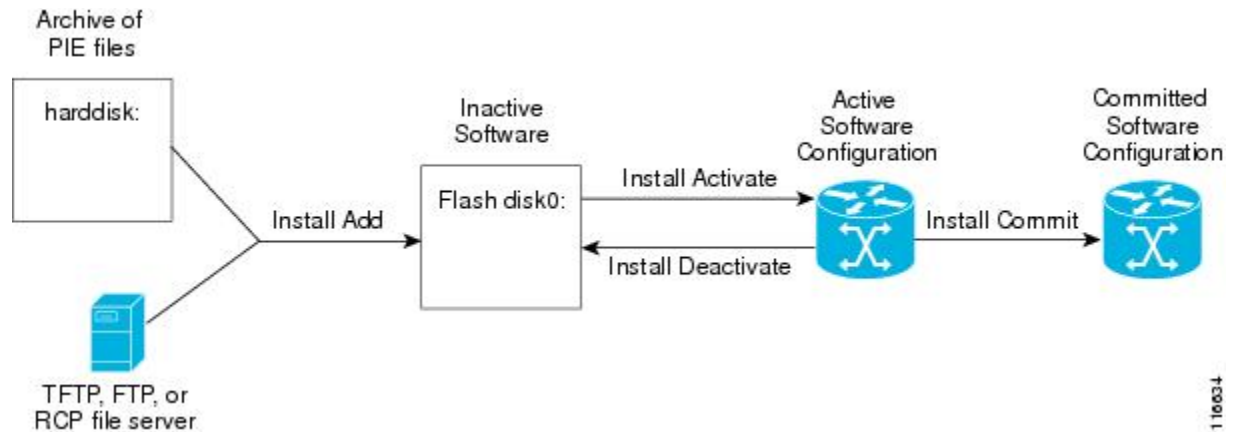
## Summary of Package Management

The general procedure for adding optional packages, upgrading a package or package set, or downgrading packages on the router is as follows:

1. Copy the package file or files to a local storage device or file server.
2. Add the package or packages on the router using the command **install add**.
3. Activate the package or packages on the router using the **install activate** command.
4. Commit the current set of packages using the **install commit** command.

[Figure 1: Process to Add, Activate, and Commit Cisco IOS XR Software Packages, on page 19](#) illustrates key steps in the package management process.

Figure 1: Process to Add, Activate, and Commit Cisco IOS XR Software Packages



## Adding Packages

Use the **install add** command to unpack the package software files from a PIE file and copy them to the boot device (usually disk0:).

- The package software files are added to the boot device of the DSC of the router from either administration EXEC or EXEC mode.



### Note

The disk that holds the unpacked software files is also known as the *boot device*. By default, flash disk0: is used as the boot device. To use an alternate storage device, such as flash disk1:, see the *Router Recovery with ROM Monitor* module of *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*. Remember that all RSPs in a system must use the same boot device. If the boot device on the primary RSP is flash disk0:, then the standby RSP must also have a flash disk0:.

## Verifying Package Details

Before you activate a package on the router, you can verify the type of upgrade that is required for the package and whether the package requires a router reload or not. Use the **show install package pie detail** command in admin mode.

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install package disk0:asr9k-px-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-0.0.4.i
detail

Mon Nov 19 09:44:24.036 UTC
disk0:asr9k-px-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-0.0.4.i
  asr9k-px-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088 V0.0.4.i[SMU]  User specified bundle
    iosxr-infra-asr9k-px1-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088.pi.pie.
      [composite package]
      [root package, grouped contents]
    Vendor : Cisco Systems
    Desc   : User specified bundle iosxr-infra-asr9k-px1-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088.pi.pie.
    Build  : Built on Fri Nov  9 11:00:11 UTC 2012
    Source : By iox-bld27 in /scratch1/SMU_BLD_WS/ci-431_206626_CSCuc66088_121109102249 for
    pie
    Card(s): RP, CRS-RP-X86, CRS8-RP-x86, CRS16-RP-x86, ASR9001-RP, RP-STARSCREAM,
    NP24-4x10GE,
  
```

```

NP24-40x1GE, NP40-40x1GE, NP40-4x10GE, NP40-8x10GE, NP40-2_20_COMBO, NP80-8x10GE,
NP80-16x10GE, NP200-24x10GE, NP200-36x10GE, NP200-2x100GE, NP200-1x100GE,
NP200-5x40GE,
NP200-8x10GE, NP200-MOD-SMEM, NP200-MOD-LMEM, ASR9001-LC, A9K-SIP-700,
A9K-SIP-500, A9K-SIP-AVSM
Restart information:
Default:
parallel impacted processes restart
Size Compressed/Uncompressed: 1744KB/1830KB (95%)
Components in package disk0:asr9k-px-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-0.0.4.i, package
asr9k-px-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088:
disk0:iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-0.0.4.i
iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088 V0.0.4.i[SMU] IOS-XR Infra Package Definition
Vendor : Cisco Systems
Desc : IOS-XR Infra Package Definition
Build : Built on Fri Nov 9 11:00:10 UTC 2012
Source : By iox-bld27 in /scratch1/SMU_BLD_WS/ci-431_206626_CSCuc66088_121109102249
for pie
Card(s): RP, CRS-RP-X86, CRS8-RP-x86, CRS16-RP-x86, ASR9001-RP, RP-STARSCREAM,
NP24-4x10GE,
NP24-40x1GE, NP40-40x1GE, NP40-4x10GE, NP40-8x10GE, NP40-2_20_COMBO,
NP80-8x10GE,
NP80-16x10GE, NP200-24x10GE, NP200-36x10GE, NP200-2x100GE, NP200-1x100GE,
NP200-5x40GE, NP200-8x10GE, NP200-MOD-SMEM, NP200-MOD-LMEM, ASR9001-LC,
A9K-SIP-700, A9K-SIP-500, A9K-SIP-AVSM

Size Compressed/Uncompressed: 1744KB/1830KB (95%)
Components in package disk0:iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-0.0.4.i,
package iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088:
platforms-spa-chopper V[ci-4x-bugfix/8] This component contains Platform
Independent
Chopper SPA Code.
iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-package V[Default] Manifest information for
package
iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088
iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088-package-compatibility V[Default]
Package Compatibility information for package iosxr-infra-4.x.x.04I.CSCuc66088

```

## Activating Packages

Software packages remain inactive until activated with the **install activate** command.

After a package has been added to the router, use the **install activate** command to activate the package or SMUs for all valid cards. Information within the package is used to verify compatibility with the target cards and with the other active software. Actual activation is performed only after the package compatibility and application programming interface (API) compatibility checks have been passed.



### Note

SDR-specific activation is supported for specific packages and upgrades, such as optional packages and SMUs. Packages that do not support SDR-specific EXEC mode activation can only be activated from administration EXEC mode.

### Activating a Package on the Router

To activate a package on your router, use the **install activate** command in either administration EXEC mode or EXEC mode. If used in administration EXEC mode, the **install activate** command also activates the

package on all administration plane nodes and resources, including service processors (SPs), fabric SCs, fan controllers, alarm modules, and power modules.



**Note** To enter administration EXEC mode, you must be logged in to the owner secure domain router (SDR) and have root-system access privileges.

You can also activate a package using the **install activate** command from EXEC mode.

## Activating Multiple Packages or SMUs

To install multiple packages or software maintenance upgrades (SMUs) with a single command, use the **install activate** command and either specify up to 16 packages by repeating *device: package* arguments or use wildcard syntax to specify multiple packages. Some SMUs may require a reload. If the operation requires a node reload, the user is prompted before the installation operation occurs.

### Related Topics

[SMU Installation Combinations](#)

## Activating All Packages Added in a Specific Operation

To install all packages that were added in a specific **install add** operation, use the **install activate** command with the **id add-id** keyword and argument, specifying the operation ID of the **install add** operation. You can specify up to 16 operations in a single command.

## Adding and Activating a Package with a Single Command

To add and activate a package with a single command, use the **install add** command with the **activate** keyword.

- To add and activate a package, enter the **install add** command with the **activate** keyword from administration EXEC mode.
- To add and activate a package in EXEC mode (where supported), enter the **install add** command with the **activate** keyword.

## Flexible XR Install

The Flexible XR Install feature allows you to upgrade as well as downgrade the software versions, packages and SMUs on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router.

The Flexible XR Install feature automatically downloads all the packages that are required for installation. This is followed by compatibility testing, where the packages are checked for their compatibility with the running software or the software to be upgraded or downgraded. All required packages are extracted from specified repository to achieve SMUs dependencies.

This feature upgrades or downgrades the system using following sources:

- FTP
- TFTP
- Other local disks (for example, local harddisk, usb)

## Digitally Signed Images

From Release 6.0.1 onwards, all Cisco IOS XR images are digitally signed to ensure the authenticity of the software. If the ROMMON/BIOS image on the line card is digitally signed, then ensure that the Cisco IOS XR image on the router is also digitally signed, as the ROMMON/BIOS checks the Cisco IOS XR image for a digital signature.



### Note

The Cisco IOS XR Release 5.3.x images are not digitally signed. If you are running Cisco IOS XR Release 5.3.x, then ensure that you install the Abraxas based SMU for successful operation of the router with the latest line cards.

The digitally signed images are supported on the following line cards:

- A99-RP2-TR
- A99-RP2-SE
- A9K-RSP880-TR
- A9K-RSP880-SE
- A9K-8X100GE-SE
- A9K-8X100GE-TR
- A9K-4X100GE-SE
- A9K-4X100GE-TR
- A99-8X100GE-SE
- A99-8X100GE-TR
- A9K-MOD400-SE
- A9K-MOD400-TR
- A9K-MOD200-SE
- A9K-MOD200-TR
- A9K-400G-DWDM-TR
- A99-12X100GE

For more information on installing line cards, see *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Routers Ethernet Line Card Installation Guide*.

## Validation Messages

When image credentials, signature, and other attributes of the signature envelope are matched, the router reboots.

The following message is displayed on successful image validation.

```
File reception completed.**** check image validation ****.....BIOS CODE SIGN ENTRY ...Image
ASR9K-Tomahawk verified successfully~~~~~
```



If image validation is unsuccessful, the boot process is interrupted, and the router enters the ROMMON CLI mode.

The following message is displayed on unsuccessful image validation.

```
**** check image validation ****.....BIOS CODE SIGN ENTRY ... Image ASR9K-Tomahawk
Verification Failed Invalid signature offset ***** ASR9K
image validation failed, cannot boot image, contact tech support
*****
```

## Upgrading and Downgrading Packages

To upgrade a package, activate the latest version of the package; the previous version is automatically deactivated. To downgrade a package, activate the previous version of the package; the latest version is automatically deactivated.

Actual activation is performed only after compatibility checks have been passed.



### Note

- Activating a software maintenance upgrade (SMU) does not cause previous versions of the SMUs, or the package to which the SMU applies, to be automatically deactivated.
- If you upgrade an ASR 9000 router with low RSP card memory, then the RSP440-TR route-switch processor and Cisco ASR 9000 2nd Generation line card can become inaccessible due to insufficient memory. Power cycling the router may help bring the router back to the up state.

## Committing the Active Software Set

When a package is activated on the router, it becomes part of the current running configuration. To make the package activation persistent across reloads, enter the **install commit** command. On startup, the designated shelf controller (DSC) of the secure domain router (SDR) loads the committed software set.

- To commit the active software set from administration EXEC mode, use the **install commit** command with the **sdr Owner** keywords. Alternatively, use the **install commit** command without keywords or arguments.



### Note

If the system is restarted before the active software set is saved with the **install commit** command, the previously committed software set is used.

## Rolling Back to a Previous Installation Operation

Although the term *commit* sounds final, the Cisco IOS XR software provides the flexibility to roll back the selected package set to previously saved package sets. Each time a package is activated or deactivated, a rollback point is created that defines the package set that is active after the package activation or deactivation. The software also creates a rollback point for the last committed package set. If you find that you prefer a previous package set over the currently active package set, you can use the **install rollback** command to make a previously active package set active again.

### Related Topics

[Rolling Back to a Previous Software Set](#), on page 67

## Multiple Disks Support during Installations

In installations on platforms where Cisco IOS XR Software is supported, only a single disk is used as an install device; that is, either disk0 or disk1. When multiple packages are installed on a single disk, it results in space constraints. To resolve this space limitation, the disk supported for the install operations has been extended to another disk called the disk1. When installing multiple packages, this feature enables you to choose between disk0 and disk1.

To add packages to a specific disk name, use the **install media** command in the admin configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0: router (admin) # install media disk1
```

## Restrictions

- Before enabling the addition of disk1 through the **install media** command, the disk mirroring feature should be explicitly disabled. For details regarding disk mirroring, see the Disk Mirroring chapter.
- All single version packages should be installed into one disk; that is, either disk0 or disk1.
- When downgrading to an image that does not support extended disk, the rollback points of the extended disk will not be available on the downgraded image. For example, assume a case where the version1 (V1) image does not support the extended disk functionality and version2 (V2) image supports the functionality. Upgrading from V1(disk0) to V2(disk1), in such a case, makes the rollback points of V1 available on V2. However, when downgrading from V2(disk1) to V1(disk0), the rollback points of V2 will not be available on V1. For more information about the rollback feature and rollback points, see the Upgrading and Managing Software chapter.

## Deactivation of fully superseded SMUs

Cisco IOS XR Software will accumulate a set of Software Maintenance Upgrades (SMUs) over time, where an older SMU gets superseded by the latest SMU. For example, if SMU A was initially delivered to you, and subsequently, as a result of a bug resolution, SMU B was delivered, then SMU A becomes the subset of SMU B and SMU A is superseded by SMU B. In this case, SMU A is redundant and can be deactivated to clean up the software package.



**Note** When an older SMU gets superseded their code is no longer used but it can be used for rollback purposes which consumes the disk space.

When you install a reload SMU which supersedes the existing SMU the router reboots and SMU is placed in the superseded list automatically. If the superseded reload SMU is deactivated and fully supersedes the existing SMU, then router will not reboot when you run the **install deactivate superseded** command and the **install remove inactive** command.



**Note** Removing the superseded SMUs will increase the disk space and it will not affect the functionality.

To deactivate all the fully superseded SMUs, use the **install deactivate superseded** command in the admin mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0: router (admin) # install deactivate superseded
```

To display the details of the SMUs that are superseded, use the **show install superseded** command in the EXEC mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0: router # show install superseded
Thu Feb 3 17:37:20.379 UTC
disk0:asr9k-px-4.3.0.CSCud93518-1.0.0 is fully superseded by
disk0:asr9k-px-4.3.0.CSCue23747-1.0.0
```

## Support for the Ignore Package Presence Check Option

During any software package upgrade in Cisco IOS XR Software, two versions of the packages get stored, both the previous version and the upgraded version. In Route Switch Processor 2 (RSP2), the disk space is insufficient to hold all packages of these two versions. To address this, a new optional keyword, **ignore-pkg-presence-check**, is added to the **install activate** command, which allows upgrading with lesser number of packages. For example, assume a case where version1 (V1) of the software consists of packages A, B, C, and D, and you want to upgrade to the version2 (V2) with only 3 packages (A, B, and C). The **ignore-pkg-presence-check** option allows only packages A, B, and C to be upgraded to V2 and deactivates package D of V1. Thus, an explicit deactivation of package D is not required and the user can add package D of V1 after upgrading to V2.

To upgrade software with lesser number of packages, use the **install activate [ignore-pkg-presence-check]** command in the admin mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0: router(admin) # install activate [ignore-pkg-presence-check] V2 packages
```

### Restrictions

The restrictions for this option are:

- The **ignore-pkg-presence-check** keyword is supported only with the **install activate** command and is not supported with the **install add activate** command.
- When you upgrade using the **ignore-pkg-presence-check** option, the deactivation of packages always happens synchronously, using the **synchronous** keyword in the **install deactivate** command.

## Upgrading Packages

To upgrade a package that is currently active on your router, add and activate a newer version of the same package (see [Figure 2: Example of a Maintenance Release Package Upgrade, on page 26](#)). The older version of the software package is deactivated automatically. These actions are permitted only after the package compatibility checks and API version compatibility checks have been passed.

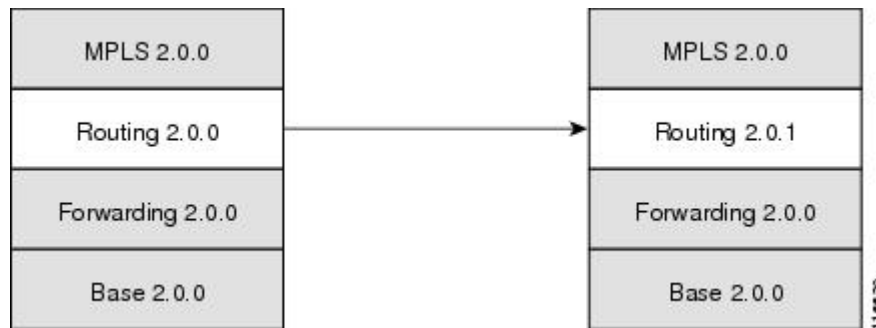
Deactivated packages are not removed from the router. To remove inactive package files, use the **install remove** command.



### Caution

Upgrading or downgrading a software package can cause a process to restart or a new process to start. Use the **test** option to preview the impact of the package activation.

Figure 2: Example of a Maintenance Release Package Upgrade

**Related Topics**

[Deactivating and Removing Cisco IOS XR Software Packages](#), on page 61

## Downgrading Packages

To downgrade a software package, activate an older version on one or more cards for which that package is already active. The newer version of the same software package is deactivated automatically. These actions are performed only after the package compatibility checks and API version compatibility checks have been passed.

Deactivated packages are not removed from the router. To remove inactive package files, use the **install remove** command. See the *Related Topics* section for links to more information.

**Related Topics**

[Deactivating and Removing Cisco IOS XR Software Packages](#), on page 61

## Impact of Package Version Changes

Each package version change has a different impact on the operation of the router, depending on the type of package and whether the upgrade is for a major, minor, or maintenance release. The following resources can provide more information on the impact of a package version change:

- See *Related Topics* for more information on the typical impact for major, minor, and maintenance releases.
- For specific information about the impact of an upgrade, consult the release notes for the package release, and test the impact of the package activation by adding the test option to the **install activate** command.
- The Cisco IOS XR Software Selector tool also contains information on package version compatibility.

**Related Topics**

[PIE Filenames and Version Numbers](#), on page 16

[Obtaining and Placing Cisco IOS XR Software](#), on page 31

## Impact of Package Activation and Deactivation

Activation or deactivation of a package can have an immediate impact on the system. The system can be affected in the following ways:

- When a new package is activated, any new CLI commands for the package are added to the router. The router need not be restarted or reloaded.

- When a package is deactivated, the commands associated with the features being deactivated are removed from the router. The commands are no longer available to the user.
- During a software package deactivation, upgrade, or downgrade, any incompatible configurations are removed from the running configuration of the router, and saved to a file. Messages for incompatible configurations are displayed. Incompatible configurations are those configurations that are not supported by the new version of the software package.



**Note** You must address any issues that result from the revised configuration and reapply the configuration, if necessary.

- New processes may be started.
- Running processes may be stopped or restarted.
- All processes in the cards may be restarted. Restarting processes in the cards is equivalent to a soft reset.
- The cards may reload.
- No impact: no processes in the card may be affected.



**Tip** When activating and deactivating packages, use the **test** option to test the effects of a command without impacting the running system. After the activation or deactivation process completes, enter the **show install log** command to display the process results.

## Delaying the Return of the CLI Prompt

By default, the CLI prompt is returned to the screen before the installation operation is complete, which allows you to enter other commands that are not installation commands. If additional installation requests are attempted before the first operation is complete, they are not run.

To delay the return of the CLI prompt until an installation operation is complete, enter the **install** command with the **synchronous** keyword. For example:

```
install add disk1:/pie-file synchronous
install activate disk0:package synchronous
```

To determine if an **install** command is currently running, enter the **show install request** command.

## Displaying Installation Log Information

The install log provides information on the history of the installation operations. Each time an installation operation is run, a number is assigned to that operation.

- Use the **show install log** command to display information about both successful and failed installation operations.
- The **show install log** command with no arguments displays a summary of all installation operations. Specify the *request-id* argument to display information specific to an operation. Use the **detail** or **verbose** keywords to display details for specific operation.
- Use the **detail** or **verbose** keywords to display detailed information, including file changes, nodes that could be reloaded, impact to processes, and impact to Dynamic Link Libraries (DLLs).

**Tip**

By default, the install log stores up to 50 entries. Use the **clear install log-history** command to reset the number of entries to any value from 0 to 255.

## Examples

### Displaying install log Entries: Example

The following example displays information for the install requests. Use the **verbose** keyword to display detailed information, including files changes, impact to processes, and impact to DLLs.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install log verbose

Install operation 1 started by user 'labuser' at 17:48:51 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
install add /disk1:asr9k-diags-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07
/disk1:asr9k-k9sec-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07 /disk1:asr9k-mcast-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07
/disk1:asr9k-mgbl-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07 /disk1:asr9k-mpls-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07
Install operation 1 completed successfully at 17:51:32 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.

Install logs:
Install operation 1 'install add /disk1:asr9k-diags-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07
/disk1:asr9k-k9sec-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07 /disk1:asr9k-mcast-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07
/disk1:asr9k-mgbl-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07 /disk1:asr9k-mpls-p.pie-PD34-06.06.07'
started by user 'labuser' at 17:48:51 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
Info:      The following packages are now available to be activated:
Info:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
Info:      disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
Info:
Install operation 1 completed successfully at 17:51:32 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
Install operation 2 started by user 'labuser' at 18:06:32 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
install activate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
Install operation 2 completed successfully at 18:07:48 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
Summary:
Install method: parallel
Summary of changes on nodes 0/1/SP, 0/6/SP, 0/SM0/SP, 0/SM1/SP,
0/SM2/SP,0/SM3/SP:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
    No processes affected

Summary of changes on nodes 0/1/CPU0, 0/6/CPU0:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
    1 asr9k-mpls processes affected (0 updated, 1 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
    2 asr9k-mcast processes affected (0 updated, 2 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)

Summary of changes on nodes 0/RP0/CPU0, 0/RP1/CPU0:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
    6 asr9k-mgbl processes affected (0 updated, 6 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
```

```

      8 asr9k-mpls processes affected (0 updated, 8 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
      7 asr9k-k9sec processes affected (0 updated, 7 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
      14 asr9k-mcast processes affected (0 updated, 14 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)

Install logs:
Install operation 2 'install activate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I' started by user 'labuser' at
18:06:32 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be
Info:      persistent across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install
Info:      commit' to make changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the
Info:      software change using the following commands:
Info:      show system verify
--More--

```

The following example displays information for a specific install request. Use the **detail** keyword to display additional information, including impact to processes and nodes impacted.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install log 2 detail
```

```

Install operation 2 started by user 'labuser' at 18:06:32 UTC Sat Jun 03 2009.
install activate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
Install operation 2 completed successfully at 18:07:48 UTC Sat Jun 03 2006.

Summary:
  Install method: parallel
  Summary of changes on nodes 0/1/SP, 0/6/SP, 0/SM0/SP, 0/SM1/SP,
  0/SM2/SP, 0/SM3/SP:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
    No processes affected

  Summary of changes on nodes 0/1/CPU0, 0/6/CPU0:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
    1 asr9k-mpls processes affected (0 updated, 1 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
    2 asr9k-mcast processes affected (0 updated, 2 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)

  Summary of changes on nodes 0/RP0/CPU0, 0/RP1/CPU0:
    Activated:    asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I
                  asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I
    6 asr9k-mgbl processes affected (0 updated, 6 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
    8 asr9k-mpls processes affected (0 updated, 8 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
    7 asr9k-k9sec processes affected (0 updated, 7 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)
    14 asr9k-mcast processes affected (0 updated, 14 added, 0 removed, 0 impacted)

Install logs:
Install operation 2 'install activate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.7.2.1I disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.7.2.1I
disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2.1I' started by user 'labuser' at 18:06:32 UTC
Sat Jun 03 2006.
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be
Info:      persistent across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install
Info:      commit' to make changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the
Info:      software change using the following commands:

```

```

Info:          show system verify
Info:          install verify packages
Install operation 2 completed successfully at 18:07:48 UTC Sat Jun 03 2006.

```

## Package Management Procedures



### Note

Review the concepts about package management before performing the tasks described in this module.

### Related Topics

[Information About Package Management](#), on page 18

## Activation and Deactivation Prerequisites

These prerequisites must be met for a package to be activated or deactivated:

- You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.
- Verify that all cards are installed and operating properly. For example, do not activate or deactivate packages while cards are booting, while cards are being upgraded or replaced, or when you anticipate an automatic switchover activity.
- If a ROM Monitor upgrade is required for the software package, the upgrade must be completed before the package is activated. For ROM Monitor upgrade information and procedures, see *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*.
- Check the sanity of the configuration file system and recover from any internal inconsistencies by using the **cfs check** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# cfs check
```

```
Tue Sep 20 07:22:03.374 DST
```

```

Creating any missing directories in Configuration File system...OK
Initializing Configuration Version Manager...OK
Syncing commit database with running configuration...OK

```

- Clear any inconsistency alarms and remove any failed configurations using the **clear configuration inconsistency** command.

An inconsistency alarm is set when there is a failure to restore the configuration; this can occur during router startup, or when a line card or route switch processor (RSP) card is inserted or removed. If an inconsistency alarm is set, a message similar to the one in this example is displayed:

```

RP/0/0/CPU0:May 26 11:58:40.662 : cfgmgr-rp[130]: %MGBL-CONFIGCLI-3
BATCH_CONFIG_FAIL : 28 config(s) failed during startup. To view
failed config(s) use the command - "show configuration failed startup"

```

When the inconsistency alarm is set, all configuration commit operations fail until the alarm is cleared.



- Although more than one version of a software package can be added to a storage device, only one version of a package can be active for any card.
- Some packages require the activation or deactivation of other packages.
- The package being activated must be compatible with the current active software set.
- Package activation from EXEC mode is supported for specific packages and upgrades, such as optional packages and SMUs. Packages that do not support EXEC mode activation can only be activated for the entire router from administration EXEC mode.

Activation is performed only after the package compatibility checks and API version compatibility checks have been passed. If a conflict is found, an on-screen error message is displayed.

While a software package is being activated, other requests are not allowed to run on any of the impacted nodes. Package activation is completed when a message similar to this one appears:

```
Install operation 2 completed successfully at 20:30:29 UTC Mon Nov 14 2005.
```

Each CLI install request is assigned a request ID, which can be used later to review the events.

## Obtaining and Placing Cisco IOS XR Software

This section contains information to locate the available software packages and to transfer them either to a local storage device or to a network server. When this is done, the package or packages can be added and activated on the router.

There are two primary ways to obtain packages in Cisco IOS XR software:

- Request the software from Cisco on a flash disk that you can insert into the removable flash disk slot (usually flash disk1:). Flash disk1: is optional. When it is installed, flash disk1: can be used to store PIE files, which can then be used to add new software to the boot device (usually flash disk0:).
- Download the Cisco IOS XR software packages to a local storage device of the DSC, such as flash disk1:, or to a remote server, such as a tftp or rcv server.

The boot device is the local disk on the DSC where Cisco IOS XR software is added and activated. PIE files should not be stored on this boot device. The default boot device is disk0:. All PIE files should be stored on flash disk1:.

## Transferring Installation Files from a Network File Server to a Local Storage Device

If the Cisco IOS XR software PIE files are located on a remote TFTP, FTP, SFTP, or rcv server, you can copy the files to a local storage device such as disk1:. When the PIE files are located on a local storage device, the software packages can be added and activated on the router from that storage device. [Table 9: Download Protocols Supported by Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 32](#) describes the supported server protocols, and the CLI syntax used copy files from each server type to the local storage device.



### Tip

Cisco IOS XR software PIE files can also be added to the router boot device directly from the remote server.



### Note

Consult your system administrator for the location and availability of your network server.

**Table 9: Download Protocols Supported by Cisco IOS XR Software**

Name	Description
Trivial File Transfer Protocol	<p>TFTP allows files to be transferred from one computer to another over a network, usually without the use of client authentication (for example, username and password). It is a simplified version of FTP.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Some Cisco IOS XR software images may be larger than 32 MB, and the TFTP services provided by some vendors may not support a file this large. If you do not have access to a TFTP server that supports files larger than 32 MB, download the software image using FTP or rcp.</p>
File Transfer Protocol	FTP is part of the TCP/IP protocol stack and requires a username and password.
Remote Copy Protocol	The rcp protocol uses TCP to ensure the reliable delivery of data, and rcp downloads require a usernames.
SSH File Transfer Protocol	SFTP is part of the SSHv2 feature in the Security package and provides for secure file transfers. For more information, see the <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i> .

The router commands listed in [Table 10: Commands for Copying Package Files to the Router, on page 32](#) show how to copy package files to the router using three types of file transfer protocols.

**Table 10: Commands for Copying Package Files to the Router**

Server Type	Command and Examples
TFTP	<p>The following command syntax is used:</p> <p><b>copy tftp:// hostname_or_ipaddress / directory-path / pie-name disk1:</b></p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# copy tftp://10.1.1.1/images/comp- asr9k-mini.pie disk1:</pre>
FTP	<p>The following command syntax is used:</p> <p><b>copy ftp:// username : password @ hostname_or_ipaddress / directory-path / pie-name disk1:</b></p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# copy ftp://john:secret@10.1.1.1/images/ comp-asr9k-mini.pie disk1:</pre>

Server Type	Command and Examples
rcp	<p>The following command syntax is used:</p> <pre><b>copy rcp:// username @ hostname_or_ipaddress / directory-path / pie-name disk1:</b></pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# copy rcp://john@10.1.1.1/images/ comp-asr9k-mini.pie disk1:</pre>

**Table 11: Command Variables for Copying and Adding Packages from a Network Server, on page 33** describes the command variables for copying packages from a network server.

**Table 11: Command Variables for Copying and Adding Packages from a Network Server**

Variable	Description
<i>hostname_or_ipaddress</i>	Host name or IP address of the server that stores the source file.
<i>pie-name</i>	Name of the PIE file (package). See the <a href="#">Overview of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages, on page 14</a> for descriptions of the available packages.
<i>username</i>	Required for FTP and rcp only and must be a valid username on the FTP or rcp server.
<i>password</i>	Required for FTP only. If a password is not provided, the networking device accepts anonymous FTP.
<i>directory-path</i>	<p>The specified directory should be a directory under the home directory of the user. In the rcp and FTP examples in <a href="#">Table 10: Commands for Copying Package Files to the Router, on page 32</a>, the file being downloaded is in a subdirectory called “images” in the home directory of the user “john.”</p> <p><b>Note</b> For FTP and rcp services, <i>directory-path</i> is the directory relative to the <i>username</i> home directory. If you want to specify an absolute path for the directory, you must add a "/" following the server address.</p>

When the installation files have been transferred to a network file server or the router, you are ready to activate or upgrade the software.



**Note** Files with the `vm` extension are bootable installation files used only to replace all current Cisco IOS XR software. These files are installed from ROM monitor mode and cause significant router downtime. We recommend installing or upgrading software packages using PIE files only, as described in this chapter. See *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers* for information on installing from `vm` files.

### Related Topics

[Adding and Activating Packages, on page 44](#)

[Overview of Cisco IOS XR Software Packages, on page 14](#)

# Preparing for Software Installation Operations

This section includes instructions to prepare for software installation operations.



## Note

Activation is performed only after the automatic package compatibility and API version compatibility checks have been passed. If a conflict is found, an on-screen error message is displayed.

## Before you begin

Before adding or activating Cisco IOS XR software:

- Update the ROM Monitor software, if necessary.
- Determine if a software change is required.
- Verify that the new package is supported on your system. Some software packages require that other packages or package versions be activated, and some packages only support specific cards.
- Review the release notes for important information related to that release and to help determine the package compatibility with your router configuration.
- Verify that the system is stable and prepared for the software changes.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **show diag**
3. Update the ROMMON software if necessary.
4. **show install active**
5. **show install pie-info** *device:package* [ **brief** | **detail** | **verbose** ]
6. **verify packages**
7. **exit**
8. (Optional) **show system verify start**
9. (Optional) **show system verify** [ **detail** | **report** ]
10. **show clock**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show diag</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show diag	Displays the ROMMON software version for all cards in the system. Verify that the correct ROMMON software version is installed before upgrading a Cisco IOS XR software package.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> See <i>Related Topics</i> for information regarding the required ROM Monitor (ROMMON) software version.
<b>Step 3</b>	Update the ROMMON software if necessary.	Updates the ROMMON software. For instructions, see <i>ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers</i> .
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show install active</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install active</pre>	Displays the active software for the owner SDR. Use this command to determine what software should be added, upgraded or downgraded on the router, and to compare to the active software report after installation operations are complete.  <b>Note</b> You can also display the active packages for a specific node, and view results in detailed or summary mode. See the <i>Software Package Management Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i> for more information.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show install pie-info device:package [ brief   detail   verbose ]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install pie-info disk1:/asr9k-mcast-p.pie-3.8.30</pre>	Displays information imbedded in the package. The following keywords provide three levels of information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>brief</b> (default)—Displays the expiration date of the file, the size, and the installed package name. The expiration date is used for certifying the package.</li> <li>• <b>detail</b>—Displays the package components, the compatible cards, the expiration date, file size, and the installed package name.</li> <li>• <b>verbose</b>—Displays information from the <b>detail</b> display and sub-component information.</li> </ul> <b>Note</b> Always review the release notes for the software package for important information related to that release and to help determine the package compatibility with your router configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>verify packages</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install verify packages</pre>	Verifies that there are no corrupted software files. The consistency of a previously installed software set is verified against the package file from which it originated. This command can be used as a debugging tool to verify the validity of the files that constitute the packages, to determine if there are any corrupted files. This command also checks for corruptions of installation state files and MBI image files. This command is particularly useful when issued after the activation of a package or upgrading the Cisco IOS XR software to a major release.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<b>Note</b> The <b>install verify packages</b> command can take up to two minutes per package to process.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit	Exits administration EXEC mode and returns to EXEC mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>show system verify start</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify start	Starts the system status check.
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>show system verify [ detail   report ]</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify	<p>Displays system status information. A variety of information is displayed including the memory and CPU usage, process status, protocol status, and other status information. Use this information to verify that the system is stable.</p> <p>Enter this command in EXEC mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>detail</b>—Displays additional information at the card and processor level, including actual numbers.</li> <li>• <b>report</b>—Displays the same information as the default <b>show system verify</b> command</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Although most of the output should display the status “OK,” some processes may show other output, such as “Warning.” This does not specifically indicate a problem. Contact your Cisco technical support representative for more information on the output of this command.</p>
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show clock</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show clock	Verifies that the system clock is correct. Software operations use certificates based on router clock times.

**Related Topics**

[Activation and Deactivation Prerequisites](#), on page 30

**Examples****Verifying That the ROM Monitor Version Is Correct: Example**

In the following example, the ROM Monitor software version is displayed in the “ROMMON:” field for each card.



**Note** For instructions to upgrade the ROM Monitor software, see *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show diag

Mon Jun 22 12:55:10.554 PST

NODE module 0/RSP0/CPU0 :

  MAIN: board type 0x100302
  S/N:   FOC1230803H
  Top Assy. Number: 68-3160-04
  PID:   A2K-RSP-4G-HDD=
  UDI_VID: VP4
  HwRev: V4.8
  New Deviation Number: 0
  CLEI:  IPUCARJBAA
  Board State : IOS XR RUN
  PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
  MONLIB: QNXFFS Monlib Version 3.2
  ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:173612) [ASR9K ROMMON]
  Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
    Compact Flash : V1.0
    XbarSwitch0   : V1.3
    XbarSwitch1   : V1.3
    XbarArbiter    : V1.0
    XbarInterface : V0.0
    IntCtrl       : V1.14
    ClkCtrl       : V1.13
    PuntFPGA      : V1.5
    HD            : V3.0
    USB0          : V77.20
    USB1          : V77.20
    CPUCtrl       : V1.17
    UTI           : V1.6
    LIU           : V1.0
    MLANSwitch    : V0.0
    EOBCSwitch    : V2.0
    CBC (active partition) : v1.2
    CBC (inactive partition) : v1.1

  NODE fantray 0/FT0/SP :

    MAIN: board type 0x900211
    S/N:
    Top Assy. Number: 32-0000-00
    PID:
    UDI_VID:
    HwRev: V32.0
    New Deviation Number: 0
    CLEI:
    PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
    ROMMON:
    Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
      CBC (active partition) : v4.0
      CBC (inactive partition) : v0.13

  NODE fantray 0/FT1/SP :
```

```

MAIN:  board type 0x900211
S/N:
Top Assy. Number:   32-0000-00
PID:
UDI_VID:
HwRev: V32.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
    CBC (active partition) : v4.0
    CBC (inactive partition) : v0.13

NODE module 0/1/CPU0 :

    MAIN:  board type 0x20207
    S/N:   FOC123081J6
    Top Assy. Number:   68-3182-03
    PID:   A9K-40GE-B
    UDI_VID:   V1D
    HwRev: V0.0
    New Deviation Number: 0
    CLEI:
    Board State : IOS XR RUN
    PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
    ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
    Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
        NP0 : V3.194
        NP1 : V3.194
        NP2 : V3.194
        NP3 : V3.194
        XbarInterface : V18.4
        Bridge0 : V0.38
        Bridge1 : V0.38
        CPUCtrl : V0.15
        USB : V77.20
        PortCtrl : V0.8
        PHYCtrl : V0.6
        40 Port Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
        CBC (active partition) : v2.2
        CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1

NODE module 0/4/CPU0 :

    MAIN:  board type 0x2020a
    S/N:   FOC123081JA
    Top Assy. Number:   68-3183-02
    PID:   A9K-8T/4-B
    UDI_VID:   V1D
    HwRev: V0.0
    New Deviation Number: 0
    CLEI:   IPU3AE0CAA
    Board State : IOS XR RUN
    PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
    ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
    Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
        NP0 : V3.194
        NP1 : V3.194
        NP2 : V3.194
        NP3 : V3.194
        XbarInterface : V18.4
        Bridge0 : V0.38

```



```
Bridge1 : V0.38
CPUCtrl : V0.15
USB : V77.20
PortCtrl : V0.10
PHYCtrl : V0.7
PHY0 : V0.16
PHY1 : V0.16
PHY2 : V0.16
PHY3 : V0.16
PHY4 : V0.16
PHY5 : V0.16
PHY6 : V0.16
PHY7 : V0.16
8 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE module 0/6/CPU0 :

```
MAIN: board type 0x20208
S/N: FHH12250033
Top Assy. Number: 68-3184-02
PID: A9K-4T-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
NP0 : V3.194
NP1 : V3.194
NP2 : V3.194
NP3 : V3.194
XbarInterface : V18.4
Bridge0 : V0.38
Bridge1 : V0.38
CPUCtrl : V0.15
USB : V77.20
PHY0 : V0.16
PHY1 : V0.16
PHY2 : V0.16
PHY3 : V0.16
PortCtrl : V0.10
PHYCtrl : V0.7
4 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE power-module 0/PM0/SP :

```
MAIN: board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 341-00032-01
PID: A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID: V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: ACACACACAC
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
```

```

NODE power-module 0/PM1/SP :

MAIN:  board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number:   341-00032-01
PID:   A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID:  V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:  ACACACACAC
PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:

NODE power-module 0/PM2/SP :

MAIN:  board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number:   341-00032-01
PID:   A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID:  V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:  ACACACACAC
PLD:   Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:

Rack 0 - ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories
RACK NUM: 0
S/N:
PID:   ASR-9010 Backplane
VID:   0.1
Desc:  ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories
CLEI:  NOCLEI
Top Assy. Number:   68-1234-56

```

### Displaying the Active Software for the Entire System: Example

The following example displays the active packages for the entire system. Use this information to determine if a software change is required:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install active summary

Mon Jun 22 13:01:46.438 PST
Default Profile:
SDRs:
  Owner
Active Packages:
  disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mp1s-3.9.0.12I

```

### Displaying Information About the Contents of a PIE File: Example

In the following example, information is displayed about the manageability PIE. This command displays the expiry date of the package, the cards supported by the package, and other details. Use this information to verify the compatibility of the package with your system and other software packages.



#### Note

A software activation is performed only after the automatic package compatibility and API version compatibility checks have been passed. If a conflict is found, an on-screen error message is displayed.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install pie-info disk1:/
asr9k-mgbl-p.pie-3.8.0 detail

Contents of pie file '/disk1:/asr9k-mgbl-p.pie-3.8.0':
  Expiry date       : Jan 19, 2007 02:55:56 UTC
  Uncompressed size : 17892613

  asr9k-mgbl-3.8.0
    asr9k-mgbl V3.8.0[00]  Manageability Package
    Vendor   : Cisco Systems
    Desc     : Manageability Package
    Build    : Built on Wed May 10 08:04:58 UTC 2006
    Source   : By edde-bld1 in /vws/aga/production/3.8.0/asr9k/workspace for c28
    Card(s)  : RP, DRP, DRPSC
    Restart information:
      Default:
        parallel impacted processes restart
    Components in package asr9k-mgbl-3.8.0, package asr9k-mgbl:
      manageability-cwi V[r33x/2]  Craft Web Interface related binaries ae
      asr9k-feature-ipsla V[r33x/1]  IPSLA time stamping feature
      doc-asr9k-mgbl V[r33x/2]  Contains the man page documentation for asr9ks

--More--
```

### Verifying That There Are No Corrupted Software Files: Example

The following sample output verifies the consistency of the currently active software against the file from which it originated:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install verify packages

Mon Jun 22 13:19:08.590 PST
Install operation 3 '(admin) install verify packages' started by user 'user'
via CLI at 13:19:08 DST Mon Jun 22 2009.
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#Info:
This operation can take up to 2 minutes per package being verified.
Info:      Please be patient.

Info:      0/6/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
Info:      meta-data: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-scfclient-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-os-mpi-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
```

```

Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-lc-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fwdg-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I: [ERROR] Detected anomalies.
Info:      /install/asr9k-diags-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-base-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-admin-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      0/1/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
Info:      meta-data: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-scfclient-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-os-mpi-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-lc-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fwdg-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I: [ERROR] Detected anomalies.
Info:      /install/asr9k-diags-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-base-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-admin-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      0/4/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
Info:      meta-data: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-scfclient-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-os-mpi-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-lc-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fwdg-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I: [ERROR] Detected anomalies.
Info:      /install/asr9k-diags-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-base-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-admin-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      0/RSP0/CPU0 [RP] [SDR: Owner]
Info:      meta-data: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I: [ERROR] Detected anomalies.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mgbl-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-k9sec-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-os-mpi-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-base-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-admin-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-fwdg-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-lc-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-rout-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-diags-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification

```

```

Info:      Successful.
Info:      /install/asr9k-scfclient-3.9.0.12I: [SUCCESS] Verification
Info:      Successful.
Info:      Verification Summary:
Info:      0/6/CPU0: ERROR. Anomalies found.
Info:      0/1/CPU0: ERROR. Anomalies found.
Info:      0/4/CPU0: ERROR. Anomalies found.
Info:      0/RSP0/CPU0: ERROR. Anomalies found.
Info:      Anomalies found on the primary RP.
Info:      No standby RP is present.
Info:      Please contact your technical services representative to repair
Info:      the system.
Install operation 3 completed successfully at 13:21:29 DST Mon Jun 22 2009.

```

### Verifying the Current System Status: Example

The following example shows how to prepare for system verification:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify start

Storing initial router status ...
done.

```

The following example shows output from running the **show system verify** command.




---

**Note** Although most of the output should display the status “OK,” some processes may show other output, such as “Warning.” This does not specifically indicate a problem. Contact your Cisco technical support representative for more information on the output of this command.

---

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify

Getting current router status ...
System Verification Report
=====
- Verifying Memory Usage
- Verified Memory Usage           : [OK]
- Verifying CPU Usage
- Verified CPU Usage              : [OK]

- Verifying Blocked Processes
- Verified Blocked Processes      : [OK]
- Verifying Aborted Processes
- Verified Aborted Processes      : [OK]
- Verifying Crashed Processes
- Verified Crashed Processes      : [OK]

- Verifying LC Status
- Verified LC Status              : [OK]
- Verifying QNET Status
Unable to get current LC status info
- Verified QNET Status            : [FAIL]

- Verifying GSP Fabric Status
- Verified GSP Fabric Status      : [OK]
- Verifying GSP Ethernet Status

```

```

gsp WARNING messages for router
Current set of gsp ping nodes does not match initial set of nodes
- Verified GSP Ethernet Status                : [WARNING]

- Verifying POS interface Status
- Verified POS interface Status                : [OK]
- Verifying TenGigE interface Status
- Verified TenGigE interface Status            : [OK]

- Verifying TCP statistics
- Verified TCP statistics                      : [OK]
- Verifying UDP statistics
tcp_udp_raw WARNING messages for router
UDP Packets sent has not increased during this period.
- Verified UDP statistics                      : [WARNING]
- Verifying RAW statistics
- Verified RAW statistics                      : [OK]

- Verifying RIB Status
- Verified RIB Status                          : [OK]
- Verifying CEF Status
- Verified CEF Status                          : [OK]
- Verifying CEF Consistency Status
- Verified CEF Consistency Status              : [OK]
- Verifying BGP Status
- Verified BGP Status                          : [OK]
- Verifying ISIS Status
- Verified ISIS Status                        : [OK]
- Verifying OSPF Status
- Verified OSPF Status                        : [OK]

- Verifying Syslog Messages
- Verified Syslog Messages                     : [OK]

System may not be stable. Please look into WARNING messages.

```

### Verifying That the System Clock Is Correct: Example

The following example displays the current system clock setting:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show clock

02:14:51.474 PST Wed Jan 28 2009

```

## Adding and Activating Packages

The procedure in this section describes how to upgrade or add Cisco IOS XR software PIE files that are stored on a local storage device, such as a flash disk, or on a remote TFTP, FTP, SFTP, or rcp server. The PIE software file can include any of the following:

- The Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle (six packages in one composite PIE file)
- Any of the optional packages (one package per PIE file)
- Software maintenance upgrades (SMUs)

When you need to add and activate two or more of the preceding package types, you should add and activate them in the order listed above.



**Note** When adding and activating two or more packages, optional packages can be activated together. Also, if the operation is a reload, multiple packages can be activated together. For example, five reload SMUs can be activated together or the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle plus the SMUs and optional packages can be activated together.

For a description of the software management process, see the *Related Topics* section.

These instructions are also used to downgrade software packages.



**Note** By default, installation operations are performed asynchronously: the CLI prompt is returned before the operation is complete, allowing the operator to continue work while the installation is completed in the background. Use the **synchronous** keyword at the end of install commands to delay the return of the CLI prompt until an installation operation is complete. See the *Related Topics* section for more information.

### Before you begin

Before upgrading or adding packages, verify that these prerequisites have been met:

- Verify that the ROMMON version is correct. For instructions on upgrading ROM Monitor, see *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*.
- All packages to be upgraded or added are present on a local storage device (for example a flash disk), or a network file server.
- Prerequisites for the activation of packages are met as described in the Prerequisites section.
- Complete the procedures described in the [Preparing for Software Installation Operations, on page 34](#) section.



**Note** To use the automatic FPD upgrade feature, the **fpd auto-upgrade** command must be enabled in administration configuration mode.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. Connect to the console port and log in.
2. (Optional) **dir** *flash-disk* :
3. **admin**
4. **install add** [*source source-path* | **tar**] file [**activate** ]
5. (Optional) **show install inactive summary**
6. **install activate** {*id add-id* | *device package*} [**test**] [*location node-id*] [**pause sw-change**] [*sdr sdr-name*] [**prompt-level** {**all** | **none**}] [**auto-abort-timer** {*time* | **off**}]
7. Repeat [Step 4, on page 46](#) through [Step 6, on page 47](#) until all packages are activated.
8. (Optional) **show install active summary**
9. (Optional) **install verify packages**
10. (Optional) **exit**
11. (Optional) **show system verify start**
12. **admin**

**13. (Optional) install commit****14. Upgrade the field-programmable device (FPD) software, if necessary.****DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Connect to the console port and log in.	Establishes a CLI management session with the SDR. Connect to the console port for the active DSC.  For more information on console connections, see <i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i> .
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>dir flash-disk :</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# dir disk1:	Displays the package files that are available for package upgrades and additions.  <b>Note</b> Only PIE files can be added and activated using this procedure.
<b>Step 3</b>	Required: <b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.  <b>Note</b> Some <b>show install</b> commands can be entered in EXEC mode on an SDR.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>install add [source source-path   tar] file [activate ]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add disk1:/asr9k-mgbl-px.pie-6.0.1  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add source tftp://10.1.1.1/images/ asr9k-k9sec-p.pie asr9k-mls-p.pie asr9k-mcast-p.pie  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add ftp://john:secret@10.1.1.1/images/asr9k-k9sec-p.pie  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add tar rcp://john@10.1.1.1/images/asr9k-iosxr-3.6.0.tar	Unpacks a PIE file from local storage device or network server and adds the package files to the boot device of the router. The boot device is located on the DSC.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the <b>source</b> keyword is used, the <i>source-path</i> specifies the directory path that is used for multiple filenames in the same directory.</li> <li>If the <b>tar</b> keyword is used, all PIE files contained in the tar file are unpacked.</li> </ul> <p>The <i>file</i> argument can take any of these formats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>device filename</i></li> <li><b>tftp://hostname_or_ipaddress /directory-path /filename</b></li> <li><b>ftp:// username:password@hostname_or_ipaddress /directory-path/filename</b></li> <li><b>rcp://username@hostname_or_ipaddress/ directory-path/filename</b></li> </ul> <p>These are descriptions for each of the terms used here:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>device</i>—Name of the local storage device where the PIE file is stored, such as <b>disk1:/</b>.</li> <li><i>filename</i>—Name of the PIE file you want to add. If the <b>tar</b> keyword is used, the <i>file</i> argument is the name</li> </ul>



	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>of a tar file containing one or more PIE files, or directories containing PIE files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>fttp://</b>—Unpacks the PIE file from a network server using Trivial File Transfer Protocol.</li> <li>• <b>ftp://</b>—Unpacks the PIE file from a network server using File Transfer Protocol.</li> <li>• <b>rcp://</b>—Unpacks the PIE file from a network server using Remote Copy Protocol</li> <li>• <i>hostname_or_ipaddress</i>—Host name or IP address of the network file server.</li> <li>• <i>directory-path</i>—Network file server path that leads to the PIE file to be added.</li> <li>• <i>username</i>—Username of user that has access privileges to the directory in which the PIE file is stored.</li> <li>• <i>password</i>—Password associated with the username of user that has access privileges to the directory in which the PIE file is stored.</li> <li>• <b>activate</b>—Automatically activates the software package after it is successfully added.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Multiple versions of a software package can be added to the storage device without impacting the running configuration, but only one version of a package can be activated for a card.</p> <p><b>Tip</b> The automatic FPD upgrade occurs only when the FPD pie is added and activated together with the install PIE.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>show install inactive summary</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install inactive summary</pre>	Displays the inactive packages on the router. Verify that the package added in the previous step appears in the display.
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>install activate</b> {<i>id add-id</i>   <i>device package</i>} [<b>test</b>] [<i>location node-id</i>] [<b>pause sw-change</b>] [<i>sdr sdr-name</i>] [<b>prompt-level</b> {<b>all</b>   <b>none</b>}] [<b>auto-abort-timer</b> {<i>time</i>   <b>off</b>}]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install activate disk0:asr9k-mini-px-4.3.99</pre>	<p>Activates a package that was added to the router. (Skip this step if the package was activated earlier with the <b>install add</b> command.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>id add-id</b>—Specifies the package using the operation ID of the <b>install add</b> operation in which you added the package. The operation ID is provided in the output of the <b>install add</b> command. You can also use <b>show install log</b> to display installation operation IDs.</li> <li>• <i>device:package</i>—Specifies the package by name. Replace the <i>device:package</i> argument with the name</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>of the boot device and inactive package, which can be displayed as described in the previous step.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Press <b>?</b> after a partial package name to display all possible matches available for activation. If there is only one match, press <b>[TAB]</b> to fill in the rest of the package name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>location <i>node-id</i></b>—Activates a package for a specific card (node). To display a list of node IDs for the entire system, enter the <b>show platform</b> command in administration EXEC mode. A package cannot be activated on a single node unless some version of the package being activated is already active on all nodes.</li> <li>• <b>Note</b> By default, packages are activated for all cards supported by that package.</li> <li>• <b>pause sw-change</b>—Pauses the operation after preparatory checks and before the configuration is locked for the actual activation. This action enables you to hold the operation while you perform configuration changes, and proceed with the activation whenever you choose. This operation is useful, for example, if your workflow involves configuring a router out of the network during software installation and you want to minimize the time that the router is out of the network. Follow onscreen instructions to control the pausing and completion of the operation.</li> <li>• <b>prompt-level</b>—Use a prompt-level of <b>all</b> to view all stages of the installation process and to specify whether to continue, or not.</li> <li>• <b>auto-abort-timer</b>—Specifies an abort timer value, in minutes, which when expired loads the last committed loadpath. The default is 60. The timer is enabled by default. After the installation, if the activated software is working correctly, use the <b>install commit</b> command to cancel the timer and commit the new loadpath.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The package being activated must be compatible with the currently active software to operate. When an activation is attempted, the system runs an automatic compatibility check to ensure that the package is compatible with the other active software on the router. The activation is permitted only after all compatibility checks have been passed.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>Tip</b> When activating packages, use the <b>test</b> option to test the effects of a command without impacting the running system. After the activation process finishes, enter the <b>show install log</b> command to display the process results.</p> <p><b>Tip</b> The automatic FPD upgrade occurs only when the FPD pie is added and activated together with the install PIE.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	Repeat <a href="#">Step 4, on page 46</a> through <a href="#">Step 6, on page 47</a> until all packages are activated.	Activates additional packages as required.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>show install active summary</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install active</pre>	Displays all active packages. Use this display to determine if the correct packages are active:
<b>Step 9</b>	(Optional) <b>install verify packages</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install verify packages</pre>	<p>Verifies the consistency of a installed software set with the package file from which it originated. This command can be used as a debugging tool to verify the validity of the files that constitute the packages, to determine whether there are any corrupted files. This command also checks for corruptions of installation state files and MBI image files. This command is particularly useful when issued after the activation of a package or upgrading the Cisco IOS XR software to a major release.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <b>install verify packages</b> command can take up to two minutes for each package to process.</p>
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit</pre>	<p>Exits administration EXEC mode and returns to EXEC mode.</p> <p>Use this command only if you performed the installation operations in administration EXEC mode.</p>
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>show system verify start</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify start</pre>	Starts the system status check.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 13</b>	(Optional) <b>install commit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# dir disk1:</pre> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit</pre>	Commits the current set of packages for an SDR or for all SDRs so that these packages are used if the router is restarted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This command can be used from either administration EXEC or EXEC mode.</li> </ul> For more information, see the <i>Related Topics</i> section.
<b>Step 14</b>	Upgrade the field-programmable device (FPD) software, if necessary.	Whenever a Cisco IOS XR software image that supports SPAs and SIPs is released, a companion SPA or SIP FPD image is bundled with the Cisco IOS XR software release. Generally, the FPD image is not automatically upgraded. You must manually upgrade the FPD image running on the SPA or SIP when you upgrade the Cisco IOS XR software image. FPD versions must be compatible with the Cisco IOS XR software that is running on the router.  <b>Note</b> If you have enabled the <b>fpd auto-upgrade</b> command and add and activate the FPD PIE together with the software installation PIE, the FPD image is automatically upgraded before the router is rebooted.  For information on FPDs, including instructions to upgrade FPD images, see the <i>Upgrading FPD Cisco IOS XR Software</i> section.

### Related Topics

[Obtaining and Placing Cisco IOS XR Software](#), on page 31  
[Activation and Deactivation Prerequisites](#), on page 30  
[Preparing for Software Installation Operations](#), on page 34  
[Information About Package Management](#), on page 18  
[Downgrading Packages](#), on page 26  
[PIE Filenames and Version Numbers](#), on page 16  
[Committing the Active Package Set](#), on page 53  
[Prerequisites for ISSU](#)  
[Restrictions for ISSU](#)  
[ISSU Software Images](#)

## Examples

### Adding a Package: Example

The following example shows how to add the contents of a PIE file on disk1: to the boot device. Because the software package is added to the boot device by default, it is not necessary to specify the destination device in the CLI.



**Note** From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 6.0.1 and later, you must append a forward slash (/) to the source location (for example, **disk1:/**) of the PIE file in the **install add** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add disk1:/asr9k-mpls-px.pie-6.0.1 synchronous

Install operation 4 'install add /disk1:/asr9k-mpls.pie-mpls-px.pie-6.0.1 synchronous'
started by user
'cisco' at 18:10:18 UTC Sat Apr 08 2009.
Info:      The following package is now available to be activated:
Info:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-px.pie-6.0.1
Info:
Install operation 4 completed successfully at 18:14:11 UTC Sat Apr 08 2009.
```

The following example shows how to add the contents of a PIE file on a TFTP server to the boot device:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add tftp://209.165.201.1/
asr9k-mpls.pie synchronous

Install operation 4 '(admin) install add /tftp://209.165.201.1/asr9k-mpls.pie synchronous'
started by user 'cisco' at 18:16:18 UTC Thu Jan 03 2009.
Info:      The following package is now available to be activated:
Info:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2
Info:
Install operation 4 completed successfully at 18:19:10 UTC Thu Jan 03 2009.
```

### Activating a Package: Example

The following example shows the activation of the MPLS package. The package is activated on the boot device disk0:.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install activate disk0:
asr9k-mpls-3.7.2 synchronous

Install operation 15 'install activate disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2 synchronous'
started by user 'lab' at 19:15:33 UTC Sat Apr 08 2009.
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info:      across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install commit' to make
Info:      changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info:      change using the following commands:
Info:      show system verify
Info:      install verify packages
Install operation 5 completed successfully at 19:16:18 UTC Sat Apr 08 2009.
```

### Activating a Package by Specifying an Operation ID: Example

The following example shows the activation of the MPLS package using the operation ID of the **install add** operation that added the package:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install activate id 4

Install operation 5 '(admin) install activate id 4' started by user 'lab' via
CLI at 18:20:17 UTC Thu Jan 03 2009.
Info:      This operation will activate the following package:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.7.2
Info:      Install Method: Parallel Process Restart
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info:      across system reloads. Use the command '(admin) install commit' to
Info:      make changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info:      change using the following commands:
Info:          show system verify
Info:          install verify packages
Install operation 5 completed successfully at 18:21:30 UTC Thu Jan 03 2009.
```

### Adding and Activating a Package from an FTP File Server with One Command: Example

To add and activate a package with a single command, enter the **install add** command with the **activate** keyword. In the following example, the Manageability PIE located on disk1: is verified, unpacked, and added to the boot device disk0. Because this operation is performed in administration EXEC mode, the package is activated for all SDRs in the system.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add disk1:/
asr9k-mgbl-px.pie-6.0.1 activate

Install operation 4 'install add /disk1:/asr9k-mgbl-px.pie-6.0.1 activate' started
by user 'cisco' at 07:58:56 UTC Wed Mar 01 2009.
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
:router(admin)#Part 1 of 2 (add software): Started
Info:      The following package is now available to be activated:
Info:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mgbl-px.pie-6.0.1
Info:
Part 1 of 2 (add software): Completed successfully
Part 2 of 2 (activate software): Started
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be
persistent across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install
Info:      commit' to make changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following
the software change using the following commands:
Info:          show system verify
Info:          install verify packages
Part 2 of 2 (activate software): Completed successfully
Part 1 of 2 (add software): Completed successfully
Part 2 of 2 (activate software): Completed successfully
Install operation 4 completed successfully at 08:00:24 UTC Wed Mar 01 2009.
```

### Displaying the Active Packages: Example

The following example displays a summary of the active packages on a router. Because this operation is performed in administration EXEC mode, the active packages for all SDRs are displayed.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install active summary
Mon Jun 22 23:41:19.509 PST
Default Profile:
SDRs:
  Owner
Active Packages:
  disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.9.0.12I
  disk0:asr9k-mps-3.9.0.12I
```

## Committing the Active Package Set

When a package is activated, it becomes part of the current running configuration. To make the package activation persistent across system-wide reloads, enter the **install commit** command. On startup, DSC of the owner SDR loads this committed software set. If the system is reloaded before the current active software is committed with the **install commit** command, the previously committed software set is used.

If the system is reloaded before the current active software is committed with the **install commit** command, the previously committed software set is used.



**Tip** Before committing a package set, verify that the SDR is operating correctly and is forwarding packets as expected.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **install commit**
3. **show install committed [detail | summary | verbose] [location node-id]**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	Required: <b>install commit</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Commits the current set of packages on the router so that these packages are used if the router is restarted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This command can be used from either administration EXEC or EXEC mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show install committed [detail   summary   verbose] [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install committed	Displays which packages are committed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter this command in administration EXEC mode to display information for the entire system.</li> <li>Enter this command in EXEC mode to display information for a specific SDR only.</li> <li>For more information on the command options, see <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>.</li> </ul>

## Examples

### Committing the Active Package Set: Example

In the following example, the active software packages are committed on the router:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit

Install operation 16 'install commit' started by user 'lab' at 19:18:58 UTC
Sat Apr 08 2009.
Install operation 16 completed successfully at 19:19:01 UTC Sat Apr 08 2009.
```

### Displaying the Committed Package Versions: Example

In the following example, the committed packages are shown for the owner SDR:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install committed

Tue Jun 23 05:11:29.968 PST
Secure Domain Router: Owner

Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 [RP] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: disk0:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/mbiasr9k-rp.vm
  Committed Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I

Node 0/1/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Committed Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mpls-3.9.0.12I
```



```

Node 0/4/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Committed Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mpis-3.9.0.12I

Node 0/6/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Committed Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mcast-3.9.0.12I
    disk0:asr9k-mpis-3.9.0.12I

```

As with the **show install active** command, the **show install committed** command may display a composite package that represents all packages in the Cisco IOS XR Unicast Routing Core Bundle.

## Upgrading to Cisco IOS XR Software Release 4.0

The main difference between the standard upgrade procedure and the procedure required to upgrade from Release 3.x to 4.x is that the later requires the addition of one additional software package, known as the *upgrade package* (asr9k-upgrade-p.pie).

### Before you begin

Before performing this procedure, refer to the adding and activating software package procedures described in *System Management Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **install add tftp:// hostname\_or\_ipaddress / directory-path / mandatory-bundle-pie**
3. **install add tftp:// hostname\_or\_ipaddress / directory-path / asr9k-upgrade-p.pie**
4. **install activate device:mandatory-bundle-pie device:upgrade-package**
5. **install deactivate device:upgrade-package**
6. (Optional) **install commit**
7. **install remove device:upgrade-package**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Required: <b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From administration EXEC mode, you can perform installation operations for the entire system. To enter administration EXEC mode, you must be logged in to the owner SDR and have root-system access privileges.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This command is not required.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Some <b>show install</b> commands can be entered in EXEC mode on an SDR.</p>
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>install add tftp:// hostname_or_ipaddress / directory-path / mandatory-bundle-pie</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add tftp://10.1.1.1/auto/tftpboot/usr/400/asr9k-mini-p.pie	Unpacks the mandatory bundle PIE file from a network server and adds the package file to the boot device of the router.  <p><b>Note</b> Refer to the standard procedure to add and activate packages to see other options of PIE file locations and a description of the various arguments for the <b>install add</b> command.</p>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>install add tftp:// hostname_or_ipaddress / directory-path / asr9k-upgrade-p.pie</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add tftp://10.1.1.1/auto/tftpboot/usr/400/asr9k-upgrade-p.pie	Unpacks the upgrade PIE file from a network server and adds the package file to the boot device of the router.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>install activate device:mandatory-bundle-pie device:upgrade-package</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install activate disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0 disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0	Activates the package that was added to the router together with the upgrade package.  <p><b>Note</b> The bundle of mandatory packages and the upgrade bundle are activated together to perform the successful upgrade from release 3.x to 4.x.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>install deactivate device:upgrade-package</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install deactivate disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0	Deactivates the upgrade package on the router. For specific information regarding the deactivation and removal of software packages, refer to the general procedure.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>install commit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit	Commits the current set of packages so that these packages are used if the router is restarted. Packages can be removed only if the deactivation operation is committed.
<b>Step 7</b>	Required: <b>install remove device:upgrade-package</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install remove disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0	Removes the inactive upgrade package.

### Example

The following example illustrates the upgrade operation:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/
asr9k-mini-p.pie
```

```
Fri Jul 9 03:53:11.052 UTCRP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 03:53:12.053 :
instdir[235]: %INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_STARTED :
Install operation 4 '(admin) install add
/tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-mini-p.pie'
started by user 'lab'
Install operation 4 '(admin) install add
/tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-mini-p.pie'
started by user 'lab' via CLI at 03:53:12 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
Info: The following package is now available to be activated:
Info: disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
Info: The package can be activated across the entire router.
Info: RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 04:32:26.152 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_COMPLETED_SUCCESSFULLY :
Info: Install operation 4 completed successfully
Info: Install operation 4 completed successfully at 04:32:26 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install add /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/
asr9k-mpls-p.pie
```

```
Fri Jul 9 05:07:52.237 UTCRP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:07:53.710 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_STARTED :
Info: Install operation 5 '(admin) install add
Info: /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-mpls-p.pie'
Info: started by user 'lab'
Info: Install operation 5 '(admin) install add
Info: /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-mpls-p.pie'
Info: started by user 'lab' via CLI at 05:07:53 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
Info: The install operation will continue asynchronously.
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
Info: RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:09:08.854 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_COMPLETED_SUCCESSFULLY :
Install operation 5 completed successfully
Info: The following package is now available to be activated:
Info: disk0:asr9k-mpls-p-4.0.0
Info: The package can be activated across the entire router.
Info: Install operation 5 completed successfully at 05:09:08 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# install add /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/
asr9k-upgrade-p.pie
```

```
Fri Jul 9 05:10:31.133 UTCRP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:10:32.156 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_STARTED :
Info: Install operation 6 '(admin) install add
Info: /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-upgrade-p.pie'
Info: started by user 'lab'
Info: Install operation 6 '(admin) install add
Info: /tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftpboot/users/user/asr9k-upgrade-p.pie'
Info: started by user 'lab' via CLI at 05:10:32 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
Info: The install operation will continue asynchronously.
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#RP/0/RP1/CPU0:
Jul 9 05:11:55.634 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_COMPLETED_SUCCESSFULLY :
Info: Install operation 6 completed successfully
Info: The following package is now available to be activated:
Info: disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0
Info: The package can be activated across the entire router.
Info: Install operation 6 completed successfully at 05:11:55 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install activate disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0 disk0:asr9k-mpls-p-4.0.0
```

```

Fri Jul 9 05:23:23.150 UTC
Install operation 7 '(admin) install activate disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
Info: disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0 disk0:asr9k-mpls-p-4.0.0'
Info: started by user 'lab'RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:23:24.161 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_STARTED :
Info: Install operation 7 '(admin) install activate disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
Info: disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0 disk0:asr9k-mpls-p-4.0.0'
Info: started by user 'lab' via CLI at 05:23:24 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.\ 1% complete:
Info: The operation can still be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Info: This operation will reload the following nodes in parallel:
Info: 0/RP1/CPU0 (HRP) (SDR: Owner)
Info: 0/SM0/SP (Fabric-SP) (Admin Resource)Proceed with this install operation (y/n)?
[y]|
Info: 1% complete: The operation can still be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Info: Install Method: Parallel Reload/ 1% complete: The operation can still be aborted
(ctrl-c for options)
Info: The install operation will continue asynchronously.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#SP/0/SM0/SP:
Jul 9 05:36:41.152 : insthelper[62]: %INSTALL-INSTHELPER-6-RELOAD_NODE_INFO :
Info: As part of install operation 7 this node (0/SM0/SP) will now reload.
Info: The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info: across system reloads. Use the command '(admin) install commit' to
Info: make changes persistent.
Info: Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:36:43.962 : instdir[235]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-6-INSTALL_OPERATION_COMPLETED_SUCCESSFULLY :
Info: Install operation 7 completed successfully
Info: change using the following commands:
Info: show system verify
Info: install verify packages
Info: Install operation 7 completed successfully at 05:36:43 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
rebooting .....Initializing DDR SDRAM...found 4096 MB
Initializing ECC on bank 0Initializing ECC on bank 1
Initializing ECC on bank 2
Initializing ECC on bank 3
Turning off data cache, using DDR for first time
Initializing NVRAM...Testing a portion of DDR SDRAM ...done
Reading ID EEPROMs .....
Initializing SQUID ...
Initializing PCI ...PCI0 device[1]: Vendor ID 0x10eePCI0 device[1]: Device ID 0x300ePCI1
device[1]:
Device ID 0x1100PCI1 device[1]: Vendor ID 0x1013PCI1 device[2]: Device ID 0x680PCI1 device[2]:
Vendor ID 0x1095PCI1 device[3]: Device ID 0x5618PCI1 device[3]: Vendor ID 0x14e4Configuring
MPPs ...
Configuring PCMCIA slots ...System Bootstrap, Version 1.53(20090311:225342) [CRS-1 ROMMON],

Copyright (c) 1994-2009 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Acquiring backplane mastership ... successful
Preparing for fan initialization..... ready
Setting fan speed to 4000 RPMs successfulReading backplane EEPROM ...
Released backplane mastership ...Board type is 0x100002 (1048578)
Switch 0 initialized
Switch 0 Port fel: link up (100Mb Full Duplex Copper)
Enabling watchdogG4(7457-NonSMP-MV64360 Rev 3) platform with 4096 MB of main memory....

CARD_RACK_NUMBER: 0 CARD_SLOT_NUMBER: 1 CPU_INSTANCE: 1
RACK_SERIAL_NUMBER: TBC08052402
MBI Validation starts ... using Control Plane Ethernet.
DEBUG : Driving up signal strength for Intel LXT971
Our MAC address is 0005.9a3e.89da
Interface link changed state to UP.
Interface link state up.
MBI validation sending request.

```

```

HIT CTRL-C to abort
MBI validation sending request.
HIT CTRL-C to abort
MBI validation sending request.
HIT CTRL-C to abort
MBI validation sending request.
HIT CTRL-C to abort
MBI validation sending request.
HIT CTRL-C to abort
No MBI confirmation received from dSboot: booting from
bootflash:disk0/asr9k-os-mpi-4.0.0/mbiasr9k-rp.vm
.....
#####

Restricted Rights LegendUse, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is
subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph(c) of the Commercial Computer Software
- Restricted
Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph(c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical
Data and Computer
Software clause at DFARS sec. 252.227-7013.
cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, California 95134-1706
Cisco IOS XR Software for the Cisco XR Router, Version 4.0.0 Copyright (c) 2010 by Cisco
Systems, Inc.
Jul 09 05:39:21.334 : Install (Node Preparation): Booting with software activated by previous
install
operation,errno=2
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:44:45.941: syslogd_helper: [89]: dsc_event_handler: Got SysMgr dSC
event : 1
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:45:11.354 : shelfmgr[306]: %PLATFORM-SHELFMGR-3-POWERDOWN_RESET :
Node 0/2/SP is powered off due to admin power off request ios con0/RP1/CPU0 is now available
Press RETURN to get started.
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:45:27.453 : instdir[216]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-4-ACTIVE_SOFTWARE_COMMITTED_INFO :
The currently active software is not committed. If the system reboots then the committed
software will be used.
Use 'install commit' to commit the active software. SYSTEM CONFIGURATION IN PROCESS
The startup configuration for this device is presently loading.
This may take a few minutes. You will be notified upon completion.
Please do not attempt to reconfigure the device until this process is complete.
User Access VerificationUsername: labPassword:
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
Fri Jul 9 05:45:55.941 UTC
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show platform

Fri Jul 9 05:45:59.805 UTCNode          Type          PLIM          State
Config State
-----
0/2/SP          MSC(SP)        N/A           UNPOWERED     NPWR,NSHUT,MON
0/RP1/CPU0      RP(Active)     N/A           IOS XR RUN    PWR,NSHUT,MON
0/SM0/SP        FC-40G/S(SP)  N/A           MBI-RUNNING   PWR,NSHUT,MON
0/SM1/*         UNKNOWN        N/A           PRESENT       PWR,NSHUT,MON

RP/0/RP1/CPU0:ios(admin)#
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:46:08.411 : instdir_lr[217]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-4-ACTIVE_SOFTWARE_COMMITTED_INFO :
The currently active software is not committed. If the system reboots then the committed
software will be used.
Use 'install commit' to commit the active software.
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:50:40.918 : placed[283]: LR-PLANE-READY DECLARATIONSYSTEM
CONFIGURATION COMPLETED
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul 9 05:50:57.293 : ifmgr[213]: %PKT_INFRA-LINK-3-UPDOWN :
Interface MgmtEth0/RP1/CPU0/0, changed state to Down

```

```
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul  9 05:50:57.313 : ifmgr[213]: %PKT_INFRA-LINK-3-UPDOWN :
Interface MgmtEth0/RP1/CPU0/0, changed state to Up
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show platform
```

```
Fri Jul  9 05:59:36.266 UTC
Node                Type                PLIM                State                Config State
-----
0/2/SP              MSC(SP)              N/A                UNPOWERED            NPWR,NSHUT,MON
0/RP1/CPU0          RP(Active)           N/A                IOS XR RUN            PWR,NSHUT,MON
0/SM0/SP            FC-40G/S(SP)         N/A                IOS XR RUN            PWR,NSHUT,MON
0/SM1/*             UNKNOWN              N/A                PRESENT              PWR,NSHUT,MON
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit
```

```
Fri Jul  9 05:59:41.851 UTC
Install operation 8 '(admin) install commit' started by user 'lab' via CLI at
05:59:43 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010./
20% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)-
20% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)\
100% complete:
The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul  9 05:59:46.402 : instdir[216]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-4-ACTIVE_SOFTWARE_COMMITTED_INFO :
The currently active software is now the same as the committed software.
Install operation 8 completed successfully at 05:59:46 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install deactivate disk0:
asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0
```

```
Fri Jul  9 05:59:58.082 UTC
Install operation 9 '(admin) install deactivate disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0' started
by user 'lab' via CLI at 05:59:59 UTC
Fri Jul 09 2010.
1% complete: The operation can still be aborted (ctrl-c for options)-
1% complete: The operation can still be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Info:      Install Method: Parallel Process Restart\
1% complete: The operation can still be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info:      across system reloads. Use the command '(admin) install commit' to
Info:      make changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info:      change using the following commands:
Info:      show system verify
Info:      install verify packages
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul  9 06:01:45.662 : instdir[216]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-4-ACTIVE_SOFTWARE_COMMITTED_INFO :
The currently active software is not committed. If the system reboots then the committed
software will be used.
Use 'install commit' to commit the active software.
Install operation 9 completed successfully at 06:01:45 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit
```

```
Fri Jul  9 06:01:53.583 UTC
Install operation 10 '(admin) install commit' started by user 'lab' via CLI at 06:01:54 UTC
Fri Jul 09 2010./
20% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)-
20% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)\
100% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:Jul  9 06:01:57.807 : instdir[216]:
%INSTALL-INSTMGR-4-ACTIVE_SOFTWARE_COMMITTED_INFO :
The currently active software is now the same as the committed software.
Install operation 10 completed successfully at 06:01:57 UTC Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
```

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install remove disk0:
asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0

Fri Jul 9 06:04:57.676 UTC
Install operation 11 '(admin) install remove disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0' started
  by user 'lab' via CLI at 06:04:58 UTC
Fri Jul 09 2010./
1% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Info:      This operation will remove the following packages:
Info:      disk0:asr9k-fpd-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-doc-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-k9sec-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-sbc-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-diags-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mgbl-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mcast-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-rout-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-fwgd-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-lc-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-admin-4.0.0
Info:      disk0:asr9k-upgrade-p-4.0.0-
1% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Info:      After this install remove the following install rollback point will
Info:      no longer be reachable, as the required packages will not be present:
Info:      7\
1% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
Proceed with removing these packages? [confirm]|
1% complete: The operation can no longer be aborted (ctrl-c for options)
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#SP/0/SM0/SP:Jul
9 06:05:03.902 : envmon[117]: %PLATFORM-ENVMON-4-ALARM : MINOR_HI alarm
cleared by host__temp__Inlet0
Install operation 11 completed successfully at 06:05:33 UTC
Fri Jul 09 2010.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install act
Fri Jul 9 06:08:11.372 UTC
Secure Domain Router: Owner  Node 0/RP1/CPU0 [HRP] [SDR: Owner]
Boot Device: disk0:      Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-4.0.0/mbiasr9k-rp.vm
Active Packages:      disk0:asr9k-mpls-p-4.0.0      disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
Admin Resources:  Node 0/SM0/SP [Fabric-SP] [Admin Resource]
Boot Device: bootflash:  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-4.0.0/sp/mbiasr9k-sp.vm
Active Packages:      disk0:asr9k-mini-p-4.0.0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#

```

### Related Topics

[Activation and Deactivation Prerequisites](#), on page 30

[Adding and Activating Packages](#), on page 44

[Deactivating and Removing Cisco IOS XR Software Packages](#), on page 61

## Deactivating and Removing Cisco IOS XR Software Packages

When a package is deactivated, it is no longer active on the router, but the package files remain on the boot disk. The package files can be reactivated later, or they can be removed from the disk.

A package is deactivated using the following methods:

- When a newer version of a package is activated, the earlier version of the package is automatically deactivated. See *Related Topics* for more information.




---

**Note** Activating a software maintenance upgrade (SMU) does not cause any earlier SMUs or the package to which the SMU applies to be automatically deactivated.

---

- When an earlier version of a package is activated, the newer version is deactivated automatically. See *Related Topics* for more information.
- A specific package is deactivated using the **install deactivate** command. This command turns off the package features for a card or card type.

### Before you begin

The following are the restrictions when deactivating and removing Cisco IOS XR Software packages:

- A package cannot be deleted if it is part of the running or committed software of the SDR.
- A package cannot be deactivated if that package is required by another active package. When a deactivation is attempted, the system runs an automatic check to ensure that the package is not required by other active packages. The deactivation is permitted only after all compatibility checks have been passed.
- Router reloads: If the deactivation requires a router reload, a confirmation prompt appears. Use the **install deactivate** command with the **prompt-level none** keywords to automatically ignore any reload confirmation prompts and proceed with the package deactivation. The router reloads if required.
- Node reloads: If a software operation requires a node reload, the configuration register for that node should be set to autoboot. If the config-register for the node is not set to autoboot, then the system automatically changes the setting and the node reloads. A message describing the change is displayed.
- FPD versions must be compatible with the Cisco IOS XR software that is running on the router; if an incompatibility exists between an FPD version and the Cisco IOS XR software, the device with the field-programmable gate array (FPGA) may not operate properly until the incompatibility is resolved. For information on FPDs, including instructions to upgrade FPD images, see the *Upgrading FPD Cisco IOS XR Software* module of *Interface and Hardware Component Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Connect to the console port and log in.
2. **admin**
3. **install deactivate** { **id** *add-id* | **device** : *package* } [ **location** *node-id* ] [ **test** ] [ **pause sw-change** ]
4. (Optional) **show install inactive summary**
5. (Optional) **install verify packages**
6. **exit**
7. (Optional) **show system verify start**
8. (Optional) **show system verify** [ **detail** | **report** ]
9. **admin**
10. (Optional) **install commit**
11. (Optional) **install remove** { **id** *add-id* | **device** : *package* | **inactive** } [ **test** ]



## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Connect to the console port and log in.	Establishes a CLI management session with the SDR.  Connect to the console port for the active DSC.  For more information on console connections, see <i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i> .
<b>Step 2</b>	Required: <b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From administration EXEC mode, you can perform installation operations for the router. To enter administration EXEC mode, you must be logged in to the owner SDR and have root-system access privileges.</li> <li>This command is not required.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>install deactivate</b> { <b>id</b> <i>add-id</i>   <b>device</b> : <i>package</i> } [ <b>location</b> <i>node-id</i> ] [ <b>test</b> ] [ <b>pause sw-change</b> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install deactivate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2	Deactivates a package on a router.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To deactivate all packages that were added in one or more specific install add operations, or specify packages by name, use the <b>id</b> <i>add-id</i> keyword and argument. The operation ID of an install add operation is indicated in the syslog displayed during the operation and in the output of the <b>show install log</b> command.</li> <li>To deactivate a package for the router, use this command in administration EXEC mode.</li> <li>To deactivate a package when logged in to an SDR, use this command in EXEC mode.</li> <li>Use the <b>location</b> <i>node-id</i> keyword and argument to deactivate the package for a specific node, if supported.</li> <li>Use the <b>pause sw-change</b> keywords to pause the operation after preparatory checks and before the configuration is locked for the actual deactivation. This enables you to hold the operation while you perform configuration changes, and proceed with the deactivation whenever you choose. This is useful, for example, if your workflow involves configuring a router out of the network during software changes and you want to minimize the time that the router is out of the network. Follow the onscreen instructions to control the pausing and completion of the operation.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>Note</b> Press <b>?</b> after a partial package name to display all possible matches available for deactivation. If there is only one match, press [TAB] to fill in the rest of the package name.</p> <p>When a package is deactivated for an SDR from administration EXEC mode, a notification message appears on the console for that SDR, with information on the impact of the deactivation.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>show install inactive summary</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install inactive summary</pre>	Displays the inactive packages on the router.
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>install verify packages</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install verify packages</pre>	<p>Verifies the consistency of an installed software set with the package file from which it originated. This command can be used as a debugging tool to verify the validity of the files that constitute the packages, to determine if there are any corrupted files. This command also checks for corruptions of installation state files and MBI image files. This command is particularly useful when issued after the activation of a package or upgrading the Cisco IOS XR software to a major release.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The <b>install verify packages</b> command can take up to two minutes per package to process.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	Required: <b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit</pre>	<p>Exits administration EXEC mode and returns to EXEC mode.</p> <p>Use this command only if you performed the installation operations in administration EXEC mode.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show system verify start</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify start</pre>	Starts the system status check.
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>show system verify [ detail   report ]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show system verify</pre>	<p>Displays system status information. A variety of information is displayed including the memory and CPU usage, process status, protocol status, and other status information. Use this information to verify that the system is stable.</p> <p>Enter this command in EXEC mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>detail</b>—Displays additional information at the card and processor level, including actual numbers.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>report</b>—Displays the same information as the default <b>show system verify</b> command</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Although most of the output should display the status “OK,” some processes may show other output, such as “Warning.” This does not specifically indicate a problem. Contact your Cisco technical support representative for more information on the output of this command.</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 10</b>	(Optional) <b>install commit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit</pre>	Commits the current set of packages so that these packages are used if the router is restarted. Packages can be removed only if the deactivation operation is committed.  <p><b>Note</b> This command is entered in administration EXEC or EXEC mode.</p>
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>install remove { id <i>add-id</i>   device : <i>package</i>   inactive } [ test ]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install remove disk0:asr9k-diags-3.8.30</pre>	Removes the inactive package. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only inactive packages can be removed.</li> <li>• Packages can be removed only if they are deactivated from all cards in the router.</li> <li>• The package deactivation must be committed.</li> <li>• To remove a specific inactive package from a storage device, use the <b>install remove</b> command with the <b>device: <i>package</i></b> arguments.</li> <li>• To remove all packages that were added in one or more specific <b>install add</b> operations, use the <b>id <i>add-id</i></b> keyword and argument. The operation ID of an <b>install add</b> operation is indicated in the syslog displayed during the operation and in the output of the <b>show install log</b> command. If you specify packages according to operation ID, all the packages that were added by the specified operation must still be on the router.</li> <li>• To remove all inactive packages from all nodes in the system, use the <b>install remove</b> command with the <b>inactive</b> keyword.</li> <li>• You can use the <b>install remove</b> command in either administration EXEC or EXEC mode.</li> </ul>

### Related Topics

[Adding and Activating Packages](#), on page 44

[Committing the Active Package Set](#), on page 53

## Examples

In the following examples, a package is deactivated from the router. The changes are committed and the inactive package is removed from the router.

### Deactivating the Package: Example

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install deactivate disk0:asr9k
-diags-3.7.2
```

```
Install operation 27 'install deactivate disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2' started by
user 'lab' at 23:29:37 UTC Sat Apr 15 2009.
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
Info:      The changes made to software configuration
Info:      across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install commit' to make
Info:      changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info:      change using the following commands:
Info:      show system verify
Info:      install verify packages
Install operation 27 completed successfully at 23:30:22 UTC Sat Apr 15 2009.
```

### Committing the Active Software Set: Example

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install commit
```

```
Install operation 29 'install commit' started by user 'lab' at 23:39:21 UTC
Sat Apr 15 2009.
Install operation 29 completed successfully at 23:39:24 UTC Sat Apr 15 2009.
```

### Displaying the Inactive Packages: Example

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install inactive summary
```

```
Default Profile:
SDRs:
Owner
Inactive Packages:
disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2
```

### Removing the Inactive Package from the Router: Example

The following example shows how to remove an inactive package. In this example, the operation is run in test mode. The operation is confirmed and the package is removed.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install remove disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2 test
```

```
Install operation 30 'install remove disk0:hfr-diags-3.7.2 test' started by
user 'lab' at 23:40:22 UTC Sat Apr 15 2009.
Warning: No changes will occur due to 'test' option being specified. The
Warning: following is the predicted output for this install command.
Info:      This operation will remove the following package:
```

```

Info:          disk0:asr9k-diags-3.7.2
Info:          After this install remove the following install rollback points will
Info:          no longer be reachable, as the required packages will not be present:
Info:          4, 9, 10, 14, 15, 17, 18
Proceed with removing these packages? [confirm] y

The install operation will continue asynchronously.
Install operation 30 completed successfully at 23.

```

### Pausing Before Configuration Lock: Example

The following example shows how to deactivate a package, pausing the operation before locking the configuration for the actual software deactivation. While the operation is paused, you can enter a configuration mode and perform configurations. When you want to complete the operation, enter the **install operation id complete** command, or the **install operation id attach synchronous** command.

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install deactivate disk0:comp-asr9k
-3.7.2.07I.CSCsr09575-1.0.0 pause sw-change

Install operation 12 '(admin) install deactivate
  disk0:comp-asr9k-3.7.2.07I.CSCsr09575-1.0.0 pause sw-change'
  started by user 'admin' via CLI at 09:06:26 BST Mon Jul 07 2009.
Info: This operation will reload the following nodes in parallel:
Info: 0/0/CPU0 (RP) (SDR: Owner)
Info: 0/1/CPU0 (LC(E3-GE-4)) (SDR: Owner)
Info: 0/5/CPU0 (LC(E3-OC3-POS-4)) (SDR: Owner)
Proceed with this install operation (y/n)? [y]
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
Info: Install Method: Parallel Reload
Info: Install operation 12 is pausing before the config lock is applied for
Info:   the software change as requested by the user.
Info: No further install operations will be allowed until the operation is resumed.
Info: Please continue the operation using one of the following steps:
Info: - run the command '(admin) install operation 12 complete'.
Info: - run the command '(admin) install operation 12 attach synchronous' and then
Info:   answer the query.

```

## Rolling Back to a Previous Software Set

Cisco IOS XR software allows you to roll back one or more SDRs to a previous committed or uncommitted software set. Use the **show install rollback ?** command to view the available rollback points and use the **install rollback to** command to roll back the SDR to a previous software set. You can also use the **install rollback to committed** command to roll back to the most recent committed software set.



#### Note

Rollback operations can be performed by running the command in administration EXEC or EXEC mode.

## Displaying Rollback Points

A rollback point is created every time a software package is activated, deactivated, or committed. Use the **show install rollback ?** command to display the eligible rollback points.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install rollback ?

 0 ID of the rollback point to show package information for
 2 ID of the rollback point to show package information for
```

In this example, the rollback points are 0 and 2. The rollback point with the highest number is the current software point. For example, if the last installation operation was operation 3 (activating the MPLS package) then the highest rollback point is 3, which is the same as the current software (MPLS package activated).

To easily identify specific rollback points, you can assign a label or description to a rollback point using the **install label** command.

You can enter the command in either administration EXEC mode or EXEC mode.

## Displaying the Active Packages Associated with a Rollback Point

To display the active packages associated with a rollback point, use the **show install rollback** command with the *point-id* argument. This command displays the packages that are active if you roll back one or more SDRs to that installation point. For example, the **show install rollback 2** command displays the packages that are active if you roll back to rollback point 2.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show install rollback 0

Tue Jun 23 06:25:06.493 PST
ID: 0, Label:
Timestamp: 23:11:20 UTC Sat Oct 28 2000

Secure Domain Router: Owner

Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 [RP] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: disk0:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/mbiasr9k-rp.vm
  Rollback Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I

Node 0/1/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Rollback Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I

Node 0/4/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Rollback Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I

Node 0/6/CPU0 [LC] [SDR: Owner]
  Boot Device: mem:
  Boot Image: /disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.12I/lc/mbiasr9k-lc.vm
  Rollback Packages:
    disk0:comp-asr9k-mini-3.9.0.12I
```

You can enter the command in either administration EXEC mode or EXEC mode.



**Note** For more information on the command options, see the *Software Package Management Commands on Cisco IOS XR Software* module of *System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

## Rolling Back to a Specific Rollback Point

You can roll back to a specific rollback point, including a noncommitted software set:

- If you roll back to the most recent noncommitted rollback point (with the highest number), you do not need to reload the router.
- You can repeat the rollback process one rollback point at a time without reloading if you always choose the most recent rollback point.
- If you choose a rollback point that is older than the most recent point, the impacted nodes reload, interrupting data traffic on those nodes. Before the reload occurs, you are prompted to confirm the install rollback operation.

In the following example, the system is rolled back to noncommitted rollback point 8:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install rollback to 8

Install operation 10 'install rollback to 8' started by user 'cisco' at 07:49:26
UTC Mon Nov 14 2009.
The install operation will continue asynchronously.
Info:      The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info:      across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install commit' to make
Info:      changes persistent.
Info:      Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info:      change using the following commands:
Info:      show system verify
Info:      install verify packages

The currently active software is the same as the committed software.

Install operation 10 completed successfully at 07:51:24 UTC Mon Nov 14 2009.
```

## Rolling Back to the Last Committed Package Set

Use the **install rollback to committed** command to roll back to the last committed package set.

In the following example, the owner SDR is rolled back to the last committed package set:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# install rollback to committed

Install operation 27 'install rollback to committed' started by user 'lab' at
16:41:38 UTC Sat Nov 19 2009.
Info:      The rollback to committed software will require a reload of impacted
Info:      nodes because it is over multiple activation & deactivation
Info:      operations.
Info:      This operation will reload the following node:
Info:      0/RP1/CPU0 (RP) (SDR: Owner)
Info:      This operation will reload all RPs in the Owner SDR, and thereby
Info:      indirectly cause every node in the router to reload.

Proceed with this install operation? [confirm]
```

```

Updating Commit Database. Please wait...[OK]
Info: The changes made to software configurations will not be persistent
Info: across system reloads. Use the command 'admin install commit' to make
Info: changes persistent.
Info: Please verify that the system is consistent following the software
Info: change using the following commands:
Info: show system verify
Info: install verify packages
Install operation 27 completed successfully at 16:42:23 UTC Sat Nov 19 2009.

```

You can enter the command in either administration EXEC mode or EXEC mode.

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to software package management on Cisco IOS XR software.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR install commands	<i>Software Package Management Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR getting started material	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
Cisco IOS XR master command index	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
ROM Monitor	<i>ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers</i>

### Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

### MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>



**RFCs**

<b>RFCs</b>	<b>Title</b>
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

**Technical Assistance**

<b>Description</b>	<b>Link</b>
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>





## CHAPTER 4

# Configuring Disk Mirroring

This module describes the process to configure disk mirroring in Cisco IOS XR software.

For complete descriptions of the commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 81](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 12: Feature History for Disk Mirroring for Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	Disk mirroring was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	No modification.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Disk Mirroring Prerequisites, on page 73](#)
- [Information About Disk Mirroring, on page 74](#)
- [How to Enable Disk Mirroring, on page 75](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Enabling Disk Mirroring, on page 80](#)
- [Additional References, on page 81](#)

## Disk Mirroring Prerequisites

Before enabling disk mirroring, the following conditions must be met:

- You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.
- The secondary storage device specified for the mirroring must be installed in the same node as the primary boot device. The supported storage devices are disk0: and disk1:.
- The secondary storage device must be the same size or larger than the designated primary storage device.
- The secondary storage device must be partitioned.

**Note**

The primary partition on the secondary storage device must be large enough to contain all data on the primary boot device. This can be an issue if the primary boot device has not yet been partitioned. For example, in the situation where both the primary boot device and the secondary storage device are 1 GB in size, the primary boot device contains 950 MB of data, and the secondary storage device is already partitioned to 800 MB in the primary partition and 200 MB in the secondary partition. In such a case, the 950 MB of data from the primary boot device does not fit on the secondary storage device because of the partition. Such a configuration is rejected and an error is displayed. You need to replace the secondary storage device with a higher capacity device. For information about disk partition sizes, see *Related Topics*.

**Note**

Although compactflash: can be used as the secondary device on a Performance Route Processor (PRP-2), there is an issue with the ROM Monitor not being able to boot the minimum boot image (MBI) from the secondary device if the device is not disk0: or disk1:. In such a situation, you would need to go into ROMMON mode and boot the PRP-2 manually using the MBI on the compactflash:.

**Related Topics**

[Information About Disk Mirroring](#), on page 74

## Information About Disk Mirroring

The route switch processor (RSP) card has a primary storage device that is used to store installation packages and configuration files. This primary storage device is referred to as the *primary boot device* and is essential for booting the RSP and its normal operation.

Disk mirroring replicates the critical data on the primary boot device onto another storage device on the same RSP, henceforth referred to as the secondary device. If the primary boot device fails, applications continue to be serviced transparently by the secondary device, thereby avoiding a switchover to the standby RSP. The failed primary storage device can be replaced or repaired without disruption of service.

Disk mirroring should only mirror critical data on the primary boot device onto a secondary storage device and not any noncritical data such as logging data. To separate critical data from noncritical data, the disk devices need to be partitioned. Disk0: is partitioned to disk0: and disk0a:; disk1: is partitioned to disk1: and disk1a:. Disk0: and disk1: are used for critical data, whereas disk0a: and disk1a: are used for logging data and other noncritical data. Before you can configure disk mirroring on the RSP, you must have partitioned the secondary storage device. The sizes of disk partitions are related to the total disk size, and are provided in [Table 13: Size of Disk Partitions in Relation to Size of Disk](#), on page 74.

**Table 13: Size of Disk Partitions in Relation to Size of Disk**

Size of Disk	Primary Partition Percentage	Secondary Partition Percentage
less than 900 MB	Partitioning not supported	Partitioning not supported
900 MB to 1.5 GB	80%	20%
1.5 GB to 3 GB	60%	40%
more than 3 GB	50%	50%

# How to Enable Disk Mirroring

The tasks in this section describe how to enable and manage disk mirroring.

## Enabling Disk Mirroring

Complete the following instructions to enable disk mirroring. After disk mirroring is configured, if there is a fault on the primary boot drive or it cannot be accessed for any reason, control is automatically transferred to the secondary storage device.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **format** *secondary-device* **partition** [ **location** *node-id* ]
2. Remove any noncritical data from the primary boot device.
3. **configure**
4. **mirror** **location** *node-id* *Primary-device* *Secondary-device*
5. **commit**
6. **show mirror** [ **location** *node-id* ]
7. **mirror verify** **location** *node-id*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>format</b> <i>secondary-device</i> <b>partition</b> [ <b>location</b> <i>node-id</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>format disk1: partition</b>	Partitions the secondary storage device into two partitions.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the device is already partitioned, you do not need to perform this step.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	Remove any noncritical data from the primary boot device.	The primary boot device should contain installation packages and configuration files only. Log files can be copied to the “a” partition of the secondary device, for example disk1a: .
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>mirror</b> <b>location</b> <i>node-id</i> <i>Primary-device</i> <i>Secondary-device</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>mirror location 0/</b> <b>rsp0/cpu0 disk0:disk1:</b>	Enables disk mirroring of the <i>primary-device</i> to the <i>secondary-device</i> .  If the primary boot device is not partitioned, the following occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The contents of the primary device are replicated to the secondary device</li> <li>• Control of the mirroring server switches to the secondary storage device.</li> <li>• The primary device is partitioned.</li> <li>• Data is replicated back to the primary boot device.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show mirror [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show mirror location 0/ rsp0/cpu0	Displays disk mirroring information for an RSP node. It also provides the status of the synchronization between the primary and secondary devices.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>mirror verify location node-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# mirror verify location 0/ rsp0/cpu0	Verifies disk synchronization for disk mirroring on an RSP node.

## Replacing the Secondary Mirroring Device

Follow this procedure if you need to replace the secondary boot device used in the disk mirroring process.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show mirror [location node-id]**
2. **mirror pause [location node-id]**
3. **show mirror [location node-id]**
4. **unmount secondary-device [location node-id]**
5. Remove the device and insert a new device.
6. **format secondary-device partition [location node-id]**
7. **show media [location node-id]**
8. **mirror resume [location node-id]**
9. **show mirror [location node-id]**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show mirror [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that mirroring is active. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be redundant.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>mirror pause [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>mirror pause</b>	Temporarily pauses disk mirroring.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show mirror [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that mirroring has paused. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be paused.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>unmount</b> <i>secondary-device</i> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# unmount disk1:	Unmounts the secondary device.
<b>Step 5</b>	Remove the device and insert a new device.	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>format</b> <i>secondary-device partition</i> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# format disk1: partition	Formats the device.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show media</b> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show media	Verifies that the device is formatted. The output should display the device that you formatted.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>mirror resume</b> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# mirror resume	Resumes mirroring.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show mirror</b> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show mirror	Verifies that mirroring has restarted. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be Syncing.  It can take 15 to 30 minutes for the mirroring process to complete. The exact time depends on the number of packages or files on the boot device. When the mirroring is complete, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be Redundant.

## Replacing the Primary Mirroring Device

In the event that your primary boot disk is defective and you need to replace it while disk mirroring is enabled, perform this task.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show mirror** [**location node-id**]
2. **configure**
3. **mirror location node-id Primary-device Secondary-device**
4. **commit**
5. **show mirror** [**location node-id**]
6. **mirror pause** [**location node-id**]
7. **show mirror**
8. **unmount secondary-device** [**location node-id**]
9. Remove the device and insert a new device.

10. **show media** [location node-id]
11. (Optional) **format secondary-device partition** [location node-id]
12. **mirror resume** [location node-id]
13. **show mirror** [location node-id]
14. **configure**
15. **mirror location** node-id Primary-device Secondary-device
16. **show mirror** [location node-id]

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show mirror</b> [location node-id] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that mirroring is in the redundant state. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be redundant. If mirroring is not in the redundant state, you cannot proceed with the procedure. You must wait until mirroring is in the redundant state.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>mirror location</b> node-id Primary-device Secondary-device <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>mirror location 0/</b>  RSP0  /CPU0 disk1:disk0:	Swaps the device roles such that the primary mirroring device now becomes the secondary device and the secondary mirroring device becomes the primary device.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show mirror</b> [location node-id] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that the primary device is now the secondary device and vice versa. In the output, if disk0: was the primary disk that you want to replace, it should now be listed as the secondary device.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>mirror pause</b> [location node-id] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>mirror pause</b>	Temporarily pauses disk mirroring.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show mirror</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that mirroring has paused. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be paused.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>unmount secondary-device</b> [location node-id] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>unmount disk1:</b>	Unmounts the secondary device which is the device that you want to replace. Initially, this was the primary device.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 9</b>	Remove the device and insert a new device.	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show media</b> [location <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show media</b>	Verifies that the new disk is partitioned. You should see that the new device is mounted. If the new device is not partitioned, format the device as indicated in the next step.
<b>Step 11</b>	(Optional) <b>format secondary-device partition</b> [location <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>format disk1: partition</b>	Formats the device. You only need to perform this step if the new device is not partitioned.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>mirror resume</b> [location <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>mirror resume</b>	Resumes mirroring.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>show mirror</b> [location <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that mirroring has restarted. In the output, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be Syncing.  It can take 15 to 30 minutes for the mirroring process to complete. The exact time depends on the number of packages or files on the boot device. When the mirroring is complete, the <i>Current Mirroring State</i> should be Redundant.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>mirror location</b> <i>node-id</i> <i>Primary-device</i> <i>Secondary-device</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>mirror location 0/</b>  RSP0  /CPU0 disk0:disk1:	Swaps the device roles back so that the newly inserted device becomes the primary device.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>show mirror</b> [location <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show mirror</b>	Verifies that the new device is now the primary device.

# Configuration Examples for Enabling Disk Mirroring

## Enabling Disk Mirroring: Example

In the following example, disk mirroring is enabled on a router:

```
format disk1: partition
```

This operation will destroy all data on "disk1:" and partition device.  
Continue? [confirm] **y**

Device partition disk1: is now formatted and is available for use.

```
configure
 mirror location 0/0/cpu0 disk0:disk1:
 commit
```

## show mirror Command Output: Example

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show mirror location all
```

Tue Dec 7 13:02:26.520 PST

Mirror Information for 0/RSP0/CPU0.

```
=====
Mirroring Enabled
  Configured Primary:      disk0:
  Configured Secondary:    disk1:

Current Mirroring State:   Redundant
  Current Physical Primary: disk0:
  Current Physical Secondary: disk1:

Mirroring Logical Device:  disk0:
Mirroring Logical Device2: disk1:

Physical Device      State      Flags
-----
disk0:               Available  Enabled
disk1:               Available  Enabled
compactflash:        Available
(null)               Available
disk0a:              Available
disk1a:              Available
compactflasha:       Not Present
harddisk:            Available

Mirroring Rommon Variable
BOOT_DEV_SEQ_CONF = disk0;;disk1:
BOOT_DEV_SEQ_OPER = disk0;;disk1:
MIRROR_ENABLE = Y
```

**mirror verify Command Output: Example**

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# mirror verify

Mirror Verify Information for 0/0/CPU0.
=====
Primary device and secondary device are fully synchronized.
```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to disk mirroring configuration.

**Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
Initial system bootup and configuration information for a router using the Cisco IOS XR software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR command master list	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Cisco IOS XR boot commands	<i>Boot Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

**Standards**

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

**MIBs**

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

**RFCs**

RFCs	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

**Technical Assistance**

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>



## CHAPTER 5

# Software Entitlement

Cisco IOS XR software contains all the supported features for a given release. Before the introduction of software entitlement on Cisco IOS XR software, you could freely activate all available software packages on your network devices and could enable all the bundled features. Software entitlement has been introduced so you pay only for the features that you need today, but can upgrade when necessary while keeping your investment safe. Licensing enables you to purchase individual software features and upgrade hardware capacity in a safe and reliable way.

The licensing methods supported on Cisco IOS XR software are:

- Smart Licensing
- Default (traditional) Licensing

To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 14: Feature History for Software Entitlement**

Release	Modification
Release 3.9.0	The software entitlement feature was introduced.
Release 4.3.1	NV Satellite license was supported.
Release 5.2.0	Smart Licensing was introduced.
Release 5.3.1	Support for Smart Licensing was introduced on Cisco ASR 9000 High Density 100GE Ethernet line cards. General availability release for Smart Licensing on ASR 9000.
Release 6.0.1	Updated consumption model line card support

This model contains the following topics:

- [What Is Software Entitlement?, on page 84](#)
- [Implementing Smart Licensing, on page 85](#)
- [Consumption Model, on page 97](#)
- [Implementing Default Licensing, on page 102](#)

# What Is Software Entitlement?

*Software entitlement* is a system that consists of a license manager on a Cisco IOS XR device that manages licenses for various software and hardware features. The license manager parses and authenticates a license before accepting it. The software features on the router use the license manager APIs to check out and release licenses. Licenses are stored in persistent storage on the router.

Core routing features are available for use without any license. The following features can be enabled on your router using licenses:

## Layer 3 VPN

Layer 3 (virtual private network) VPN can be configured only if there is an available Layer 3 VPN license for the line card slot on which the feature is being configured. If the advanced IP license is enabled, 4096 Layer 3 VPN routing and forwarding instances (VRFs) can be configured on a line card. If the infrastructure VRF license is enabled, eight Layer 3 VRFs can be configured on the line card.

To activate the Infrastructure VRF license, you need to configure two interfaces or sub-interfaces in separate VRFs, with at least one physical interface in each of the VRFs.

The key is to have multiple (two or more) user-defined VRFs configured in at least one slot and at least one physical interface in each user-defined VRF; and repeated for each slot.

In a non-consumption model line card, configuring a physical interface in multiple VRFs would consume a L3VPN license. However, configuring other virtual interfaces (such as management, bundle, or BVI interfaces) in multiple VRFs would not consume L3VPN license.

See the following modules in *MPLS Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers* for information about Layer 3 VPN configurations:

- *Implementing MPLS Layer 3 VPNs on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router*
- *Implementing Virtual Private LAN Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router*

## G.709

If a G.709 license is available, G.709 can be enabled on 10-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces on the following line cards:

- 2-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet / 20-port Gigabit Ethernet line card
- 8-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet line card
- 24-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet line card
- 36-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet line card
- 4-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet modular port adapter
- 2-port 10 Gigabit Ethernet modular port adapter

Refer to the *Configuring Dense Wavelength Division Multiplexing Controllers on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router* module in *Interface and Hardware Component Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

## Video Monitoring

Video monitoring can be enabled for the Cisco ASR 9000 chassis by using a video monitoring license.

### Satellite Network Virtualization (nV)

The Satellite nV license entitles satellite devices to connect to the Cisco ASR 9000 chassis. Satellite licenses are chassis licenses, and can provide the ability for one, five or 20 satellites to connect to a Cisco ASR 9000 host remotely.



**Note** Smart Licensing is supported on a cluster set-up. There are two A9K-NV-CLUSTER-LIC licenses required/requested, one for each of the chassis.

## Implementing Smart Licensing

### Information About Smart Licensing

Smart Licensing is a cloud-based, software license management solution that enables you to automate time-consuming, manual licensing tasks. The solution allows you to easily track the status of your license and software usage trends.

Smart Licensing helps simplify three core functions:

- **Purchasing:** The software that you have installed in your network can automatically self-register themselves, without Product Activation Keys (PAKs).
- **Management:** You can automatically track activations against your license entitlements. Additionally, there is no need to install the license file on every node. You can create license pools (logical grouping of licenses) to reflect your organization structure. Smart Licensing offers you Cisco Smart Software Manager, a centralized portal that enables you to manage all your Cisco software licenses from one centralized website. [Cisco Smart Software Manager Overview](#), on page 95 provides details.
- **Reporting:** Through the portal, Smart Licensing offers an integrated view of the licenses you have purchased and what has been actually deployed in your network. You can use this data to make better purchase decisions, based on your consumption.

### Smart Versus Traditional Licensing

Traditional (node locked) licencing	Smart (dynamic) licencing
You must procure the license and manually install it on the device.	Your device initiates a call home and requests the licenses it needs. <i>Configuring Call Home on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> describes the Smart Call Home feature.
Node-locked licences - license is associated with a specific device.	Pooled licences - licences are company account-specific, and can be used with any compatible device in your company. You can activate or deactivate different types of licenses on the device without actually installing a license file on the device.
No common install base location to view licenses purchased or software usage trends	Licenses are stored securely on Cisco servers accessible 24x7x365.

No easy means to transfer licenses from one device to another.	Licenses can be moved between product instances without a license transfer. This greatly simplifies the reassignment of a software license as part of the Return Material Authorization (RMA) process.
Limited visibility into all software licenses being used in the network. Licenses are tracked only on per node basis.	Complete view of all Smart Software Licenses used in the network using a consolidated usage report of software licenses and devices in one easy-to-use portal.

[Traditional Licensing Consideration in Smart Licensing, on page 97](#) describes the scenarios in which you may want to retain the default mode of licensing. It also explains what happens to your traditional license files if you choose to switch to Smart Licensing.

## Create a Cisco Smart Account

Cisco Smart Account is an account where all products enabled for Smart Licensing are deposited. Cisco Smart Account allows you to manage and activate your licenses to devices, monitor license use, and track Cisco license purchases. Through transparent access, you have a real-time view into your Smart Licensing products. IT administrators can manage licenses and account users within your organization's Smart Account through the Smart Software Manager.

You can create your Cisco Smart Account at this webpage: <https://webapps.cisco.com/software/company/smartaccounts/home#accountcreation-account/request>.

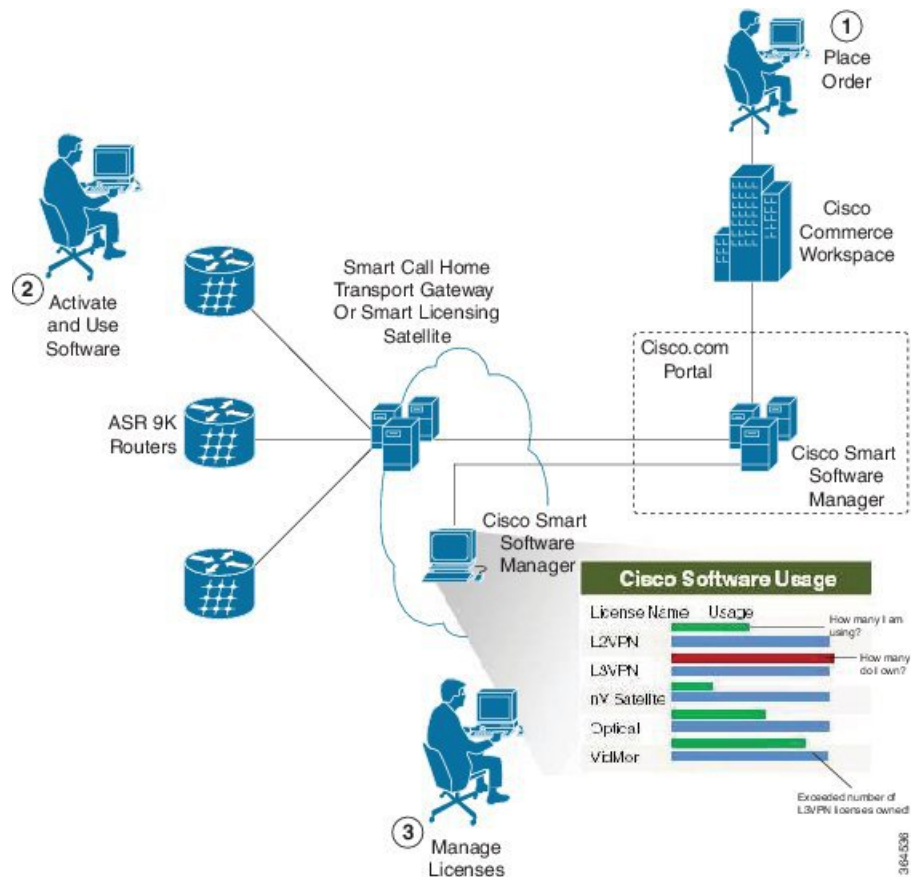
For information on how to create a Cisco Smart Account, see: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/software/one-software/solution-overview-c22-733273.html>.

## Smart Licensing Working

Smart Licensing involves the three steps shown in the illustration below, that depicts the working model of the Smart Licensing.



Figure 3: Smart Licensing - Example



- **Setting up Smart Licensing:** You can place the order for Smart Licensing, to manage licenses on Cisco.com portal. You agree to the terms and conditions governing the use and access of Smart Licensing in the Smart Software Manager portal at <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/software/one-software/solution-overview-c22-733273.html>.
- **Enabling and Use Smart Licensing:** Follow the steps to enable Smart Licensing. *Smart Licensing Workflow* provides an illustration.

After you enable Smart Licensing, you can use either of the following options to communicate:

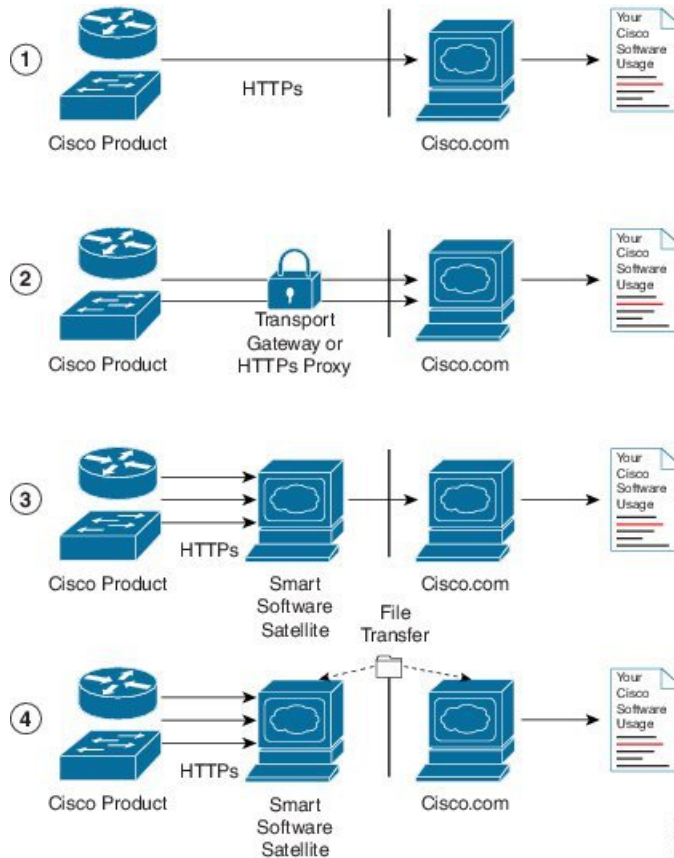
- **Smart Call Home:** The Smart Call Home feature is automatically configured after the Smart Licensing is enabled. Smart Call Home is used by Smart Licensing as a medium for communication with the Cisco license service. Call Home feature allows Cisco products to periodically call-home and perform an audit and reconciliation of your software usage information. This information helps Cisco efficiently track your install base, keep them up and running, and more effectively pursue service and support contract renewals, without much intervention from your end. For more information on Smart Call Home feature, see [http://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/switches/lan/smart\\_call\\_home/SCH\\_Deployment\\_Guide.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/switches/lan/smart_call_home/SCH_Deployment_Guide.pdf).
- **Smart Licensing Satellite:** The Smart licensing satellite option provides an on-premises collector that can be used to consolidate and manage Smart license usage, as well facilitate communications back to Cisco License Service at <http://www.cisco.com>.

- **Manage and Report Licenses:** You can manage and view reports about your overall software usage in the Smart Software Manager portal. [Compliance reporting, on page 96](#) describes the types of Smart Licensing reports.

## Deployment Options for Smart Licensing

The following illustration shows the various options available for deploying Smart Licensing:

**Figure 4: Smart Licensing Deployment Options**



1. **Direct cloud access:** In direct cloud access deployment method, Cisco products send usage information directly over the internet to Cisco.com (Cisco license service); no additional components are needed for deployment.
2. **Direct cloud access through an HTTPs proxy:** In direct cloud access through an HTTPs proxy deployment method, Cisco products send usage information over the internet through a proxy server - either a Smart Call Home Transport Gateway or off-the-shelf Proxy (such as Apache) to Cisco License Service on <http://www.cisco.com>.
3. **Mediated access through an on-premises collector-connected:** In mediated access through an on-premises collector-connected deployment method, Cisco products send usage information to a locally-connected collector, which acts as a local license authority. Periodically, the information is exchanged to keep the databases in synchronization.

4. **Mediated access through an on-premises collector-disconnected:** In the mediated access through an on-premises collector-disconnected deployment method, Cisco products send usage information to a local disconnected collector, which acts as a local license authority. Exchange of human-readable information is performed occasionally (maybe once a month) to keep the databases in synchronization.

Options **1** and **2** provide an easy deployment option, and options **3** and **4** provide a secure environment deployment option. Smart Software Satellite provides support for options **3** and **4**.

The communication between Cisco products and Cisco license service is facilitated by the Smart Call Home software. For information on Smart Call Home, see [About Call Home, on page 297](#)

## Configure Licenses Using Smart Licensing

### Enable Smart Licensing

Smart Licensing components are packaged into the asr9k mini image. The https client required for configuring the Smart Call Home is packaged into the asr9k-k9sec PIE. By default, traditional licensing mode is on. Use the steps described here to enable Smart Licensing.



**Note** Smart Licensing on Cisco ASR 9001-S Router is not supported. Hence you should use the Product Authorization Key (PAK) to activate a license. PAK is provided when you order and purchase the right to use a feature set for a particular device. The PAK is an 11-character alphanumeric key printed on the purchase order document that is shipped with your device hardware. The PAK serves as a receipt and is an important component used in the process of obtaining, upgrading, and activating a license.

For information on how to activate a license using PAK, refer [Cisco ASR 9001-S 120G Upgrade License Configuration Guide](#).

On successful registration, the device will receive an identity certificate. This certificate is saved on your device and automatically used for all future communications with Cisco. Every 30 days, Smart Licensing will automatically renew the registration information with Cisco. If registration fails, an error will be logged. Additionally, license usage data is collected and a report is sent to you every month. If required, you can configure your Smart Call Home settings such that sensitive information (like hostname, username and password) are filtered out from the usage report.



**Note** Once Smart Licensing mode is enabled, all CLIs related to the traditional licensing mode are disabled.

#### Before you begin

You must have purchased the product for which you are adding the license. When you purchase the product, you are provided with a user name and password to the Cisco Smart Software Manager portal, from where you can generate the product instance registration tokens.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Login to Cisco Smart Software Manager at <https://tools.cisco.com/rhodu/index>.
2. **admin**

3. **configure**
4. **license smart enable**
5. **commit**
6. **admin**
7. **license smart register idtoken** *token\_ID*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Login to Cisco Smart Software Manager at <a href="https://tools.cisco.com/rhodu/index">https://tools.cisco.com/rhodu/index</a> .	Get a token from the Cisco portal using the link. You must log in to the portal using a Cisco provided username and password. Once you have generated the token, select <b>Copy</b> hyperlink to copy the token or download the token to a text file. The token is used to register and activate a device, and assign the device to a virtual account.  <b>Note</b> This token is valid for 30 days.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>configure</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure	Enters administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>license smart enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)#license smart enable RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)#show config Building configuration... !! IOS XR Configuration 5.2.0.19I license smart enable end	Enables basic Smart Licensing. Use the <b>no</b> form of this command to disable Smart Licensing and revert to the traditional or strict mode of licensing.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>license smart register idtoken</b> <i>token_ID</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#license smart register idtoken NmE1Yzg0OWMtYmJ4	Use the token ID procured in step 1 to register your device.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	license smart register: Registration process is in progress. Please check the syslog for the registration status and result	

### What to do next

You can use the Cisco Smart Software Manager to:

- Create virtual accounts
- Assign a registered device to a virtual account
- View licenses in a virtual account
- Manage product instance registration tokens
- Transfer a license
- View, transfer or remove product instances in a virtual account

## Verify Smart Licensing Configuration

After enabling Smart Licensing, you can use the **show** commands to verify the default Smart Licensing configuration. If any issue is detected, take corrective action before making further configurations.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **show license status**
3. **show license register-status**
4. **show license entitlement**
5. **show license pool**
6. **show license cert**
7. **show license features**
8. **show license ha**
9. **show license all**
10. **exit**
11. **show call-home smart-licensing statistics**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show license status</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license status	Displays the compliance status of Smart Licensing. Following are the possible status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Waiting:</b> Indicates the initial state after your device has made a license entitlement request. The device establishes communication with Cisco and</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>successfully registers itself with the Cisco license manager.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Authorized:</b> Indicates that your device is able to communicate with the Cisco license manager, and is authorised to initiate requests for license entitlements.</li> <li>• <b>Out-Of-Compliance:</b> Indicates that one or more of your licenses are out-of-compliance. You must buy additional licenses.</li> <li>• <b>Eval Period:</b> Indicates that Smart Licensing is consuming the evaluation period. You must register the device with the Cisco Licensing manager, else your license expires.</li> <li>• <b>Grace Period:</b> Indicates that connectivity to the Cisco license manager is lost. You must try restore connectivity to renew the authorization period.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> Indicates that Smart Licensing is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Invalid:</b> Indicates that Cisco does not recognize the entitlement tag as it is not in the database.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show license register-status</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license register-status	Displays the Smart Licensing registration status. If your registration is pending or failed, check for connectivity issues with the Cisco license manager or register the device with a new token ID.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show license entitlement</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license entitlement	Displays the details of the various entitlements you own.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>show license pool</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license pool	Displays the pool to which the device belongs.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show license cert</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license cert	Displays details of the licensing certificate.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show license features</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license features	Displays the licenses that are supported on a given chassis. You can go ahead and buy the required licenses.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show license ha</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license ha	Displays the Smart Licensing high availability status, whether it is in active or standby mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>show license all</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)#show license all	Displays all entitlements in use. It can also be used to check if Smart Licensing is enabled. Additionally, it shows associated licensing certificates, compliance status, UDI, and other details.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit	Exits administration EXEC mode and returns to EXEC mode.
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>show call-home smart-licensing statistics</b>	Displays the statistics of communication between the Smart Licensing manager and the Cisco back-end using Smart Call Home. In case communication fails or drops, check your call home configuration for any errors.

The following example shows sample output from the **show call-home smart-licensing statistics** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router#show call-home smart-licensing statistics
Success: Successfully sent and response received.
Failed : Failed to send or response indicated error occurred.
Inqueue: In queue waiting to be sent.
Dropped: Dropped due to incorrect call-home configuration.
```

Msg Subtype	Success	Failed	Inqueue	Dropped	Last-sent (GMT-07:00)
ENTITLEMENT	2	0	0	0	2014-04-24 18:24:34
REGISTRATION	1	0	0	0	2014-04-25 03:53:57
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT	1	0	0	0	2014-04-23 19:21:21
RENEW	1	0	0	0	2014-04-23 19:21:11
DEREGISTRATION	1	0	0	0	2014-04-25 03:31:35

## Renew Smart Licensing Registration

In general, your registration is automatically renewed every 30 days. Use this option to make an on-demand manual update of your registration. Thus, instead of waiting 30 days for the next registration renewal cycle, you can issue this command to instantly find out the status of your license.

### Before you begin

You must ensure that the following conditions are met to renew your smart license:

- Smart licensing is enabled.
- The device is registered.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **license smart renew {auth | id}**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>license smart renew {auth   id}</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:ROA(admin)#license smart renew auth Tue Apr 22 09:12:37.086 PST license smart renew auth: Authorization process is in progress. Please check the syslog for the authorization status and result.	Renew your ID or authorization with Cisco smart licensing. If ID certification renewal fails, then the product instance goes to an unidentified state and starts consuming the evaluation period. <b>Note</b> Authorization periods are renewed by the Smart Licensing system every 30 days. As long as the license is in an 'Authorized' or 'Out-of-compliance' (OOC), the authorization period is renewed. Grace period starts when an authorization period expires. During the grace period or when the grace period is in the 'Expired' state, the system continues to try renew the authorization period. If a retry is successful, a new authorization period starts.

## De-register Smart Licensing

When your device is taken off the inventory, shipped elsewhere for redeployment or returned to Cisco for replacement using the return merchandise authorization (RMA) process, you can use the de-register option to cancel the registration on your device. Use the following steps to cancel device registration:

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. admin
2. license smart deregister

## DETAILED STEPS

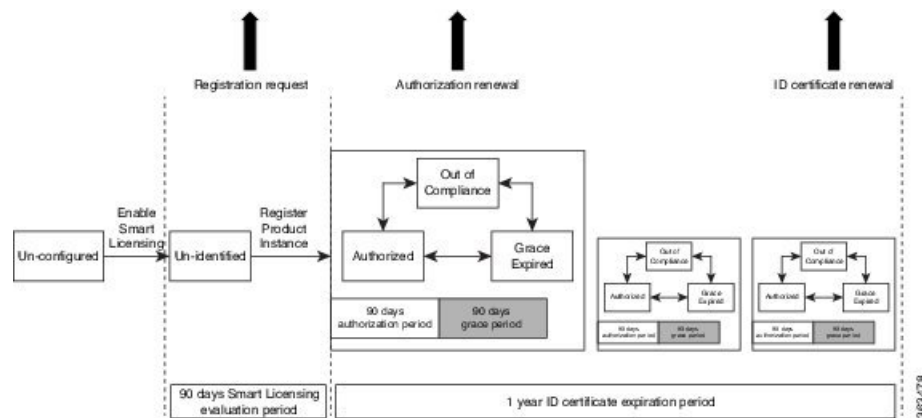
	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>license smart deregister</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:IMC0(admin)#license smart deregister license smart deregister: Success	Cancels the device registration, and sends it into a 30-day evaluation mode. All Smart Licensing entitlements and certificates on the platform are removed. <b>Note</b> Though the product instance has been de-registered from the Cisco license cloud service, Smart Licensing is still enabled.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	License command "license smart deregister " completed successfully.	

## Smart Licensing Workflow

The Smart Licensing workflow is depicted in this flowchart.



## Cisco Smart Software Manager Overview

Cisco Smart Software Manager enables you to manage all of your Cisco Smart software licenses from one centralized website. With Cisco Smart Software Manager, you organize and view your licenses in groups called virtual accounts (collections of licenses and product instances). Use the Cisco Smart Software Manager to do the following tasks:

- Create, manage or view virtual accounts.
- Create and manage Product Instance Registration Tokens.
- Transfer licenses between virtual accounts or view licenses.
- Transfer, remove or view product instances.
- Run reports against your virtual accounts.
- Modify your email notification settings.
- View overall account information.

The Cisco Smart Software Manager **Help** describes the procedures for carrying out these tasks. You can access the Cisco Smart Software Manager on <https://webapps.cisco.com/software/cswws/ws/platform/home>, by clicking **Licensing**, and then selecting **Smart Software Manager**; and then login using the username and password provided by Cisco.



**Note** Use Chrome 32.0, Firefox 25.0 or Safari 6.0.5 web browsers to access the Cisco Smart Software Manager. Also, ensure that Javascript 1.5 or a later version is enabled in your browser.

## Licenses, Product Instances, and Registration Tokens

### Licenses

Licenses are required for all Cisco products. All Cisco product licenses are one of two types which vary depending on the product:

- **Perpetual licenses**—Licenses that do not expire.
- **Term licenses**—Licenses that automatically expire after a set amount of time: one year, three years, or whatever term was purchased.

In addition, there are demo licenses that expire after at most 60 days. As implied by the name, demo licenses are not intended for production use.

All product licenses reside in a virtual account.

### Product Instances

A product instance is an individual device with a unique device identifier (UDI) that is registered using a product instance registration token (or registration token). You can register any number of instances of a product with a single registration token. Each product instance can have one or more licenses residing in the same virtual account. Product instances must periodically connect to the Cisco Smart Software Manager servers during a specific renewal period. If a product instance fails to connect, it is marked as having a license shortage, but continues to use the license. If you remove the product instance, its licenses are released and made available within the virtual account.

### Product Instance Registration Tokens

A product requires a registration token until you have registered the product. Registration tokens are stored in the Product Instance Registration Token Table associated with your enterprise account. Once the product is registered the registration token is no longer necessary and can be revoked and removed from the table without effect. Registration tokens can be valid from 1 to 365 days.

## Virtual Accounts

Smart Licencing allows you to create multiple license pools or virtual accounts within the Smart Software Manager portal. Using the **Virtual Accounts** option you can aggregate licenses into discrete bundles associated with a cost center so that one section of an organization cannot use the licenses of another section of the organization. For example, if you segregate your company into different geographic regions, you can create a virtual account for each region to hold the licenses and product instances for that region.

All new licenses and product instances are placed in the default virtual account in the Smart Software Manager, unless you specify a different one during the order process. Once in the default account, you may choose to transfer them to any other account as desired, provided you have the required access permissions. See [Licenses, Product Instances, and Registration Tokens](#), on page 95 for details.

Use the Smart Software Manager portal at <https://tools.cisco.com/rhodu/index> to create license pools or transfer licenses.

## Compliance reporting

On a periodic basis, as described by the terms of the Smart Licensing contract, reports are automatically sent to you containing inventory and license compliance data. These reports will take one of three forms:

- **Periodic Record:** This record is generated on a periodic (configurable) basis with relevant inventory data saved at a given point of time. This report is saved within the Cisco cloud for archival.
- **Manual Record:** You can manually generate this record with relevant inventory data saved at any given point of time. This report will be saved within the Cisco cloud for archival.

- **Compliance Warning Report:** This report is automatically or manually generated when a license compliance event occurs. This report does not contain a full inventory data, but only any shortfalls in entitlements for a given software license.

You can view these reports from the Smart Software Manager portal at <https://tools.cisco.com/rhodui/index>.

## Traditional Licensing Consideration in Smart Licensing

Traditional licensing, and the associated commands, currently co-exist with Smart Licensing. By default, the software image is loaded with the traditional, strictly-enforced mode of licensing. You may want to retain the traditional licensing model in the following scenarios:

- when there are multiple users, and you do not know the actual end user of your software.
- when the software is deployed in a location with limited access to the license and inventory management solution.
- when the user has opted not to establish a Smart Call Home relationship with Cisco.
- when a Smart Call Home relationship cannot be maintained with the user owing to logistics and a fallback is required.



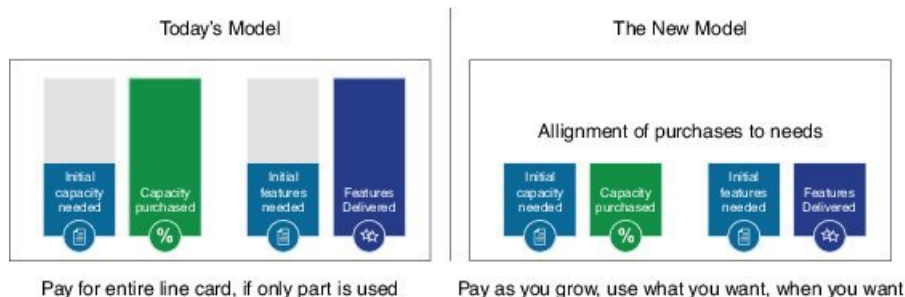
### Note

All traditional licensing CLI commands are disabled if Smart Licensing is enabled. However, you can continue to access the traditional licenses stored under: /disk0:/license/\*. Certificates used by Smart Licensing are located under /disk0:/sla/. Respective CLIs are restored when licensing schemes are switched.

## Consumption Model

The consumption model is a new pricing model for line cards to align the initial purchase to your actual needs. This model provides the ability to deploy a line card on day 1 with minimum ports activated to meet the current traffic demands. Over time as the traffic grows, you can add additional ports in 10G port increments. This provides a flexible deployment model with the ability to increase bandwidth to meet your demands.

**Figure 5: Comparison - Current Purchasing Model And The New Consumption Model**



**Note**

The consumption model line cards require the users to deploy Smart Licensing to help track and provide visibility into license usage across their network. For information on Smart Licensing see [Information About Smart Licensing, on page 85](#).

You must have a Smart Account created to place an order for the consumption model line card. You can create your Cisco Smart Account at this webpage: <https://webapps.cisco.com/software/company/smartaccounts/home#accountcreation-account/request>. For information on how to create a Cisco Smart Account, see: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/software/one-software/solution-overview-c22-733273.html>.

**Supported Consumption Model Line Cards**

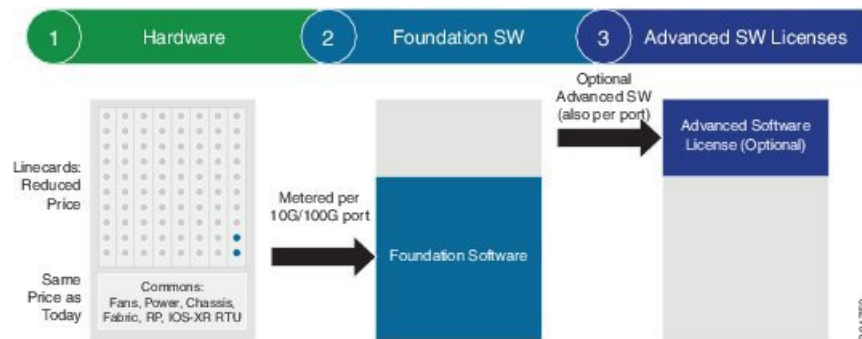
The line cards that can be deployed using consumption model are referred to as the consumption model line cards. The supported consumption model line cards are:

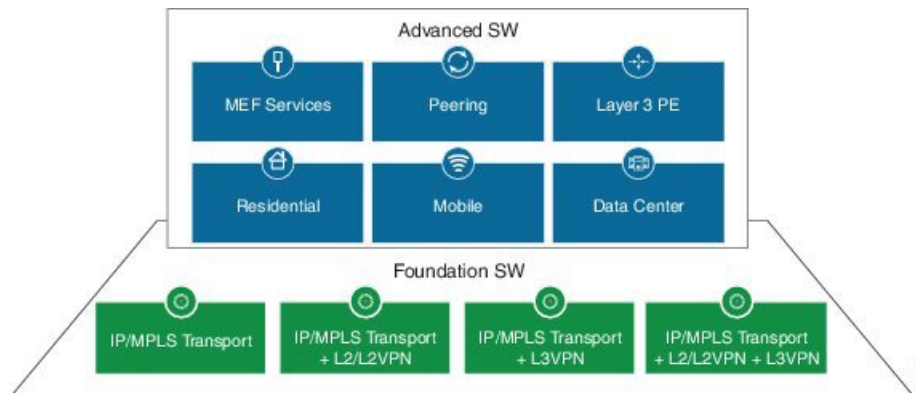
- A9K-8X100GE-CM
- A99-8X100GE-CM
- A99-12X100GE-CM

## Ordering the Consumption Model Line Card using the Consumption Model

The three steps involved in ordering a consumption model line card using the Consumption Model are:

**Figure 6: Steps involved in ordering the consumption model line card using the Consumption Model**



**Figure 7: Foundation Software Licenses And Advanced Software Licenses**

1. Choose the hardware: Select a line card that supports Consumption Model.

The consumption model line cards require Smart Licensing to be installed at your location to function. When placing an order, you must enter their Smart Account information. For more information on how to create a Cisco Smart Account, see: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/software/one-software/solution-overview-c22-733273.html>.

**Table 15: Minimum Foundation Software Licenses for the CM line cards**

PID	Minimum Foundation Software License Required
A9K-8X100GE-CM	300G (30 x 10G)
A99-8X100GE-CM	300G (30 x 10G)
A99-12X100GE-CM	400G (40 x 10G)
A9K-MOD400-CM-BUN	200G (20 x 10G)

2. Choose your foundation software licenses: This provides the transport protocol (IP/MPLS, L2VPN, L3VPN, or L2VPN and L3VPN) as well as "per 10G" port activation.

Pick your foundation software licenses based on the feature set and the scale required. The following is the list of the available licenses. The licenses listed are per 10G RTU (Right to Use) and are required to activate a port.

**Table 16: Foundation Software Licenses for Cisco IOS XR**

Foundation License PID	Description
S-A9K-IPB-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS Basic 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-IPP-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS Premium 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-L2B-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L2VPN Basic 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-L2P-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L2VPN Premium 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-L3B-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L3VPN Basic 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-L3P-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L3VPN Premium 10G Foundational License
S-A9K-L2L3B-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L2VPN/L3VPN Basic 10G Foundational License

Foundation License PID	Description
S-A9K-L2L3P-10G	ASR 9000 IP/MPLS/L2VPN/L3VPN Premium 10G Foundational License

3. Choose your advanced software licenses: This provides the advanced feature support such as hierarchical QoS, OAM (Operations, Administration, and Maintenance), and virtual interfaces.

Pick your advanced software licenses, optional, you can select one or more of them from the following list. The licenses listed are per 10G RTU (Right to Use).

**Table 17: Advanced Software Licenses for Cisco IOS XR**

Advanced Software License PID	Description
S-A9K-HQOS-RTU-10	ASR 9000 H-QoS 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-MAP-RTU-10	ASR 9000 CGN Stateless MAP 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-OAM-RTU-10	ASR 9000 OAM 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-VIRT-RTU-10	ASR 9000 Virtual Interfaces 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-EVPN-RTU-10	ASR 9000 E-VPN 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-VXLN-RTU-10	ASR 9000 VxLAN 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-DWDM-RTU-10	ASR 9000 IPoDWDM 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-MAC-RTU-10	ASR 9000 MACSec 10G Right to Use License
S-A9K-MAC-RTU-40	ASR 9000 MACSec 40G (4x10G) Right to Use License
S-A9K-MAC-RTU-100	ASR 9000 MACSec 100G (10x10G) Right to Use License

Configuration Examples:

The Consumption Model line cards provide the flexibility to configure the line card on a per 10G port basis. Here are a few examples of configurations of the existing TR and SE versions of line cards using the Consumption Model.

### TR Equivalent Configuration

The TR equivalent configuration is a configuration with L2 Premium Foundation Software License plus OAM and Virtual Advanced Software licenses.

Line Card PID	Description	Quantity
A9K-8X100GE-CM A99-8X100GE-CM A99-12X100GE-CM	ASR 9000 8-port 100GE Consumption Model Line Card ASR 9900 8-port 100GE Consumption Model Line Card ASR 9900 12-port 100GE Consumption Model Line Card	1
Foundation Software PID	Scale	Quantity of 10G Licenses
S-A9K-L2P-10G	L2-P (Layer 2 Premium Foundation Software License)	30
Advanced Software PID	Description	Quantity
S-A9K-OAM-RTU-10	ASR 9000 OAM 10Gbps Right to Use License	30
S-A9K-VIRT-RTU-10	ASR 9000 Virtual Interfaces 10Gbps Right to Use License	30

### SE Equivalent Configuration

The SE equivalent configuration is a configuration with L2 Premium Foundation Software License plus H-QoS, OAM, and Virtual Advanced Software licenses.

Line Card PID	Description	Quantity
A9K-8X100GE-CM A99-8X100GE-CM	ASR 9000 8-port 100GE Consumption Model Line Card ASR 9900 8-port 100GE Consumption Model Line Card	1
Foundation Software PID	Scale	Quantity of 10G Licenses
S-A9K-L2P-10G	L2-P (Layer 2 Premium Foundation Software License)	30
Advanced Software PID	Description	Quantity
S-A9K-HQOS-RTU-10	ASR 9000 H-QoS 10Gbps Right to Use License	30
S-A9K-OAM-RTU-10	ASR 9000 OAM 10Gbps Right to Use License	30
S-A9K-VIRT-RTU-10	ASR 9000 Virtual Interfaces 10Gbps Right to Use License	30

# Implementing Default Licensing

## Prerequisites for Configuring Software Entitlement

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Information About Default (Traditional) Licensing

To configure software license entitlements using the default mode of licensing, you need to understand the concepts described in this module.

### Types of Licenses

The following types of licenses are currently defined:

- Permanent licenses—Licenses that enable a designated feature permanently, as long as the license resides on the router.

### Router License Pools

License pools are maintained by the router. By default, all added licenses are allocated to the owner secure domain router (SDR) license pool, and they can be freely allocated to any slot in the router. Features on cards belonging to the owner SDR are granted licenses based on availability in the owner SDR license pool.

### Chassis-Locked Licenses

Licenses are locked to a unique device identifier (UDI). The UDI is comprised of the chassis serial number, along with an additional identifier. The complete set of UDI information can be displayed using the **show license udi** command. The license manager parses the user-provided license and verifies that it is valid for the chassis it is running on and determines if the license is being readed.

### Slot-Based Licenses

Feature licenses are allocated to router slots and not cards. Therefore, if a card is replaced, the existing license is applied to the newly inserted card. For example, if you have eight licenses for Layer 3 VPN in the system, you can configure Layer 3 VPN features on any eight cards in the router, and the licenses are allocated to the slots within which the cards are installed. If a card is removed from one of these licensed slots, say slot 3, and entered into an empty slot with no license, say slot 5, the license remains with slot 3 and the feature cannot be activated on slot 5 with the permanent license entered earlier by the user. In this case, you can release the license to the appropriate license pool by removing the configuration of the card (while it is inserted), or by using the **license move slot** command. When you configure the feature on slot 5, the license is checked out.



# Configure Licenses Using Default Licensing

## Adding a License for a New Feature

This task describes how to acquire a permanent license for a feature that you have purchased or an evaluation license for a feature that you have arranged with your sales representative to try. Use this procedure to replace evaluation licenses with permanent licenses.

### Before you begin

You must have purchased the feature for which you are adding the license. When you purchase the feature, you are provided with a product authorization key (PAK) that you use to download the license.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **show license udi**
3. <http://www.cisco.com/go/license>
4. Copy the license to your TFTP server.
5. **admin**
6. **license add license-name [ sdr sdr-name ]**
7. **configure**
8. **license license-name location {all | node-id}**
9. **exit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show license udi</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show license udi  Mon Jul 13 04:36:32.715 PST  Local Chassis UDI Information:   PID           : ASR-9010-AC   S/N           : FOX1232H67M   Operation ID: 1</pre>	Displays the UDI of the chassis. This consists of a product identifier (PID), serial number (S/N), and operation identifier (Operation ID).
<b>Step 3</b>	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/license">http://www.cisco.com/go/license</a>	Go to the license tool on Cisco.com. You must log in to the site before you can access the license tool. Follow the instructions for product license registration. You are

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>required to enter the feature PAK and the chassis UDI to acquire the license.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If you are installing a permanent license, you should have received the PAK when you purchased the feature. If you are installing an evaluation license, your sales representative should provide you with the PAK.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	Copy the license to your TFTP server.	You will be issued a license. You can copy the license and store it on your computer, or alternatively, you can request that the license be sent to you in an e-mail. When you have received the license, copy it to a TFTP server that is accessible by your router.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>license add license-name [ sdr sdr-name ]</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# license add tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/lc40g_lic</pre>	Adds the license to the SDR license pool. By default, the license is added to the owner SDR license pool.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>configure</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure</pre>	Enters administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>license license-name location {all   node-id}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# license A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC location 0/0/CPU0</pre>	<p>(Optional) Binds the license to the slot where it is to be used.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Beginning with Cisco IOS XR Release 4.3.1, this command is optional. If you do not use this command, it is configured as though the license is bound to all slots.</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit</pre>	Exits administration EXEC mode.

### What to do next

To use the feature associated with the added license, you must configure it on your router. To configure Layer 3 VPN, see the *Implementing MPLS Layer 3 VPNs on Cisco IOS XR Software* module in *MPLS Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

To verify that your Layer 3 VPN configuration is operational, use the **show rsi interface all global** command.

## Backing Up Licenses

When your router is configured with the licenses that you require, you should perform this task to back up all licenses. Backing up licenses makes it easier to restore them if there is a problem.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **license backup backup-file**
3. **show license backup backup-file**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>license backup backup-file</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# license backup disk1:/license_back  License command "license backup disk1:/license_back" completed successfully.	Backs up all licenses on the router to a backup file in the specified location. The backup file can be a local file or a remote file on a TFTP or RCP server.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show license backup backup-file</b> <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show license backup disk1:/license_back	Displays the contents of the backup file.

### Examples

The following example shows sample output from the **show license backup** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show license backup disk1:/license_back

Local Chassis UDI Information:
  S/N       : TBA09370035
  Operation ID: 5
Licenses   :
FeatureID  Type                #installed
CRS-MS-40G Slot based,      Permanent      2
XC-L3VPN   Slot based,      Permanent      1
```

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show license backup disk0:/lic_backup.pkg

Tue Jul 27 17:12:44.982 pst

Local Chassis UDI Information:
  S/N       : FOX1316G5TL
  Operation ID: 9

FeatureID: A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC (Slot based, Permanent)
Total licenses 1
  Pool: Owner 1
  Allocated Node(s):
    0/0/CPU0 1 [Owner]

FeatureID: A9K-ADV-VIDEO-LIC (Slot based, Evaluation)
Total licenses 1
  Pool: Owner 1
  Allocated Node(s):
    0/RSP0/CPU0 1 [Owner]

FeatureID: A9K-iVRF-LIC (Slot based, Permanent)
Total licenses 1
  Pool: Owner 1

FeatureID: A9K-iVRF-LIC (Slot based, Evaluation)
Total licenses 3
  Pool: Owner 3
  Allocated Node(s):
    0/1/CPU0 1 [Owner]

```

## Restoring Licenses

If your licenses become corrupted, and you have previously created a backup of your licenses, you can perform this task to restore the licenses to your router.

### Before you begin

You must have created a backup file of your licenses before you can restore them on your router.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **show license backup** *backup-file*
3. **license restore** *backup-file*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show license backup <i>backup-file</i></b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show license backup disk1:/license_back	Displays the contents of the backup file. You should verify the contents of the backup file before you restore your licenses.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>license restore <i>backup-file</i></b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# license restore disk1:/license_back	Restores all licenses on the router from a backup file in the specified location. This can be a local file, or a remote file on a TFTP or RCP server.

### Examples

This example shows sample output from the **license restore** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# license restore disk1:/license_back

Info: This command will erase all existing licenses.
Info: It is strongly recommended to backup existing licenses first.
Do you wish to proceed? [yes/no]: y

License command "license restore disk1:/license_back" completed successfully.
```

## Transferring Licenses to a new Route Switch Processor 440

To upgrade a route switch processor (RSP) to the RSP440 with your active licenses, perform this task.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. Save the original license file that you received from Cisco, in a USB drive or TFTP server.
2. **save configuration running**
3. Replace the RSP with the RSP440.
4. **load**
5. Add all licenses as described in [Adding a License for a New Feature, on page 103](#).

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	Save the original license file that you received from Cisco, in a USB drive or TFTP server.	Stores the license files in a location that is accessible to the new RSP after it is installed.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>save configuration running</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>configure</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>save configuration running tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/rc_03132013</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>exit</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>admin</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# <b>configure</b>	Saves the running-configuration from both global configuration and administration configuration modes to files. The administration configuration contains user group information that is required for the licenses.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# save configuration running tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/rc_admin_03132013</pre>	
<b>Step 3</b>	Replace the RSP with the RSP440.	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>load</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# configure RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# load tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/rc_03132013 RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# exit RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# load tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/rc_admin_03132013</pre>	Loads the saved running-configuration files on the new RSP440. This must be done in both global configuration mode and administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	Add all licenses as described in <a href="#">Adding a License for a New Feature, on page 103</a> .	Installs the licenses to the new RSP.

## Upgrading Line Cards and Licenses

You may have a number of licenses running on the line cards in your router. Before you upgrade these line cards to advanced models, you need to install new licenses that are appropriate for these line cards. This task describes the steps necessary to upgrade your line cards and their licenses.

### Before you begin

- You must have purchased all relevant licenses for the line cards that you are upgrading, prior to performing this task.
- You must have placed the license files on your router disk drive or a TFTP server such that they are accessible from your router. Refer to [Adding a License for a New Feature, on page 103](#) for more information.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **license add** *license-name*
3. **configure**
4. **license** *license-name* **location** {**all** | *node-id*}
5. Remove the old line cards and install the new ones.
6. **show license**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b>	Enters administration EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>license add</b> <i>license-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# license add tftp://192.10.10.10/mylicenses/A9K-24X10G-AIP-TR-lic	Adds the license to the license pool.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>configure</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# configure	Enters administration configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>license</b> <i>license-name</i> <b>location</b> {all   <i>node-id</i> } <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# license A9K-24X10G-AIP-TR location 0/0/CPU0	(Optional) Binds the license to the slot where it is used. <b>Note</b> Beginning with Cisco IOS XR Release 4.3.1, this command is optional. If you do not use this command, it is configured as though the license is bound to all slots.
<b>Step 5</b>	Remove the old line cards and install the new ones.	Associates the new license on the slot with the new line card. <b>Note</b> You need to wait for the new line cards to boot.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>show license</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show license Thu May 31 08:52:39.876 PST FeatureID: A9K-24X10G-AIP-TR (Slot based, Permanent) Total licenses 1 Available for use 0 Allocated to location 0 Active 1 Store name Permanent Store index 3 Pool: Owner Total licenses in pool: 1 Status: Available 0 Operational: 1 Locations with licenses: (Active/Allocated) [SDR] 0/0/CPU0 (1/0) [Owner]	Verifies the status of the licenses. <b>Note</b> Old licenses remaining on the router are not a problem.

## Troubleshooting License Issues after a Software Upgrade

In the instance that you were running Cisco IOS XR Release 3.9.0 and had the optic feature enabled on a interface and the A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC license was active on a particular slot, when you upgrade to Cisco

IOS XR Release 4.0.0, the A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC license is still active, but you may get the following warning message:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:Jul 27 14:22:22.594 : licmgr[236]:  
%LICENSE-LICMGR-4-PACKAGE_LOCATION_LICENSE_INVALID :  
Feature associated to package A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC configured  
on node 0/4/CPU0 without a valid license
```

To solve this issue, configure the **license** command in administration EXEC mode. This binds the A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC license to the slot on which you are using the license. For example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# license A9K-ADV-OPTIC-LIC location 0/4/CPU0  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# commit
```





## CHAPTER 6

# Managing Router Hardware

This chapter describes the command-line interface (CLI) techniques and commands used to manage and configure the hardware components of a router running the Cisco IOS XR software.

For complete descriptions of the commands listed in this module, see [Additional References, on page 144](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 18: Feature History for Managing Router Hardware with Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	No modification.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Managing Router Hardware, on page 111](#)
- [Displaying Hardware Status, on page 112](#)
- [RSP Redundancy and Switchover, on page 130](#)
- [CPAK, on page 134](#)
- [Reloading, Shutting Down, or Power Cycling a Node, on page 136](#)
- [Flash Disk Recovery, on page 138](#)
- [Using Controller Commands to Manage Hardware Components, on page 139](#)
- [Formatting Hard Drives, Flash Drives, and Other Storage Devices, on page 139](#)
- [Removing and Replacing Cards, on page 140](#)
- [Upgrading the CPU Controller Bits, on page 143](#)
- [Additional References, on page 144](#)

## Prerequisites for Managing Router Hardware

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

# Displaying Hardware Status

This section describes how to display different types of hardware status information.

## Displaying SDR Hardware Version Information

To display hardware version information for the components assigned to a secure domain router (SDR), connect to the designated shelf controller (DSC) and enter the **show diag** command in EXEC mode. The displayed information includes the card serial number and the ROMMON software version.

The syntax for the **show diag** command in EXEC mode is:

**show diag** [*node-id* | **details** | **summary**]

In the following example, the **show diag** command displays information for all nodes in the SDR:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show diag

Mon Jun 29 00:36:41.576 PST

NODE module 0/RSP0/CPU0 :

  MAIN:  board type 0x100302
  S/N:    FOC1230803H
  Top Assy. Number: 68-3160-04
  PID:    A2K-RSP-4G-HDD=
  UDI_VID: VP4
  HwRev:  V4.8
  New Deviation Number: 0
  CLEI:    IPUCARJBAA
  Board State : IOS XR RUN
  PLD:     Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
  MONLIB:  QNXFFS Monlib Version 3.2
  ROMMON:  Version 1.0(20081208:173612) [ASR9K ROMMON]
  Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
    Compact Flash : V1.0
    XbarSwitch0    : V1.3
    XbarSwitch1    : V1.3
    XbarArbiter     : V1.0
    XbarInterface  : V0.0
    IntCtrl        : V1.14
    ClkCtrl        : V1.13
    PuntFPGA       : V1.5
    HD             : V3.0
    USB0           : V77.20
    USB1           : V77.20
    CPUCtrl        : V1.17
    UTI            : V1.6
    LIU            : V1.0
    MLANSwitch     : V0.0
    EOBCSwitch     : V2.0
    CBC (active partition) : v1.2
    CBC (inactive partition) : v1.1

NODE module 0/1/CPU0 :

  MAIN:  board type 0x20207
  S/N:    FOC123081J6
```

```
Top Assy. Number: 68-3182-03
PID: A9K-40GE-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  NP0 : V3.194
  NP1 : V3.194
  NP2 : V3.194
  NP3 : V3.194
  XbarInterface : V18.4
  Bridge0 : V0.38
  Bridge1 : V0.38
  CPUCtrl : V0.15
  USB : V77.20
  PortCtrl : V0.8
  PHYCtrl : V0.6
  40 Port Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
  CBC (active partition) : v2.2
  CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE module 0/4/CPU0 :

```
MAIN: board type 0x2020a
S/N: FOC123081JA
Top Assy. Number: 68-3183-02
PID: A9K-8T/4-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: IPU3AE0CAA
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  NP0 : V3.194
  NP1 : V3.194
  NP2 : V3.194
  NP3 : V3.194
  XbarInterface : V18.4
  Bridge0 : V0.38
  Bridge1 : V0.38
  CPUCtrl : V0.15
  USB : V77.20
  PortCtrl : V0.10
  PHYCtrl : V0.7
  PHY0 : V0.16
  PHY1 : V0.16
  PHY2 : V0.16
  PHY3 : V0.16
  PHY4 : V0.16
  PHY5 : V0.16
  PHY6 : V0.16
  PHY7 : V0.16
  8 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
  CBC (active partition) : v2.2
  CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE module 0/6/CPU0 :

```

MAIN:  board type 0x20208
S/N:    FHH12250033
Top Assy. Number:  68-3184-02
PID:    A9K-4T-B
UDI_VID:  V1D
HwRev:  V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD:    Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  NP0   : V3.194
  NP1   : V3.194
  NP2   : V3.194
  NP3   : V3.194
  XbarInterface : V18.4
  Bridge0  : V0.38
  Bridge1  : V0.38
  CPUCtrl  : V0.15
  USB     : V77.20
  PHY0    : V0.16
  PHY1    : V0.16
  PHY2    : V0.16
  PHY3    : V0.16
  PortCtrl : V0.10
  PHYCtrl  : V0.7
  4 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
  CBC (active partition) : v2.2
  CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1

```

In the following example, the **show diag** command displays information for a single node:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show diag 0/6/cpu0

Mon Jun 29 00:41:43.450 PST

NODE module 0/6/CPU0 :

MAIN:  board type 0x20208
S/N:    FHH12250033
Top Assy. Number:  68-3184-02
PID:    A9K-4T-B
UDI_VID:  V1D
HwRev:  V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD:    Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  NP0   : V3.194
  NP1   : V3.194
  NP2   : V3.194
  NP3   : V3.194
  XbarInterface : V18.4
  Bridge0  : V0.38
  Bridge1  : V0.38
  CPUCtrl  : V0.15
  USB     : V77.20
  PHY0    : V0.16

```

```

PHY1   : V0.16
PHY2   : V0.16
PHY3   : V0.16
PortCtrl : V0.10
PHYCtrl : V0.7
4 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1

```

## Displaying System Hardware Version Information

To display hardware version information for all or some of the components assigned in a system, connect to the designated shelf controller (DSC) and enter the **show diag** command in administration EXEC mode. When this command is entered in administration EXEC mode, you can display information on RSPs, line cards, and system components such as the chassis, fan trays, and power supplies.



**Note** If you enter the **show diag** command in EXEC mode, the software displays only the hardware assigned to the SDR to which you are connected.

The syntax for the **show diag** command in administration EXEC mode is:

**show diag** [*node-id* | **chassis** | **details** | **fans** | **memory** | **power-supply** | **summary**]



**Tip** For information on the software version, use the **show version** command.

In the following example, the **show diag** command displays information for all nodes in the system:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show diag

Mon Jun 29 01:21:04.571 PST

NODE module 0/RSP0/CPU0 :

MAIN:  board type 0x100302
S/N:    FOC1230803H
Top Assy. Number:  68-3160-04
PID:    A2K-RSP-4G-HDD=
UDI_VID:  VP4
HwRev: V4.8
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:  IPUCARJBAA
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD:    Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
MONLIB: QNXFFS Monlib Version 3.2
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:173612) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  Compact Flash : V1.0
  XbarSwitch0   : V1.3
  XbarSwitch1   : V1.3
  XbarArbiter    : V1.0
  XbarInterface : V0.0
  IntCtrl       : V1.14

```

```

ClkCtrl  : V1.13
PuntFPGA : V1.5
HD       : V3.0
USB0     : V77.20
USB1     : V77.20
CPUCtrl  : V1.17
UTI      : V1.6
LIU      : V1.0
MLANSwitch : V0.0
EOBCSwitch : V2.0
CBC (active partition) : v1.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v1.1

```

NODE fantray 0/FT0/SP :

```

MAIN: board type 0x900211
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 32-0000-00
PID:
UDI_VID:
HwRev: V32.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  CBC (active partition) : v4.0
  CBC (inactive partition) : v0.13

```

NODE fantray 0/FT1/SP :

```

MAIN: board type 0x900211
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 32-0000-00
PID:
UDI_VID:
HwRev: V32.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  CBC (active partition) : v4.0
  CBC (inactive partition) : v0.13

```

NODE module 0/1/CPU0 :

```

MAIN: board type 0x20207
S/N: FOC123081J6
Top Assy. Number: 68-3182-03
PID: A9K-40GE-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
  NP0 : V3.194
  NP1 : V3.194
  NP2 : V3.194
  NP3 : V3.194
  XbarInterface : V18.4

```

```
Bridge0 : V0.38
Bridge1 : V0.38
CPUCtrl : V0.15
USB : V77.20
PortCtrl : V0.8
PHYCtrl : V0.6
40 Port Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE module 0/4/CPU0 :

```
MAIN: board type 0x2020a
S/N: FOC123081JA
Top Assy. Number: 68-3183-02
PID: A9K-8T/4-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: IPU3AE0CAA
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
NP0 : V3.194
NP1 : V3.194
NP2 : V3.194
NP3 : V3.194
XbarInterface : V18.4
Bridge0 : V0.38
Bridge1 : V0.38
CPUCtrl : V0.15
USB : V77.20
PortCtrl : V0.10
PHYCtrl : V0.7
PHY0 : V0.16
PHY1 : V0.16
PHY2 : V0.16
PHY3 : V0.16
PHY4 : V0.16
PHY5 : V0.16
PHY6 : V0.16
PHY7 : V0.16
8 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1
```

NODE module 0/6/CPU0 :

```
MAIN: board type 0x20208
S/N: FHH12250033
Top Assy. Number: 68-3184-02
PID: A9K-4T-B
UDI_VID: V1D
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI:
Board State : IOS XR RUN
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: 0x8004 (rev: 2.2), Power: N/A
ROMMON: Version 1.0(20081208:174521) [ASR9K ROMMON]
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:
NP0 : V3.194
NP1 : V3.194
NP2 : V3.194
```

```

NP3 : V3.194
XbarInterface : V18.4
Bridge0 : V0.38
Bridge1 : V0.38
CPUCtrl : V0.15
USB : V77.20
PHY0 : V0.16
PHY1 : V0.16
PHY2 : V0.16
PHY3 : V0.16
PortCtrl : V0.10
PHYCtrl : V0.7
4 Port Ten Gigabit Ethernet Daughter board : V0.0
CBC (active partition) : v2.2
CBC (inactive partition) : v2.1

```

NODE power-module 0/PM0/SP :

```

MAIN: board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 341-00032-01
PID: A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID: V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: ACACACACAC
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:

```

NODE power-module 0/PM1/SP :

```

MAIN: board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 341-00032-01
PID: A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID: V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: ACACACACAC
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:

```

NODE power-module 0/PM2/SP :

```

MAIN: board type 0xf00188
S/N:
Top Assy. Number: 341-00032-01
PID: A9K-3KW-AC
UDI_VID: V00
HwRev: V0.0
New Deviation Number: 0
CLEI: ACACACACAC
PLD: Motherboard: N/A, Processor: N/A, Power: N/A
ROMMON:
Board FPGA/CPLD/ASIC Hardware Revision:

```

Rack 0 - ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories

```

RACK NUM: 0
S/N:
PID: ASR-9010 Backplane
VID: 0.1
Desc: ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories

```



```
CLEI: NOCLEI
Top Assy. Number: 68-1234-56
```

In the following example, the **show diag** command displays information for a single system component:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show diag chassis

Mon Jun 29 01:25:05.711 PST

Rack 0 - ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories
  RACK NUM: 0
  S/N:
  PID: ASR-9010 Backplane
  VID: 0.1
  Desc: ASR-9010 Chassis, Includes Accessories
  CLEI: NOCLEI
  Top Assy. Number: 68-1234-56
```

## Displaying Software and Hardware Information

The **show version** command displays a variety of system information, including the hardware and software versions, router uptime, boot settings (including the configuration register), and active software.

The following is sample output from the **show version** command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show version

Sat Aug 1 22:52:39.089 DST

Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE]
Copyright (c) 2009 by Cisco Systems, Inc.

ROM: System Bootstrap, Version 1.1(20090521:183759) [ASR9K ROMMON],

router uptime is 1 day, 2 hours, 34 minutes
System image file is "bootflash:disk0/asr9k-os-mbi-3.9.0.16I/mbiasr9k-rp.vm"

cisco ASR9K Series (MPC8641D) processor with 4194304K bytes of memory.
MPC8641D processor at 1333MHz, Revision 2.2

2 Management Ethernet
12 TenGigE
40 GigabitEthernet
219k bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
975M bytes of compact flash card.
33994M bytes of hard disk.
1605616k bytes of disk0: (Sector size 512 bytes).
1605616k bytes of disk1: (Sector size 512 bytes).

Configuration register on node 0/RSP0/CPU0 is 0x102
Boot device on node 0/RSP0/CPU0 is disk0:
Package active on node 0/RSP0/CPU0:
asr9k-scfclient, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-scfclient-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 12:09:40 DST 2009
  By sjc-lds-208 in /auto/ioxbuid7/production/3.9.0.16I.DT_IMAGE/asr9k/workspace for
  c4.2.1-p0
```

```

asr9k-adv-video, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-adv-video-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 13:49:37 DST 2009
  By sjc-lds-208 in /auto/ioxbuild7/production/3.9.0.16I.DT_IMAGE/asr9k/workspace for
c4.2.1-p0

asr9k-fpd, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-fpd-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 12:26:21 DST 2009
  By sjc-lds-208 in /auto/ioxbuild7/production/3.9.0.16I.DT_IMAGE/asr9k/workspace for
c4.2.1-p0

asr9k-diags, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-diags-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 12:09:43 DST 2009
  By sjc-lds-208 in /auto/ioxbuild7/production/3.9.0.16I.DT_IMAGE/asr9k/workspace for
c4.2.1-p0

asr9k-k9sec, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-k9sec-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 12:25:25 DST 2009
  By sjc-lds-208 in /auto/ioxbuild7/production/3.9.0.16I.DT_IMAGE/asr9k/workspace for
c4.2.1-p0

asr9k-mgbl, V 3.9.0.16I[DT_IMAGE], Cisco Systems, at disk0:asr9k-mgbl-3.9.0.16I
  Built on Thu Jul 30 13:48:16 DST 2009
--More--

```

## Displaying Router Power Consumption

With the introduction of PLIMs and MSCs that consume higher power than before, and given the modular power available on a configurable number of power modules, it is possible that a fully loaded chassis can consume more power than available to the system. For this reason it is important to monitor your router power consumption and pay attention to any warnings or alarms regarding power.

Your router monitors the power necessary to run all cards in the system, and if the power requirements exceed the available power, syslog messages or alarms are displayed. Syslog messages can be displayed following two possible events:

- A board is powered up and a shortage of available power is detected.
- Available power becomes lower than the power consumed by inserted cards, for example because a power module is removed.

The following considerations are used when calculating the power consumption:

- Powering on an MSC or DRP adds to the power requirements of the chassis.
- Inserting or removing power modules affects the calculation of available power.
- Line cards are allowed to power up, before their power consumption is calculated.
- The power consumption of a SIP or SPA is calculated as though it is fully populated.
- RP, Switch Fabric, Fan tray, Fan controller and Alarm module power consumption is always added to the total chassis power usage regardless of whether they are physically present or not.
- The power of one power module is reserved for redundancy against a module failure (redundancy threshold), and thus subtracted from the calculation of available power.



**Note** For systems with modular power supplies, the total power availability is the sum of all power modules in both shelves *minus* one. This one power module is reserved to guard against a single module failure.



**Note** In a 4-Slot line card chassis, the total power available is the sum of all the power modules present (maximum of four).

### Alarms and Messages

The following alarms can be raised:

- A major alarm is raised when the power consumption exceeds the power budget, and the alpha display on the alarm module is set to “PWR CRITICAL.”
- A minor alarm is raised when the redundancy threshold is crossed, and the alpha display is set to “PWR LOW.”
- A critical alarm is raised when there is a zone failure, and the alpha display is set to “ZONEX PWR FAIL,” where “X” is the zone number.

Syslog messages are displayed when a power event is registered.

**Table 19: Syslog Messages Displayed on Systems with Modular Power Supplies**

Event	Message
Power budget is exceeded	Power allotted to cards in this rack has exceeded the available rack power budget. Please check the 'show power' command to resolve this situation.
Power budget is restored	Power budget is now sufficient for rack power.
Power consumption exceeds the capacity of both shelves minus the capacity of one power module	Rack power is now being allotted from all power modules. Power module redundancy is no longer available, a single power module failure might result in card power loss.
Power consumption drops below the capacity of both shelves minus the capacity of one power module	Power allotment in this rack is now normal. Power module redundancy restored.

**Table 20: Syslog Messages Displayed on Systems with Fixed Power Supplies**

Event	Message
Zone power budget is exceeded	Power allotted in zone X has exceeded the available zone power budget. Please check the 'show power' command to resolve this situation.
Zone power budget is restored	Power budget for zone X is now sufficient for zone power.

Event	Message
Zone failure	Zone X has lost power. Check that power modules Ax and Bx are providing power.
Zone restoration	Zone X is now receiving power.

### show power command Sample Output

Use the **show power** commands to display the total power available and the total power being consumed.

The **show power allotted** command displays the power allotted to the cards in the chassis. This example is from a system using modular power supplies:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show power allotted location 0/0/*
```

```
Sun Nov 18 22:00:51.176 UTC
nodeid = 0x2a00000f
```

Node	Card Type	State	PID	Power Allotted
0/0/*	FP-140G	POWERED UP	CRS-MSC-FP140	450.0W
0/0/PL0	14-10GbE	POWERED UP	14X10GBE-WL-XF	150.0W

The **show power capacity** command displays the power supplied to a rack. This example is from a system using fixed power supplies:

```
RP/0/RP1/CPU0:router(admin)# show power capacity rack 0
```

```
Tue Nov 20 19:43:30.458 OST
```

```
Rack 0: Cisco CRS Fixed AC Power System
```

Zone	Power Module	State	Zone Power Capacity
Zone 1:	A[0]	NOT PRESENT	2500.0W
	B[0]	OK	
Zone 2:	A[0]	NOT PRESENT	2500.0W
	B[0]	OK	
Zone 3:	A[0]	NOT PRESENT	2500.0W
	B[0]	OK	
Total Rack Power Capacity:			7500.0W

The **show power summary** displays a summary of the power consumption and availability for a rack. This example is from a system using modular power supplies:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show power summary rack 0
```

```
Sun Nov 18 22:02:40.434 UTC
```

Location	Power Capacity	Power Allotted	Power Available
Rack : 0	7600.0W	1285.0W	6315.0W

## Displaying SDR Node IDs and Status

In EXEC mode, the **show platform** command displays information for all nodes assigned to the owner SDR. For each node, this information includes the host card type, the operational state, and the configuration state. To display information on a single node, enter the command with a node ID.

The syntax for the **show platform** command is:

**show platform** [*node-id*]

The following example displays the status for all nodes in the SDR to which you are connected:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show platform
Mon Aug  3 07:39:01.416 DST
Node              Type                               State              Config State
-----
0/RSP0/CPU0       A9K-RSP-4G (Active)                 IOS XR RUN         PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/1/CPU0          A9K-40GE-B                          IOS XR RUN         PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/4/CPU0          A9K-8T/4-B                          IOS XR RUN         PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/6/CPU0          A9K-4T-B                            IOS XR RUN         PWR, NSHUT, MON
```

The *node-id* appears in the *rack/slot/module* notation, and the *node-id* components are as follows:

- *rack* —In a single-shelf system the rack number is always “0.”
- *slot* —Number of the physical slot in which the card is installed.
- *module* —Subslot number of a system hardware component.

Table 21: Node ID Components, on page 123 summarizes the *node-id* for each type of card.

**Table 21: Node ID Components**

Card Type (the card to which you are issuing commands)	Rack (always “0”)	Slot (the physical slot in which the card is installed)	Module (the entity on the card that is the target of the command)
Route switch processor	0	RSP0 and RSP1	CPU0
40-Port Gigabit Ethernet Line Card 8-Port 10-Gigabit Ethernet Line Card 4-Port 10-Gigabit Ethernet Line Card	0-255	4-7 (6-slot chassis) 0-7 (10-slot chassis)	0-X (SFP and XFP module number on the line card)
Power Modules	0	PM0-PM5 (10-slot chassis) PM0-PM2 (6-slot chassis)	—
Fan controller cards	0	FC0-FC1	—

## Displaying Router Node IDs and Status

In administration EXEC mode, the **show platform** command displays information for all router nodes. In administration EXEC mode, the command display also includes additional node IDs such as those for fabric cards, alarm modules, and fan controllers. For each node, this information includes the host card type, the operational state, and the configuration state. To display information on a single node, enter the command with a node ID.

The syntax for the **show platform** command is:

**show platform** [*node-id*]

The following example displays the status for all nodes in the system:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show platform
```

```
Sat Mar 24 05:02:18.569 DST
Node                Type                State                Config State
-----
0/RSP0/CPU0        A9K-RSP-4G (Active)  IOS XR RUN          PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/1/CPU0           A9K-40GE-B          IOS XR RUN          PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/4/CPU0           A9K-8T/4-B          IOS XR RUN          PWR, NSHUT, MON
0/6/CPU0           A9K-4T-B            IOS XR RUN          PWR, NSHUT, MON
```

The *node-id* appears in the *rack/slot/module* notation, and the *node-id* components are as follows:

- *rack* —In a single-shelf system the rack number is always “0.”
- *slot* —Number of the physical slot in which the card is installed.
- *module* —Subslot number of a system hardware component.

[Table 21: Node ID Components, on page 123](#) summarizes the *node-id* argument for each type of card.

## Displaying Router Environment Information

The **show environment** command displays hardware information for the system, including fan speeds, LED indications, power supply voltage and current information, and temperatures.

The syntax for the **show environment** command is:

**show environment** [*options*]

You can use the **show environment** command options to limit the detail in the command display. To view the command options, enter the **show environment ?** command. The following example shows the full environment status report:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show environment
```

```
Mon Jun 29 04:32:07.587 PST
```

```
Temperature Information
```

```
-----
R/S/I   Modules      Inlet      Hotspot
          Temperature Temperature
```

		(deg C)	(deg C)
0/1/*	host	31.5	39.5
0/RSP0/*	host	26.6	36.6
0/4/*	host	29.8	38.8
0/6/*	host	32.7	42.0
0/FT0/*	host	27.2	28.2
0/FT1/*	host	27.4	30.2

## Voltage Information

R/S/I	Modules	Sensor	(mV)	Margin
0/1/*	host	IBV	10647	n/a
	host	5.0V	4929	n/a
	host	VP3P3_CAN	3288	n/a
	host	3.3V	3301	n/a
	host	2.5V	2516	n/a
	host	1.8VB	1810	n/a
	host	1.2VB	1193	n/a
	host	1.8VA	1800	n/a
	host	0.9VB	884	n/a
	host	1.2V_LDO_BRG0	1193	n/a
	host	1.2V_LDO_BRG1	1195	n/a
	host	1.8VC	1811	n/a
	host	1.5VB	1505	n/a
	host	1.5VA	1503	n/a
	host	1.1V(1.05V_CPU)	1052	n/a
	host	0.75VA	751	n/a
	host	0.75VB_0.75VC	754	n/a
	host	1.1VB	1102	n/a
	host	1.2V_TCAM0	1003	n/a
	host	1.2V_TCAM1	1000	n/a
	host	1.0V_Bridge_LDO	998	n/a
	host	1.0VB	1043	n/a
	host	0.75VD_and_0.75VE	752	n/a
	host	1.2V_TCAM2	1005	n/a
	host	1.2V_TCAM3	1002	n/a
	host	1.5VC	1504	n/a
	host	1.8VD	1803	n/a
	host	1.1VC	1099	n/a
	host	ZARLINK_3.3V	3272	n/a
	host	ZARLINK_1.8V	1808	n/a
	host	1.2V_DB	1195	n/a
	host	3.3V_DB	3316	n/a
	host	2.5V_DB	2534	n/a
	host	1.5V_DB	1509	n/a
0/RSP0/*	host	0.75VTT	749	n/a
	host	0.9VTT_A	910	n/a

## Displaying Router Environment Information

host	0.9VTT_B	904	n/a
host	IBV	10586	n/a
host	5.0V	5013	n/a
host	VP3P3_CAN	3277	n/a
host	3.3V	3299	n/a
host	2.5V	2518	n/a
host	1.8VB	1807	n/a
host	1.2VA	1205	n/a
host	1.2VB	1202	n/a
host	1.05V	1047	n/a
host	1.2VD	1205	n/a
host	1.8VA	1811	n/a
host	1.5V	1496	n/a
host	1.9V	1887	n/a
0/4/*			
host	IBV	10627	n/a
host	5.0V	4917	n/a
host	VP3P3_CAN	3279	n/a
host	3.3V	3296	n/a
host	2.5V	2522	n/a
host	1.8VB	1805	n/a
host	1.2VB	1188	n/a
host	1.8VA	1796	n/a
host	0.9VB	881	n/a
host	1.2V_LDO_BRG0	1192	n/a
host	1.2V_LDO_BRG1	1195	n/a
host	1.8VC	1806	n/a
host	1.5VB	1510	n/a
host	1.5VA	1503	n/a
host	1.1V(1.05V_CPU)	1048	n/a
host	0.75VA	753	n/a
host	0.75VB_0.75VC	757	n/a
host	1.1VB	1105	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM0	1003	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM1	1000	n/a
host	1.0V_Bridge_LDO	997	n/a
host	1.0VB	1037	n/a
host	0.75VD_and_0.75VE	755	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM2	1004	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM3	1005	n/a
host	1.5VC	1505	n/a
host	1.8VD	1808	n/a
host	1.1VC	1104	n/a
host	ZARLINK_3.3V	3285	n/a
host	ZARLINK_1.8V	1806	n/a
host	1.2V_DB	1205	n/a
host	3.3V_DB	3318	n/a
host	2.5V_DB	2493	n/a
host	1.5V_DB	1497	n/a
host	1.8V_DB	1825	n/a
host	5.0V_XFP_DB	5001	n/a
host	1.2VB_DB	1228	n/a
0/6/*			
host	IBV	10628	n/a
host	5.0V	4893	n/a
host	VP3P3_CAN	3281	n/a
host	3.3V	3297	n/a
host	2.5V	2524	n/a
host	1.8VB	1804	n/a
host	1.2VB	1204	n/a
host	1.8VA	1795	n/a
host	0.9VB	881	n/a



host	1.2V_LDO_BRG0	1194	n/a
host	1.2V_LDO_BRG1	1193	n/a
host	1.8VC	1815	n/a
host	1.5VB	1495	n/a
host	1.5VA	1503	n/a
host	1.1V(1.05V_CPU)	1052	n/a
host	0.75VA	752	n/a
host	0.75VB_0.75VC	749	n/a
host	1.1VB	1001	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM0	999	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM1	1002	n/a
host	1.0V_Bridge_LDO	995	n/a
host	1.0VB	1050	n/a
host	0.75VD_and_0.75VE	752	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM2	1002	n/a
host	1.2V_TCAM3	995	n/a
host	1.5VC	1502	n/a
host	1.8VD	1802	n/a
host	1.1VC	1101	n/a
host	ZARLINK_3.3V	3273	n/a
host	ZARLINK_1.8V	1804	n/a
host	1.2V_DB	1200	n/a
host	3.3V_DB	3314	n/a
host	2.5V_DB	2496	n/a
host	1.5V_DB	1496	n/a
host	1.8V_DB	1824	n/a
host	5.0V_XFP_DB	5004	n/a
host	1.2VB_DB	1227	n/a

## LED Information

R/S/I	Modules	LED	Status
0/RSP0/*			
	host	Critical-Alarm	Off
	host	Major-Alarm	Off
	host	Minor-Alarm	Off
	host	ACO	Off

## Fan Information

Fan speed (rpm):										
	FAN0	FAN1	FAN2	FAN3	FAN4	FAN5	FAN6	FAN7	FAN8	FAN9
FAN10	FAN11									
0/FT0/*										
	3510	3510	3510	3540	3510	3570	3480	3570	3510	3510
3510	3510									
0/FT1/*										
	3540	3510	3450	3540	3480	3600	3480	3450	3540	3540
3480	3540									

## Power Supply Information

R/S/I	Modules	Sensor	Watts
0/PM0/*			
	host	PM	3000
0/PM1/*			
	host	PM	3000

```

0/PM2/*
      host      PM      3000

Power Shelves Type: AC

Total Power Capacity:      9000W
Protected Power Capacity:  4500W
Worst Case Power Used:     3145W
Slot                                Max Watts
----                                -
0/1/CPU0                          375
0/RSP0/CPU0                        250
0/RSP1/CPU0                        350
0/4/CPU0                          375
0/6/CPU0                          375
0/FT0/SP                          710 (default)
0/FT1/SP                          710 (default)

Worst Case Protected Power Available:  1355W

```

## Configuring the Chassis Altitude

To allow your router to adjust the fan speed to compensate for lower cooling capabilities at higher altitudes, you should configure the chassis altitude setting. Use the **environment altitude** command in administration configuration mode. The default setting is 1800 meters.

The syntax for the environment altitude command is:

```
environment altitude altitude rack rack-no
```

## Displaying RP Redundancy Status

The **show redundancy** command displays the redundancy status of the route switch processors (RSPs). This command also displays the boot and switch-over history for the RSPs.

The **show redundancy** operates in EXEC and administration EXEC mode.

In the following example, the **show redundancy** command displays the redundancy status for a redundant RSP pair:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show redundancy

Mon Jun 29 04:49:26.098 PST
Redundancy information for node 0/RSP0/CPU0:
=====
Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 is in ACTIVE role
Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 has no valid partner

Reload and boot info
-----
A9K-RSP-4G reloaded Thu Jun 11 15:20:50 2009: 2 weeks, 3 days, 13 hours, 28 minutes ago
Active node booted Thu Jun 11 15:20:50 2009: 2 weeks, 3 days, 13 hours, 28 minutes ago

Active node reload "Cause: Turboboot completed successfully"

```

## Displaying Field-Programmable Device Compatibility

The **show hw-module fpd** command displays field-programmable device (FPD) compatibility for all modules or a specific module.

The syntax for the **show hw-module fpd** command is:

**show hw-module fpd location** {all | node-id}

The **show hw-module fpd** operates in EXEC and administration EXEC mode.

The following example shows how to display FPD compatibility for all modules in the router:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# ios#show hw-module fpd
Tue Jan 22 13:56:55.082 UTC
```

Location	Card type	HWver	FPD device	ATR Status	FPD Versions	
					Running	Programd
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	MB-MIFPGA	CURRENT	0.19	0.19
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	Bootloader	CURRENT	1.10	1.10
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	CPU-IOFPGA	CURRENT	1.18	1.18
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	MB-IOFPGA	CURRENT	0.18	0.18
0/PM0	NC55-1200W-ACFW	1.0	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW	NEED UPGD	2.08	2.08
0/PM1	NC55-1200W-ACFW	1.0	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW	NEED UPGD	2.08	2.08

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#.
```



**Note** After Release 5.3.x, Upg/Dng? will display Yes only for upgrade.

The following example shows the FPD for which upgrade will be skipped.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module fpd location all
```

Existing Field Programmable Devices							
Location	Card Type	HW			Inst	Current SW Version	Upg/Dng?
		Version	Type	Subtype			
0/SM1/SP	140G-4-S1S2S3	0.1	lc	rommonA	0	2.08	Yes
			lc	rommon	0	2.08	Yes
			lc	fpqa1	0	6.04^	No
			lc	fpga2	0	4.01	No

NOTES:

1. ^ One or more FPD will be intentionally skipped from upgrade using CLI with option "all" or during "Auto fpd".  
It can be upgraded only using the "admin> upgrade hw-module fpd <fpd> location <loc>" CLI with exact location.

The following example shows how to display FPD compatibility for a specific module in the router:

Table 22: show hw-module fpd Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Location	Location of the module in the <i>rack/slot/module</i> notation.
Card Type	Module part number.
HW Version	Hardware model version for the module.
Type	Hardware type. Can be one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spa—Shared port adapter</li> <li>• lc—Line card</li> </ul>
Subtype	FPD type. Can be one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fabldr—Fabric downloader</li> <li>• fpga1—Field-programmable gate array</li> <li>• fpga2—Field-programmable gate array 2</li> <li>• fpga3—Field-programmable gate array 3</li> <li>• fpga4—Field-programmable gate array 4</li> <li>• fpga5—Field-programmable gate array 5</li> <li>• rommonA—Read-only memory monitor A</li> <li>• rommon—Read-only memory monitor B</li> </ul>
Inst	FPD instance. The FPD instance uniquely identifies an FPD and is used by the FPD process to register an FPD.
Current SW Version	Currently running FPD image version.
Upg/Dng?	Specifies whether an FPD upgrade or downgrade is required. A downgrade is required in rare cases when the version of the FPD image has a higher major revision than the version of the FPD image in the current Cisco IOS XR software package.

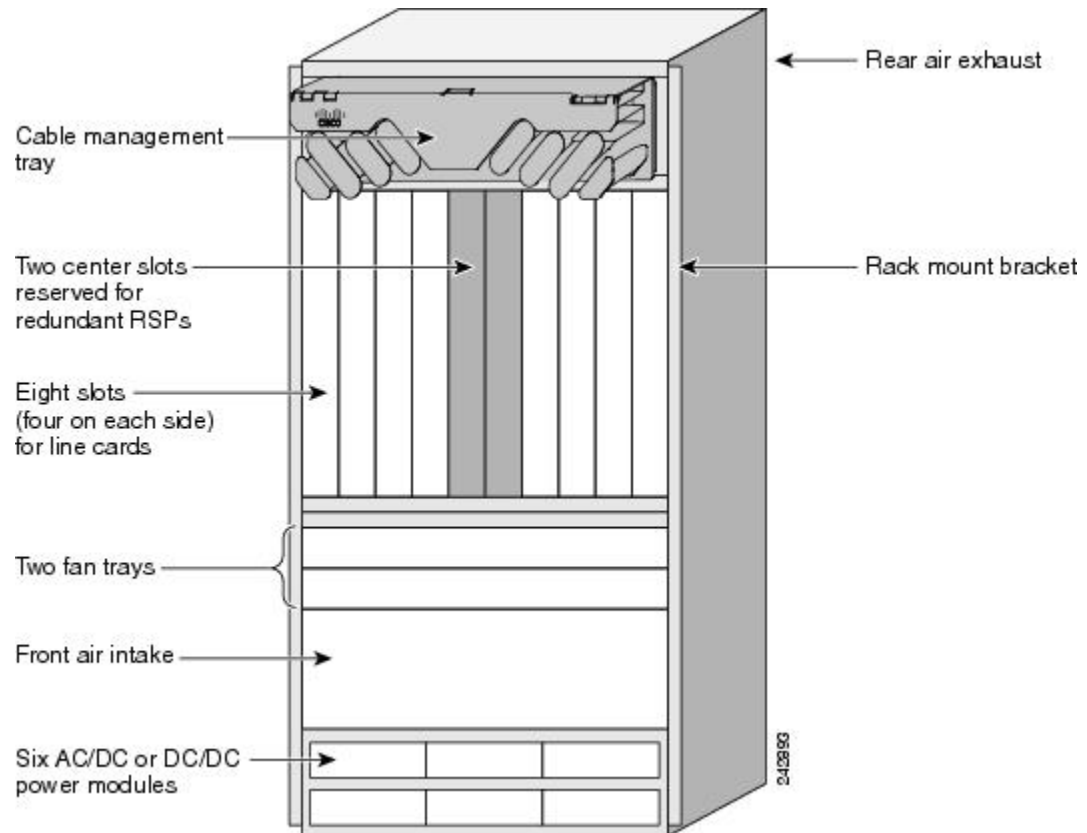
## RSP Redundancy and Switchover

This section describes RSP redundancy and switchover commands and issues.

### Establishing RSP Redundancy

Your router has two slots for RSPs: RSP0 and RSP1 (see [Figure 8: Redundant Set of RSPs Installed in Slots RSP0 and RSP1 in an 8-Slot Chassis, on page 131](#)). RSP0 is the slot on the left, facing the front of the chassis, and RSP1 is the slot on right. These slots are configured for redundancy by default, and the redundancy cannot be eliminated. To establish RSP redundancy, install RSPs into both slots.

**Figure 8: Redundant Set of RSPs Installed in Slots RSP0 and RSP1 in an 8-Slot Chassis**



## Determining the Active RP in a Redundant Pair

During system startup, one RSP in each redundant pair becomes the active RSP. You can tell which RSP is the active RSP in the following ways:

- The active RSP can be identified by the green Primary LED on the faceplate of the card. The active RSP is indicated when the Primary LED is on. The alphanumeric LED display on the RSP displays ACTV RP.
- The slot of the active RSP is indicated in the CLI prompt. For example:

```
RP/0/RSP1/CPU0:router#
```

In this example, the prompt indicates that you are communicating with the active RSP in slot RSP1. See *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide* for a complete description of the CLI prompt.

- Enter the **show redundancy** command in EXEC mode to display a summary of the active and standby RSP status. For example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show redundancy
```

```
Mon Jun 29 04:49:26.098 PST
Redundancy information for node 0/RSP0/CPU0:
=====
```

```

Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 is in ACTIVE role
Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 has no valid partner

Reload and boot info
-----
A9K-RSP-4G reloaded Thu Jun 11 15:20:50 2009: 2 weeks, 3 days, 13 hours, 28 minutes ago
Active node booted Thu Jun 11 15:20:50 2009: 2 weeks, 3 days, 13 hours, 28 minutes ago

Active node reload "Cause: Turboboot completed successfully"

```

## Role of the Standby RSP

The second RSP to boot in a redundant pair automatically becomes the standby RSP. While the active RSP manages the system and communicates with the user interface, the standby RSP maintains a complete backup of the software and configurations for all cards in the system. If the active RSP fails or goes off line for any reason, the standby RSP immediately takes control of the system.

## Summary of Redundancy Commands

RSP redundancy is enabled by default in the Cisco IOS XR software, but you can use the commands described in [Table 23: RSP Redundancy Commands, on page 132](#) to display the redundancy status of the cards or force a manual switchover.

**Table 23: RSP Redundancy Commands**

Command	Description
<b>show redundancy</b>	Displays the redundancy status of the RSPs. This command also displays the boot and switch-over history for the RSPs.
<b>redundancy switchover</b>	Forces a manual switchover to the standby RSP. This command works only if the standby RSP is installed and in the “ready” state.
<b>show platform</b>	Displays the status for node, including the redundancy status of the RSP cards. In EXEC mode, this command displays status for the nodes assigned to the SDR. In administration EXEC mode, this command displays status for all nodes in the system.

## Automatic Switchover

Automatic switchover from the active RSP to the standby RSP occurs only if the active RSP encounters a serious system error, such as the loss of a mandatory process or a hardware failure. When an automatic switchover occurs, the RSPs respond as follows:

- If a standby RSP is installed and “ready” for switchover, the standby RSP becomes the active RSP. The original active RSP attempts to reboot.
- If the standby RSP is not in “ready” state, then both RSPs reboot. The first RSP to boot successfully assumes the role of active RSP.

## RSP Redundancy During RSP Reload

The **reload** command causes the active RSP to reload the Cisco IOS XR software. When an RSP reload occurs, the RSPs respond as follows:

- If a standby RSP is installed and “ready” for switchover, the standby RSP becomes the active RSP. The original active RSP reboots and becomes the standby RSP.
- If the standby RSP is not in the “ready” state, then both RSPs reboot. The first RSP to boot successfully assumes the role of active RSP.



### Caution

You should not use the **reload** command to force an RSP switchover because the result could be a significant loss of router operations. Instead, use the **redundancy switchover** command to fail over to the standby RSP, then use the **hw-module location node-id reload** command to reload the new standby RSP.

### Related Topics

[Reloading, Shutting Down, or Power Cycling a Node](#), on page 136

## Manual Switchover

You can force a manual switchover from the active RSP to the standby RSP using the **redundancy switchover** command.

If a standby RSP is installed and ready for switchover, the standby RSP becomes the active RSP. The original active RSP becomes the standby RSP. In the following example, partial output for a successful redundancy switchover operation is shown:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show redundancy

This node (0/RSP0/CPU0) is in ACTIVE role
Partner node (0/RSP1/CPU0) is in STANDBY role
Standby node in 0/RSP1/CPU0 is ready

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# redundancy switchover
Updating Commit Database. Please wait...[OK]
Proceed with switchover 0/RSP0/CPU0 -> 0/RSP1/CPU0? [confirm]
Initiating switch-over.
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router#

<Your 'TELNET' connection has terminated>
```

In the preceding example, the Telnet connection is lost when the previously active RP resets. To continue management of the router, you must connect to the newly activated RP as shown in the following example:

```
User Access Verification

Username: xxxxx
Password: xxxxx
Last switch-over Sat Apr 15 12:26:47 2009: 1 minute ago
```

```
RP/0/RSP1/CPU0:router#
```

If the standby RSP is not in “ready” state, the switchover operation is not allowed. In the following example, partial output for a failed redundancy switchover attempt is shown:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show redundancy
```

```
Redundancy information for node 0/RP1/CPU0:
=====
Node 0/RSP0/CPU0 is in ACTIVE role
Partner node (0/RSP1/CPU0) is in UNKNOWN role
```

```
Reload and boot info
```

```
-----
RP reloaded Wed Mar 29 17:22:08 2009: 2 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours, 14 minutes ago
Active node booted Sat Apr 15 12:27:58 2009: 8 minutes ago
Last switch-over Sat Apr 15 12:35:42 2009: 1 minute ago
There have been 4 switch-overs since reload
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# redundancy switchover
```

```
Switchover disallowed: Standby node is not ready.
```

## Communicating with a Standby RP

The active RSP automatically synchronizes all system software, settings, and configurations with the standby RSP.

If you connect to the standby RSP through the console port, you can view the status messages for the standby RSP. The standby RSP does not display a CLI prompt, so you cannot manage the standby card while it is in standby mode.

If you connect to the standby RSP through the management Ethernet port, the prompt that appears is for the active RSP, and you can manage the router the same as if you had connected through the management Ethernet port on the active RSP.

## CPAK

CPAKs are the Cisco's innovation for 100G pluggable optics, which is built with the industry leading smallest form factor, in full compliant with IEEE802.3ae specification for 100GE-SR10, -LR4, and can interoperate with all IEEE 802.3ba compliant CFP-SR10 or CFP-LR4 100G optics.

The key new functionality is that CPAK variants are being constructed that represent 10 x 10GE ports. A single physical port on the linecard needs to instantiate multiple breakout Ethernet interfaces, very much similar to serial interface channelization.

## Modes Supported on CPAKs

This table clearly lists the modes supported with the relevant PID:



CPAK (PID)	Modes Supported
CPAK-100G-SR10	100 GE, 10 GE, 40 GE
CPAK-100G-LR	100 GE
CPAK-10X10G-LR	10 GE.

The standard R/S/I/P format is 4-tuple. 5-tuple interfaces are represented as - R/S/I/P/SP. P is the CPAK port and SP indicates the breakout port. A CPAK which is configured as 5 tuple after executing the **breakout** command can be configured as 0x10G configuration. A CPAK, without the breakout mode can only be configured as 100G, represents a 4 tuple configuration. The default interface type is HundredGigE. If there is no configuration, then Hundred GigE interface would be created for the CPAK ports.

## Configuring Breakout

This task enables the user to configure the breakout option.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **hw-module location preconfigure** *location port breakout interface*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>hw-module location preconfigure</b> <i>location port breakout interface</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>hw-module location 0/0/CPU0 port 0 breakout 10x TenGigE</b>	Configures the breakout option.  <b>Note</b> The optional keyword, <b>preconfigure</b> enables the user to preconfigure breakout on an empty slot.  SR10 CPAK can operate in the following modes - 1x100GE or 10x10GE. 1x100GE is the default option. 10x10 CPAK can also support 10x10GE.

## Power saving mode

8x100GE Line card consists of 4 Slices (0,1,2,3). Each slice has two physical ports. Slice-1, 2 and 3 can be configured into power save mode. Power save option is not applicable to Slice-0. Use the **hw-module power saving** command to configure the required slice to power saving mode.

Once a slice is configured in the power saving mode, the interfaces will be deleted and hence all traffic passing through the interfaces will be dropped.

**Table 24: Slice-Port mapping table**

Slice 1	Ports 2,3
Slice 2	Ports 4,5

Slice 3	Ports 6,7
---------	-----------

## To configure the power save option

This task enables the user to configure the power save option.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **configure**
3. **hw-module power saving location** *location slice number*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>hw-module power saving location</b> <i>location slice number</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (admin-config) # <b>hw-module power saving location</b> 0/1/CPU0 slice 3	Configures the power saving option for the specified slice. The available options are Slice1, 2, 3.  <b>Note</b> Power save option is not applicable for Slice 0.

### What to do next

Use the **show plat slices** command to get the status of the slices.

## Reloading, Shutting Down, or Power Cycling a Node

Use the commands described in this section to reload the Cisco IOS XR software on the active RSP or on any specified node in the system. This section also describes the commands used to administratively shut down a node and power a node on or off.

[Table 25: Commands to Reload, Shut Down, or Power Cycle a Node, on page 137](#) summarizes the commands described in this section.

Table 25: Commands to Reload, Shut Down, or Power Cycle a Node

Command	Description
<b>hw-module location <i>node-id</i> power disable</b>	<p>This command administratively turns the power off for a node. It is entered in administration configuration mode. The changes do not take effect until you enter the <b>commit</b> command.</p> <p>To power on a node, use the <b>no</b> form of this command.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This command cannot be used to disable power on the RSP from which the command is entered.</p>
<b>hw-module location <i>node-id</i> reload</b>	This command works in EXEC mode and reloads the Cisco IOS XR software on a specific node or all nodes. To specify all nodes, enter the <b>all</b> keyword in place of the <i>node-id</i> argument. The node reloads with the current running configuration and active software set for that node.

## Reloading the Active RSP

The **reload** command causes the active RSP to reload the Cisco IOS XR software according to the configuration register setting. This setting determines how the active RSP acts when reloaded.

This section contains instructions to reload the Cisco IOS XR software and return to EXEC mode. For instructions to use the **reload** command for entering ROM Monitor bootstrap mode, see *ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers*.



### Caution

Because the **reload** command causes the active RSP to go off line and either reload the Cisco IOS XR software or enter ROM Monitor mode, the router experiences a loss of service unless a redundant standby RSP is installed and in “ready” state. To display the status of the standby RSP, use the **show redundancy** command in EXEC mode.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show redundancy**
2. **admin**
3. **show variables boot**
4. (Optional) **config-register *register-value***
5. **admin**
6. **reload**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show redundancy</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show redundancy	Displays the RSP redundancy status.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a standby RSP is in “ready” redundancy state, the <b>reload</b> command also causes the router to gracefully fail over to the standby RSP.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show variables boot</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show variables boot	Displays the configuration register setting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter this command in administration EXEC mode.</li> <li>• For normal operations, the configuration register setting is 0x102 or 0x2102, which causes the active RSP to reload the Cisco IOS XR software.</li> <li>• Verify that the configuration register setting is 0x102 or 0x2102. If it is not, complete <a href="#">Step 4, on page 138</a> to reset the configuration register to 0x102 or 0x2102.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> For instructions on how to enter ROM Monitor bootstrap mode, see <i>ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers</i>.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>config-register register-value</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# config-register 0x102	Sets the configuration register to the respective value. This step is necessary only if the register is not set to the respective value (0x102 or 0x2102) in the running configuration. You can use either 0x102 or 0x2102. Both these values specify the same functionality, as bit 13 in 0x2102 is not significant for Cisco IOS XR software.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>reload</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# reload	Reloads the active RSP according to the configuration register setting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the setting is 0x102 or 0x2102, then the RSP reloads the Cisco IOS XR software.</li> <li>• If the standby RSP is in “ready” redundancy state, the router switches over to the standby RSP.</li> <li>• If a standby RSP is not installed or not in a “ready” state, the router experiences a loss of service while the active RSP is reloading the Cisco IOS XR software.</li> </ul>

## Flash Disk Recovery

When an RSP is power cycled or experiences an ungraceful reset, the boot disk (PCMCIA flash disk used to boot the card) may experience a file-system corruption. If this occurs, an error message is displayed and the

RSP fails to boot. The corrupted flash disk is automatically reformatted and the Cisco IOS XR software is restored from the designated system controller (DSC) for the system.

For example, if a flash disk for an RSP is corrupted, the RP fails to boot and the following error message is displayed:

```
#####
Restricted Rights Legend
Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is
subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph
(c) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted
Rights clause at FAR sec. 52.227-19 and subparagraph
(c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer
Software clause at DFARS sec. 252.227-7013.

cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, California 95134-1706

Cisco IOS XR Software for the Cisco XR Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router-mbirp,
Copyright (c) 2009 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Unable to mount /disk0:, filesystem is corrupted.
Check fsck log at /tmp/chkfs_fd0.log
init: special_commands:wait for disk0: failed
```

If this occurs, then the flash disk is automatically reformatted and the Cisco IOS XR software is restored to the flash disk.



**Note** If the flash disk is badly damaged and cannot be reformatted, the disk must be replaced.

If the corrupted flash disk is the DSC, then the router fails over to the standby DSC. If no standby DSC is installed, then the system fails to boot.

## Using Controller Commands to Manage Hardware Components

The **controller**, **controllers**, and **show controllers** commands are used to manage and display settings for various hardware components, including the switch fabric management, Ethernet control plane, and interface manager. These commands are primarily diagnostic and related to driver-level details. The information available with these commands varies widely and is hardware specific.

For information on the use of these commands, see *Interface and Hardware Component Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

## Formatting Hard Drives, Flash Drives, and Other Storage Devices

To format a storage device on the router, use the **format** command in EXEC mode.



**Caution** Formatting a storage device deletes all data on that device.

The following command syntax is used:

**format** *filesystem*: [*options*]

Table 26: [format command Syntax Description, on page 140](#) describes the **format** command syntax.

**Table 26: format command Syntax Description**

Variable	Description
<i>filesystem</i>	Specifies the memory device to format. The supported file systems are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>bootflash:</b></li> <li>• <b>compactflash:</b></li> <li>• <b>configflash:</b></li> <li>• <b>harddisk:</b></li> <li>• <b>harddiska:</b></li> <li>• <b>disk0:</b></li> <li>• <b>disk1:</b></li> </ul> Enter <b>format ?</b> to see the devices supported on your router.
<i>options</i>	Enter <b>format filesystem: ?</b> to see the available options. For more information, see <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i> .

In the following example, the **format** command is used to format the hard disk:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# format harddisk:
```

## Removing and Replacing Cards

This section describes card replacement issues and procedures.

### Removing Line Cards

Line cards are designed for online insertion and removal (OIR). A line card is a single card that contains all service processing functions and physical line interfaces.

The OIR feature allows you to remove and replace cards without removing power to the card or chassis. Removing a card interrupts all traffic passing through the card, but it does not remove the card configuration.

When you remove a card, the configuration remains for all interfaces, but the interfaces do not appear in the output of the **show interfaces** command. You can view interface configurations by entering the **show running-config** command. The following example shows how the configuration appears when a card is removed:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running-config

Building configuration...
hostname router
```

```
router ospf 3269
  area 0
    interface POS0/3/0/0
      cost 20
  !
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/0
  ipv4 address 10.10.50.1 255.255.255.0
  !
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/1
  description POS0/3/0/1
  shutdown
  !
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/2
  description POS0/3/0/2
  shutdown
  !
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/3
  description POS0/3/0/3
  shutdown
  !
```

In this example, the line card in slot 3 is removed, and the interface configuration for all four interfaces changes to “interface preconfigure.” However, the “router ospf” reference to a slot 3 interface does not change. If you replace a line card with another line card that uses the same media type and port count, the configuration becomes active on the replacement card.

To remove the configuration for a slot after a card is removed, use the **no interface preconfigure** command to remove all interface configuration statements for that card in the running configuration. In addition, search the configuration for any references to the removed interfaces, such as the “router ospf” reference to slot 3 in the preceding example.

To remove the configuration for a slot when a card is installed, use the **no interface** command to remove all interface configuration statements for that card in the running configuration. In addition, search the configuration for any references to the removed interfaces.

Each line card supports a specific media type (Packet over SONET/SDH [POS] or Ethernet, for example) and port count. If you replace a line card with one that supports a different media type or port count, you should review the configuration and revise it to support the replacement line card.

## Replacing a Line Card with the Same Media Type and Port Count

When you replace a line card or PLIM with a card that is of the same media type and has the same port count as the replaced card, the guidelines in the [Removing Line Cards , on page 140](#) apply. Because the replacement card is of the same media type and port count, no special procedures are required for card removal and replacement.

## Replacing a Line Card with the Same Media Type and a Different Port Count

When you replace a line card with a card that is of the same media type with a different port count, the guidelines in [Removing Line Cards , on page 140](#) apply.

If the new card has a greater port count than the replaced card, the configuration applies to the corresponding lower port numbers, and the ports that did not exist on the replaced card have no configuration and come up in the shutdown state.

If the new card supports fewer ports, the existing configuration for the corresponding number of ports on the new card set is applied. The previous configuration for the removed ports remains in interface preconfigure state, as shown in the following example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running-config
```

```
Building configuration...
hostname rtp-gsrl
interface POS0/3/0/0
  ipv4 address 10.10.50.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/1
  description POS0/3/0/1
  shutdown
!
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/2
  description POS0/3/0/2
  shutdown
!
interface preconfigure POS0/3/0/3
  description POS0/3/0/3
  shutdown
!
```

In the preceding example, a four-port card has been replaced with a single-port card. The configuration from port 1 on the four-port card is applied to the single port on the replacement card, and the remaining port configurations change to “interface preconfigure.” To remove the configuration for the missing interfaces, use the **no interface preconfigure** command. In addition, search for and remove any configuration references to the removed interfaces.

Whenever you replace a line card with the same media type and a different port count, review the running configuration in the router and revise the configuration as necessary.

## Replacing a Line Card or PLIM with a Different Media Type

When you replace a line card or PLIM with a card that is of a different media type (for example, if you replace a POS PLIM with an Ethernet PLIM), the guidelines in [Removing Line Cards](#), on page 140 apply. Review the running configuration in the router and revise the configuration as necessary for the new media type.

## Examples: Breakout and Power saving options

The following are the examples for the **power save** and **breakout** options:

### Power saving mode

Configuring the power saving option:

```
admin
config
  hw-module power saving location 0/0/CPU0 slice 3
!

show platform slices
```

Line Card	Slice	Config	Status
0/0/CPU0	0	Power on	Completed
	1	Power on	Completed
	2	Power on	Completed
	3	Power saving	Completed



### Breakout option

Configuring the breakout option:

```
config
hw-module location 0/0/CPU0 port 0 breakout 10xTenGigE
!
```

show command output indicating the breakout ports:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:TD02#show ipv4 interface brief | include Hun
Sun Sep  7 15:59:33.446 PST
HundredGigE0/0/0/0          34.34.34.2          Down          Down
HundredGigE0/0/0/1          100.0.1.1           Up            Up
HundredGigE0/0/0/2          unassigned           Up            Up
HundredGigE0/0/0/3          unassigned           Up            Up
HundredGigE0/0/0/4          unassigned           Shutdown      Down
HundredGigE0/0/0/5          unassigned           Shutdown      Down
HundredGigE0/0/0/6          unassigned           Shutdown      Down
HundredGigE0/0/0/7          unassigned           Shutdown      Down
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#hw-module location 0/0/CPU0 port 2 breakout 10xTenGigE
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#commit
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router#show ipv4 interface brief | include Ten
TenGigE0/0/0/2/0            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/1            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/2            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/3            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/4            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/5            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/6            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/7            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/8            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
TenGigE0/0/0/2/9            unassigned           Shutdown      Down
```

## Upgrading the CPU Controller Bits

Use this procedure to upgrade the CPU controller bits on all nodes that are installed in the router or on a specific node.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **admin**
2. **upgrade cputrlbits {all | location *node-id*}**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>admin</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin	Enters administration EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>upgrade cpuctrlbits {all   location node-id}</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade cpuctrlbits all	Upgrades the CPU controller bits on all nodes in the router.  Use the <b>location node-id</b> keyword and argument to upgrade the CPU controller bits on a specific node.

## Examples

The following example shows how to upgrade the CPU controller bits on all nodes in a router:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade cpuctrlbits all
```

Please do not power cycle, reload the router or reset any nodes until all upgrades are completed.

Please check the syslog to make sure that all nodes are upgraded successfully.

If you need to perform multiple upgrades, please wait for current upgrade to be completed before proceeding to another upgrade. Failure to do so may render the cards under upgrade to be unusable.

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to hardware management on Cisco IOS XR software.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR hardware commands	Hardware Redundancy and Node Administration Commands on <i>the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR hardware documentation	See Cisco Carrier Routing System Install and Upgrade Guides at:  <a href="http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps5763/prod_installation_guides_list.html">http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps5763/prod_installation_guides_list.html</a>
Information about getting started with Cisco IOS XR software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
ROM Monitor	<i>ROM Monitor Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR command master list	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>

Related Topic	Document Title
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

### Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

### MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

### RFCs

RFCs	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

### Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>





## CHAPTER 7

# Configuring Flexible Command Line Interface

This module describes how to configure and use flexible command line interface (CLI) configuration groups.

**Table 27: Feature History for Configuring Flexible CLI Configuration Groups**

Release	Modification
Release 4.3.1	Flexible CLI configuration groups were introduced.

This module contains these topics:

- [Information About Flexible CLI Configuration Groups, on page 147](#)
- [Flexible Configuration Restrictions, on page 148](#)
- [Configuring a Configuration Group, on page 149](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration of Configuration Groups, on page 152](#)
- [Apply Groups Priority Inheritance, on page 153](#)
- [Regular Expressions in Configuration Groups, on page 154](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Flexible CLI Configuration, on page 165](#)

## Information About Flexible CLI Configuration Groups

Flexible command line interface (CLI) configuration groups provide the ability to minimize repetitive configurations by defining a series of configuration statements in a configuration group, and then applying this group to multiple hierarchical levels in the router configuration tree.

Flexible CLI configuration groups utilize regular expressions that are checked for a match at multiple submodes of the configuration tree based on where the group is applied within the hierarchy. If a match is found at a configuration submode, the corresponding configuration defined in the group is inherited within the matched submode.

Flexible CLI configuration groups also provide an auto-inheritance feature. Auto-inheritance means that any change done to a CLI configuration group is automatically applied to the configuration in any matched submodes that have an apply-group at that hierarchical level. This allows you to make a configuration change or addition once, and have it applied automatically in multiple locations, depending on where you have applied the flexible CLI configuration group.

# Flexible Configuration Restrictions

Note these restrictions while using flexible configuration groups:

- Flexible CLI configuration groups are not supported in administration configurations and corresponding apply-groups are not supported in administration configurations.
- Use of preconfigured interfaces in configuration groups is not supported.
- Downgrading from an image that supports configuration groups to an image that does not support them is not supported.
- Access lists, quality of service and route policy configurations do not support the use of configuration groups. Configurations such as these are not valid:

```
group g-not-supported
  ipv4 access-list ...
  !
  ipv6 access-list ...
  !
  ethernet-service access-list ...
  !
  class-map ...
  !
  policy-map ...
  !
  route-policy ...
  !
end-group
```

You can, however, reference such configurations, as shown in this example:

```
group g-reference-ok
  router bgp 6500
  neighbor 7::7
  remote-as 65000
  bfd fast-detect
  update-source Loopback300
  graceful-restart disable
  address-family ipv6 unicast
  route-policy test1 in
  route-policy test2 out
  soft-reconfiguration inbound always
  !
  !
  interface Bundle-Ether1005
  bandwidth 10000000
  mtu 9188
  service-policy output input_1
  load-interval 30
  !
end-group
```

- Some regular expressions are not supported within groups. For example, '?', '|' and '\$,' are not supported within groups. Also some characters such as /d and /w are not supported.

- The choice operator “|” to express multiple match expressions within a regular expression is not supported. For example, these expressions are not supported:

`Gig.*|Gig.*\..*`—To match on either Gigabit Ethernet main interfaces or Gigabit Ethernet sub-interfaces.

`Gig.*0/0/0/[1-5]|Gig.*0/0/0/[10-20]`—To match on either `Gig.*0/0/0/[1-5]` or `Gig.*0/0/0/[10-20]`.

`'TenGigE.*|POS.*'`—To match on either `TenGigE.*` or `POS.*`.

- Commands that require a node identifier for the **location** keyword are not supported. For example, this configuration is not supported:

```
lpts pifib hardware police location 0/0/CPU0
```

- Overlapping regular expressions within a configuration group for the same configuration are not supported. For example:

```
group G-INTERFACE
interface 'gig.*a.*'
    mtu 1500
!
interface 'gig.*e.* '
    mtu 2000
!
end-group

interface gigabitethernet0/4/1/0
    apply-group G-INTERFACE
```

This configuration is not permitted because it cannot be determined whether the `interface gigabitethernet0/4/1/0` configuration inherits `mtu 1500` or `mtu 2000`. Both expressions in the configuration group match `gigabitethernet0/4/1/0`.

- Up to eight configuration groups are permitted on one `apply-group` command.
- Use multi-line configuration style to configure Flexible CLI configuration groups (like `group` or `apply-group` commands) by entering each configuration mode in a separate line, one configuration per line. This is important so that the configuration properties are fully inherited and for better readability during troubleshooting.

Example for a correct configuration style is:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# router isis IGP
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-isis)# interface Ten 0/4/0/0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-if) # address-family ipv4 unicast
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-isis-if-af) # metric 123
```

## Configuring a Configuration Group

A configuration group includes a series of configuration statements that can be used in multiple hierarchical levels in the router configuration tree. By using regular expressions in a configuration group, you can create generic commands that can be applied in multiple instances.

Use this task to create and use a configuration group.



**Note** Flexible CLI configurations are not available through the XML interface.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **group** *group-name*
3. Enter configuration commands, starting from global configuration mode. Use regular expressions for interface names and other variable instances.
4. **end-group**
5. **apply-group**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>group</b> <i>group-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>group g-interf</b>	Specifies a name for a configuration group and enters group configuration mode to define the group. The <i>group-name</i> argument can have up to 32 characters and cannot contain any special characters. For information regarding special characters, refer to the <i>Understanding Regular Expressions, Special Characters, and Patterns</i> module in the <i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i> .
<b>Step 3</b>	Enter configuration commands, starting from global configuration mode. Use regular expressions for interface names and other variable instances. <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>group g-interf</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# <b>interface 'GigabitEthernet.*'</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# <b>mtu 1500</b>	Specifies the configuration statements that you want included in this configuration group.  For more information regarding the use of regular expressions, see <a href="#">Regular Expressions in Configuration Groups, on page 154</a> . This example is applicable to all Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>end-group</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# <b>end-group</b>	Completes the configuration of a configuration group and exits to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>apply-group</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# <b>apply-group</b>	Adds the configuration of the configuration group into the router configuration applicable at the location that the group is applied. Groups can be applied in multiple locations, and their effect depends on the location and context.  The MTU value from the group g-interf is applied to the interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0. If this group is applied in



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>g-interf</b>	global configuration mode, the MTU value is inherited by all Gigabit Ethernet interfaces that do not have an MTU value configured.

## Simple Configuration Group: Example

This example shows how to use configuration groups to add a global configuration to the system:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-logging
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# logging trap notifications
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# logging console debugging
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# logging monitor debugging
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# logging buffered 10000000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# apply-group g-logging
```

When this configuration is committed, all commands contained in the g-logging configuration group are committed.

## Configuration Group Applied to Different Places: Example

Configuration groups can be applied to different places, and their effect depends on the context within which they are applied. Consider this configuration group:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-interfaces
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface 'FastEthernet.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# mtu 1500
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# exit
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface 'GigabitEthernet.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# mtu 1000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# exit
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface 'POS.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# mtu 2000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# end-group
```

This group can be applied to Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet or POS interfaces, and in each instance the applicable MTU is applied. For instance, in this example, the Gigabit Ethernet interface is configured to have an MTU of 1000:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# apply-group g-interfaces
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 2.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
```

In this example, the Fast Ethernet interface is configured to have an MTU of 1500:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface FastEthernet0/2/0/0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# apply-group g-interfaces
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 3.3.3.3 255.255.255.0
```

The same configuration group is used in both cases, but only the applicable configuration statements are used.

# Verifying the Configuration of Configuration Groups

Use this task to verify the router configuration using configuration groups:

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show running-config group** *[group-name]*
2. **show running-config**
3. **show running-config inheritance**
4. **show running-config interface x/y/z inheritance** *config-command*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show running-config group</b> <i>[group-name]</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show running-config group</b>  group g-int-ge interface 'GigabitEthernet.*'     mtu 1000     negotiation auto ! end-group</pre>	Displays the contents of a specific or all configured configuration groups.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show running-config</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>show running-config</b>  group G-INTERFACE-MTU interface 'POS.*'     mtu 1500 ! end-group  interface POS0/4/1/0     apply-group G-INTERFACE-MTU ! interface POS0/4/1/1     apply-group G-INTERFACE-MTU     mtu 2000 !</pre>	Displays the running configuration. Any applied groups are displayed. There is no indication as to whether these configuration groups affect the actual configuration or not. In this example, although the group G-INTERFACE-MTU is applied to POS0/4/1/1, the configured MTU value is 2000 and not 1500. This happens if the command <b>mtu 2000</b> is configured directly on the interface. An actual configuration overrides a configuration group configuration if they are the same.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show running-config inheritance</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running-config inheritance . . group G-INTERFACE-MTU   interface 'POS.*'     mtu 1500   ! end-group . . interface POS0/4/1/0   ## Inherited from group G-INTERFACE-MTU   mtu 1500   ! interface POS0/4/1/1   mtu 2000   ! . .</pre>	Displays the inherited configuration where ever a configuration group has been applied.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show running-config interface x/y/z inheritance config-command</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running-config interface pos0/4/1/0 inheritance [detail]  interface POS0/4/1/0   ## Inherited from group G-INTERFACE-MTU   mtu 1500</pre>	Displays the inherited configuration for a specific configuration command.

## Apply Groups Priority Inheritance

The inheritance is supported according to the priority.

Apply groups priority inheritance helps flexible configuration groups handle common configuration statements between groups. When multiple configuration groups have common configuration statements, the inheritance priority is configuration statements present in inner groups have precedence over configuration statements present in outer groups. Tiebreaker is determined by the system order (lexicographical) of the regular expressions. User defined order of commands are not accepted.

For example, a configuration statement in configuration group ONE has precedence over any other group. A configuration statement in configuration group SEVEN is used only if it is not contained in any other group. Within a configuration group, inheritance priority is lengthiest match.

```
apply-group SIX SEVEN
router ospf 0
apply-group FOUR FIVE
```

```

area 0
  apply-group THREE
  interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
    apply-group ONE TWO
!
!
!

```

The above example states two scenarios. Inner most group (**apply-group ONE TWO**) has the highest priority. Case 1

In the first scenario it shows which group gets the first priority. The example states which group is applied between different configuration groups (different groups- nothing in common between them). While applying the group one (ONE TWO), all the seven groups that matches to the interface `interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0` will be applied.

Case 2

In the case when all these groups (mentioned above) have same (common) configuration, group one will be active. The `apply-group ONE TWO` will be active. If group ONE is deleted then group TWO will be active.

## Regular Expressions in Configuration Groups

Regular expressions are used in configuration groups to make them widely applicable. Portable Operating System Interface for UNIX (POSIX) 1003.2 regular expressions are supported in the names of configuration statements. Single quotes must be used to delimit a regular expression.

For general information regarding regular expressions, refer to the *Understanding Regular Expressions, Special Characters, and Patterns* module in the *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide*.



### Note

Not all POSIX regular expressions are supported. Refer to [Flexible Configuration Restrictions](#), on page 148 for more information.

### Regular Expressions for Interface Identifiers

Configuration groups do not accept exact interface identifiers. You must use a regular expression to identify a group of interfaces that are applicable to the configuration group. The regular expression `.*` is not allowed. You must begin the regular expression for an interface identifier with an unambiguous word, followed by the regular expression. For example, to configure Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, use the regular expression `'GigabitEthernet.*'`.

To display a list of available interface types for your router configuration, enter **interface ?** at the configuration group prompt:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface ?

ATM          'RegExp': ATM Network Interface(s)
BVI          'RegExp': Bridge-Group Virtual Interface
Bundle-Ether 'RegExp': Aggregated Ethernet interface(s)
Bundle-POS   'RegExp': Aggregated POS interface(s)
GigabitEthernet 'RegExp': GigabitEthernet/IEEE 802.3 interface(s)
IMA          'RegExp': ATM Network Interface(s)
Loopback     'RegExp': Loopback interface(s)

```

MgmtEth	'RegExp': Ethernet/IEEE 802.3 interface(s)
Multilink	'RegExp': Multilink network interface(s)
Null	'RegExp': Null interface
POS	'RegExp': Packet over SONET/SDH network interface(s)
PW-Ether	'RegExp': PWHE Ethernet Interface
PW-IW	'RegExp': PWHE VC11 IP Interworking Interface
Serial	'RegExp': Serial network interface(s)
tunnel-ip	'RegExp': GRE/IPinIP Tunnel Interface(s)
tunnel-mte	'RegExp': MPLS Traffic Engineering P2MP Tunnel interface(s)
tunnel-te	'RegExp': MPLS Traffic Engineering Tunnel interface(s)
tunnel-tp	'RegExp': MPLS Transport Protocol Tunnel interface



**Note** Although you are required to enter only enough characters for the interface type to be unique, it is recommended that you enter the entire phrase. All interface types used in regular expressions are case-sensitive.

To specify a subinterface, prefix the expression with the characters \. (backslash period). For example, use interface 'GigabitEthernet.\*\..\*' to configure all Gigabit Ethernet subinterfaces.

You can specify Layer 2 transport interfaces or point-to-point interfaces as shown in these examples:

```
group g-l2t
  interface 'Gi.*\..*' l2transport
.
.
end-group
group g-ptp
  interface 'Gi.*\..*' point-to-point
.
.
end-group
```

### Regular Expressions for an OSPF Configuration

Exact router process names and OSPF areas cannot be used. You must use a regular expression to specify a process name or group of OSPF areas. To specify that the OSPF area can be either a scalar value or an IP address, use the regular expression '.\*', as in this example:

```
group g-ospf
  router ospf '.*'
  area '.*'
  mtu-ignore enable
  !
  !
end-group
```

To specify that the OSPF area must be an IP address, use the expression '\.' as in this example:

```
group g-ospf-ipaddress
  router ospf '.*\..*\..*\..*'
  area '.*'
  passive enable
  !
  !
end-group
```

To specify that the OSPF area must be a scalar value, use the expression '1.\*', as in this example:

```
group g-ospf-match-number
router ospf '1.*'
area '1.*'
passive enable
!
!
end-group
```

### Regular Expressions for a BGP AS

Exact BGP AS values cannot be used in configuration groups. Use a regular expression to specify either AS plain format, or AS dot format as in the format X.Y. To match AS plain format instances, use a simple regular expression. To match AS dot format instances, use two regular expressions separated by a dot, as shown in this example:

```
group g-bgp
router bgp '*'.'*'
address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
end-group
```

### Regular Expressions for ANCP

Exact Access Node Control Protocol (ANCP) sender-name identifiers cannot be used in configuration groups. Because the sender name argument can be either an IP address or a MAC address, you must specify in the regular expression which one is being used. Specify an IP address as '.\*\..\*\..\*\..\*'; specify a MAC address as '.\*\..\*\..\*.\*'.

### Resolving to a Uniform Type

Regular expressions must resolve to a uniform type. This is an example of an illegal regular expression:

```
group g-invalid
interface \.*'
bundle port-priority 10
!
interface \.*Ethernet.*'
bundle port-priority 10
!
end-group
```

In this example, the **bundle** command is supported for interface type GigabitEthernet but not for interface type 'FastEthernet'. The regular expressions '.\*' and '.\*Ethernet.\*' match both GigabitEthernet and FastEthernet types. Because the **bundle** command is not applicable to both these interface types, they do not resolve to a uniform type and therefore the system does not allow this configuration.



#### Note

If the system cannot determine from the regular expression what the configuration should be, the expression is not considered valid.



**Note** The regular expression ‘.\*’ is not allowed when referring to an interface identifier. You must begin the regular expression for an interface identifier with an unambiguous word, followed by the regular expression. Refer to *Regular Expressions for Interface Identifiers* in this section for more information.

### Overlapping Regular Expressions

Regular expressions are used in names of configuration statements within a configuration group. This permits inheritance by the configuration when applied to matching names. Single quotes are used to delimit the regular expression. Overlapping regular expression within a configuration group for the same configuration is permitted.

The example, given below, illustrates the process of creating and applying multiple configuration groups:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#group FB_flexi_snmp
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# snmp-server vrf '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)# host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)# host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)# context group_1

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)#commit

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-snmp-vrf)#root
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#snmp-server vrf vrf1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#snmp-server vrf vrf10
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#!
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#snmp-server vrf vrf100
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#commit

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-vrf)#root
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#apply-group FB_flexi_snmp
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#do sh running-config group
group FB_flexi_snmp
  snmp-server vrf '.*'
    host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
    host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
    context group_1
  !
end-group
apply-group FB_flexi_snmp
snmp-server vrf vrf1
!
snmp-server vrf vrf10
!
snmp-server vrf vrf100
!
RP/0/0/CPU0:ios#show running-config inheritance detail

group FB_flexi_snmp
  snmp-server vrf '.*'
    host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
    host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
    context group_1
  !
```

```

end-group
snmp-server vrf vrf1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  context group_1
!
snmp-server vrf vrf10
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  context group_1
!
snmp-server vrf vrf100
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
  ## Inherited from group FB_flexi_snmp
  context group_1

```

The example given below demonstrates the regular expression. In this example `snmp-server vrf '.*'` and `snmp-server vrf '[\w]+'` are two different regular expressions.

```

group FB_flexi_snmp
snmp-server vrf '.*'
  host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1
  host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1
  context group_1
!
snmp-server vrf '[\w]+'
  host 2.2.2.2 traps version 2c group_2
  host 2.2.2.2 informs version 2c group_2
  context group_2
!
end-group

```

This individual regular expression gets combined to all the three expressions - `snmp-server vrf vrf1`, `snmp-server vrf vrf10` and `snmp-server vrf vrf100` as given below.

```

apply-group FB_flexi_snmp
snmp-server vrf vrf1
!
snmp-server vrf vrf10
!
snmp-server vrf vrf100
!

```



In a configuration group, there can be instances of regular expressions overlap. In such cases, the regular expression with the highest priority is activated and inherited, when applied. It has that regular expression, which comes first in the lexicographic order that has the highest priority.

The following example shows how to use overlapping regular expressions and how the expression with higher priority is applied:

```
group FB_flexi_snmp

snmp-server vrf '.*'

host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1

host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1

context group_1

!

snmp-server vrf '([\w])+'

host 2.2.2.2 traps version 2c group_2
host 2.2.2.2 informs version 2c group_2
context group_2
!
end-group
```

The expression shown below has the highest priority:

```
group FB_flexi_snmp

snmp-server vrf '.*'

host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1

host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1

context group_1
```

The examples given above, show two different regular expression `snmp-server vrf '.*'` and `snmp-server vrf '([\w])+'`.

The expression below, shows how these two expressions get merged together:

```
apply-group FB_flexi_snmp

snmp-server vrf vrf1
!
snmp-server vrf vrf10
!
snmp-server vrf vrf100
!
```

Any change in a regular expression with lower priority will not affect the inheritance.

Any changes made to an existing regular expression, which is of less (non-top) priority, it will not have any effect on the inheritance.

```
snmp-server vrf '[\w]+'
```

```
host 2.2.2.2 traps version 2c group_2
host 2.2.2.2 informs version 2c group_2
context group_2
```

The expression with the higher priority gets inherited, as shown below:

```
group FB_flexi_snmp

snmp-server vrf '.*'

host 1.1.1.1 traps version 2c group_1

host 1.1.1.1 informs version 2c group_1

context group_1
```

### Apply Groups Priority Inheritance

Priority governs inheritance.



#### Note

From the Release 6.3.1 onwards, you are able to enter the Flexible CLI config group definition, **apply-group** and **exclude-group** command in any order as long as the entire commit has all the group definitions needed.

Apply groups priority inheritance helps flexible configuration groups to handle common configuration statements between groups. When multiple configuration groups have common configuration statements, the inheritance priority is such that the configuration statements present in inner groups have precedence over those configuration statements present in outer groups. In case of tiebreakers, the priority is assigned in accordance to the lexicographical order of regular expressions. User defined order of commands are not accepted.

For example, a configuration statement in configuration group ONE has precedence over another group. A configuration statement in configuration group SEVEN is used only if it does not exist in any other group. Within a configuration group, inheritance priority is the longest match.

```
apply-group SIX SEVEN
router ospf 0
apply-group FOUR FIVE
area 0
apply-group THREE
interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
apply-group ONE TWO
!
!
!
```

The above example shows two scenarios. The inner most group (**apply-group ONE TWO**) has the highest priority. Case 1

The first scenario shows which group gets the priority. The example states which group is applied between different configuration groups (different groups with nothing in common). While applying group one (ONE TWO), all the seven groups matches the interface `interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0-` is applied.

Case 2

Here, when all have the same (common) configuration, group one will be active. That is apply-group ONE TWO is active. If group ONE is deleted, then group TWO will be active.

## Configuration Examples Using Regular Expressions

### Configuration Group with Regular Expression: Example

This example shows the definition of a configuration group for configuring Gigabit Ethernet interfaces with ISIS routing parameters, using regular expressions for the exact interface:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-isis-gige
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# router isis '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis)# interface 'GigabitEthernet.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis-if)# lsp-interval 20
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis-if)# hello-interval 40
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis-if)# address-family ipv4 unicast
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis-if-af)# metric 10
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-isis-if-af)# end-group
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)#
```

To illustrate the use of this configuration group, assume that you want to configure these Gigabit Ethernet interfaces with the ISIS routing parameters:

```
router isis green
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
  lsp-interval 20
  hello-interval 40
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  metric 10
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
  lsp-interval 20
  hello-interval 40
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  metric 10
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
  lsp-interval 20
  hello-interval 40
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  metric 10
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
  lsp-interval 20
  hello-interval 40
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  metric 10
!
!
!
```

There are three possible ways to use the configuration group to configure these interfaces. The first is by applying the group within the interface configuration, as shown here:

```

router isis green
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
  apply-group g-isis-gige
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
  apply-group g-isis-gige
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
  apply-group g-isis-gige
!
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
  apply-group g-isis-gige
!
!

```

In this situation, only the interfaces to which you apply the configuration group inherit the configuration.

The second way to configure these interfaces using the configuration group is to apply the configuration group within the **router isis** configuration, as shown here:

```

router isis green
  apply-group g-isis-gige
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
!
!

```

In this way, any other Gigabit Ethernet interfaces that you configure in the ISIS green configuration also inherit these configurations.

The third way to configure these interfaces using the configuration group is to apply the group at the global level as shown here:

```

apply-group g-isis-gige
router isis green
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
!
!

```

In this example, the configuration of the group is applied to all Gigabit Ethernet interfaces configured for ISIS.

## Configuration Group Inheritance with Regular Expressions: Example

### Local Configuration Has Precedence Over Configuration Group

An explicit configuration takes precedence over a configuration applied from a configuration group. For example, assume that this configuration is running on the router:

```
router ospf 100
  packet-size 1000
!
```

You configure this configuration group, apply it, and commit it to the configuration.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-ospf
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# router ospf '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# nsf cisco
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# packet-size 3000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# apply-group g-ospf
```

The result is effectively this configuration:

```
router ospf 100
  packet-size 1000
  nsf cisco
```

Note that `packet-size 3000` is not inherited from the configuration group because the explicit local configuration has precedence.

### Compatible Configuration Is Inherited

The configuration in the configuration group must match the configuration on the router to be inherited. If the configuration does not match, it is not inherited. For example, assume that this configuration is running on the router:

```
router ospf 100
  auto-cost disable
!
```

You configure this configuration and commit it to the configuration.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-ospf
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# router ospf '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# area '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf-ar)# packet-size 2000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# apply-group g-ospf

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# router ospf 200
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ospf)# area 1
```

The result is effectively this configuration:

```
router ospf 100
  auto-cost disable

router ospf 200
  area 1
  packet-size 2000
```

The packet size is inherited by the ospf 200 configuration, but not by the ospf 100 configuration because the area is not configured.

## Layer 2 Transport Configuration Group: Example

This example shows how to configure and apply a configuration group with Layer 2 transport subinterfaces:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-l2trans-if
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface 'TenGigE.*\.*' l2transport
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# mtu 1514
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE0/0/0/0.1 l2transport
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# apply-group g-l2trans-if
```

When this configuration is committed, the Ten Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0/0.1 inherits the 1514 MTU value. This is the output displayed from the **show running-config inheritance** command for the Ten Gigabit Ethernet interface:

```
interface TenGigE0/0/0/0.1 l2transport
  ## Inherited from group g-l2trans-if
  mtu 1514
!
```

## Configuration Group Precedence: Example

When similar configuration statements are contained in multiple configuration groups, groups applied in inner configuration modes take precedence over groups applied in outer modes. This example shows two configuration groups that configure different cost values for OSPF.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-ospf2
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# router ospf '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# area '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf-ar)# cost 2
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf-ar)# end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-ospf100
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# router ospf '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf)# area '.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf-ar)# cost 100
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-ospf-ar)# end-group
```

If these configuration groups are applied as follows, the cost 2 specified in g-ospf2 is inherited by OSPF area 0 because the group is applied in a more inner configuration mode. In this case, the configuration in group g-ospf100 is ignored.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# router ospf 0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ospf)# apply-group g-ospf100
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ospf)# area 0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ospf-ar)# apply-group g-ospf2
```

## Changes to Configuration Group are Automatically Inherited: Example

When you make changes to a configuration group that is committed and applied to your router configuration, the changes are automatically inherited by the router configuration. For example, assume that this configuration is committed:

```
group g-interface-mtu
  interface 'POS.*'
    mtu 1500
  !
end-group

interface POS0/4/1/0
  apply-group g-interface-mtu
  !
```

Now you change the configuration group as in this example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# group g-interface-mtu
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP)# interface 'POS.*'
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# mtu 2000
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-GRP-if)# end-group
```

When this configuration group is committed, the MTU configuration for interface POS0/4/1/0 is automatically updated to 2000.

# Configuration Examples for Flexible CLI Configuration

## Basic Flexible CLI Configuration: Example

This example shows that the Media Access Control (MAC) accounting configuration from the gd21 configuration group is applied to all Gigabit Ethernet interfaces in slot 2, ports 1 to 9.

1. Configure the configuration group that configures MAC accounting:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group gd21

group gd21
  interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2[1-9]'
  description general interface inheritance check
```

```
load-interval 30
mac-accounting ingress
mac-accounting egress
!
end-group
```

2. Check that the corresponding apply-group is configured in global configuration or somewhere in the hierarchy:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | in apply-group gd21

Building configuration...
apply-group gd21
```

3. Check the concise local view of the configuration of some of the interfaces:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/21
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/22
!
```

4. Verify that the match and inheritance occur on these interfaces:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/21
## Inherited from group gd21
description general interface inheritance check
## Inherited from group gd21
load-interval 30
## Inherited from group gd21
mac-accounting ingress
## Inherited from group gd21
mac-accounting egress
!
Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/22
## Inherited from group gd21
description general interface inheritance check
## Inherited from group gd21
load-interval 30
## Inherited from group gd21
mac-accounting ingress
## Inherited from group gd21
mac-accounting egress
!
!
```

5. Verify that the inherited configuration actually takes effect:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show mac gigabitEthernet0/0/0/21

GigabitEthernet0/0/0/21
  Input (96 free)
    6c9c.ed35.90fd: 1271 packets, 98426 bytes
    Total: 1271 packets, 98426 bytes
  Output (96 free)
    6c9c.ed35.90fd: 774 packets, 63265 bytes
```



Total: 774 packets, 63264 bytes

## Interface MTU Settings for Different Interface Types: Example

This example shows that an MTU value is configured on different interface types.

1. Configure an interface MTU configuration group and apply this group:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group l2tr

group l2tr
interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3.*'
mtu 1500
!
interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9\..*'
mtu 1400
!
interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9\..*' l2transport
mtu 1400
!
end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | inc apply-group

Building configuration...

apply-group l2tr
```

2. Check the concise view and the inheritance view of the various interfaces:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/30

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/30
!
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/30

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/30
## Inherited from group l2tr
mtu 1500
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.800

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.800
encapsulation dot1q 800
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.800

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.800
## Inherited from group l2tr
mtu 1400
encapsulation dot1q800
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.250
```

## Interface MTU Settings for Different Interface Types: Example

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.250 l2transport
 encapsulation dot1q 250
!
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface gigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.800
```

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.250 l2transport
 encapsulation dot1q250
## Inherited from group l2tr
mtu 1400
!
```

## 3. Verify that the correct values from the group do take effect:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/30
```

```
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/30 is down, line protocol is down
Interface state transitions: 0
Hardware is GigabitEthernet, address is 0026.9824.ee56 (bia 0026.9824.ee56)
Internet address is Unknown
MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit (Max: 1000000 Kbit)
  reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
Encapsulation ARPA,
Full-duplex, 1000Mb/s, link type is force-up
output flow control is off, input flow control is off
loopback not set,
Last input never, output never
Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
  0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 total input drops
  0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
Received 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
  0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
  0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
  0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 total output drops
Output 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
  0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
  0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/9.801
```

```
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.801 is up, line protocol is up
Interface state transitions: 1
Hardware is VLAN sub-interface(s), address is 0026.9824.ee41
Internet address is Unknown
MTU 1400 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit (Max: 1000000 Kbit)
  reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
Encapsulation 802.1Q Virtual LAN, VLAN Id 801, loopback not set,
Last input never, output never
Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
  0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 total input drops
  0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
Received 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
  0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 total output drops
Output 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/9.250
```

```
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/9.250 is up, line protocol is up
Interface state transitions: 1
Hardware is VLAN sub-interface(s), address is 0026.9824.ee41
Layer 2 Transport Mode
MTU 1400 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit (Max: 1000000 Kbit)
  reliability Unknown, txload Unknown, rxload Unknown
Encapsulation 802.1Q Virtual LAN,
  Outer Match: Dot1Q VLAN 250
  Ethertype Any, MAC Match src any, dest any
loopback not set,
Last input never, output never
Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  0 packets input, 0 bytes
  0 input drops, 0 queue drops, 0 input errors
  0 packets output, 0 bytes

  0 output drops, 0 queue drops, 0 output errors
```

## ACL Referencing: Example

This example shows how to reference access-lists on a number of interfaces using configuration groups.

1. Configure the configuration group and apply-group:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group acref

group acref
interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3.*'
  ipv4 access-group adem ingress
  ipv4 access-group adem egress
!
end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | inc apply-group

Building configuration...

apply-group isis l2tr isis2 mpp bundle1 acref
```

2. Check the concise and inheritance view of the matching configurations:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/30

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/30
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/30

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/30
## Inherited from group l2tr
mtu 1500
## Inherited from group acref
ipv4 access-group adem ingress
## Inherited from group acref
ipv4 access-group adem egress
!
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31
  ## Inherited from group l2tr
  mtu 1500
  ## Inherited from group acref
  ipv4 access-group adem ingress
  ## Inherited from group acref
  ipv4 access-group adem egress
```

3. Check that the ACL group configuration actually got configured by using a traffic generator and watching that denied traffic is dropped.

## Local Configuration Takes Precedence: Example

This example illustrates that local configurations take precedence when there is a discrepancy between a local configuration and the configuration inherited from a configuration group.

1. Configure a local configuration in a configuration submode with an access list:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/39

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/39
  ipv4 access-group smany ingress
  ipv4 access-group smany egress
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/38

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/38
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running ipv4 access-list smany

ipv4 access-list smany
  10 permit ipv4 any any
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running ipv4 access-list adem

ipv4 access-list adem
  10 permit ipv4 21.0.0.0 0.255.255.255 host 55.55.55.55
  20 deny ipv4 any any
!
```

2. Configure and apply the access list group configuration:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group acref

group acref
  interface 'GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3.*'
    ipv4 access-group adem ingress
```

```

    ipv4 access-group adem egress
    !
end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | inc apply-group

Building configuration...
apply-group isis l2tr isis2 mpp bundle1 ahref

```

3. Check the concise and inheritance views for the matching interface where the access list reference is configured locally:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/39

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/39
  ipv4 access-group smany ingress
  ipv4 access-group smany egress
  !

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/39

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/39
  ## Inherited from group l2tr
  mtu 1500
  ipv4 access-group smany ingress
  ipv4 access-group smany egress    << no config inherited, local config prioritized
  !

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/38

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/38
  !

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/38

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/38
  ## Inherited from group l2tr
  mtu 1500
  ## Inherited from group ahref
  ipv4 access-group adem ingress
  ## Inherited from group ahref
  ipv4 access-group adem egress
  !

```

4. Use a traffic generator to verify that the traffic pattern for interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/39 gets acted on by the access list in the local configuration (smany) and not according to the inherited referenced access list (adem).

## ISIS Hierarchical Configuration: Example

This example illustrates inheritance and priority handling with two ISIS groups using an ISIS configuration.

1. Configure the local ISIS configuration:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running router isis

```

```

router isis vink
net 49.0011.2222.2222.00
address-family ipv4 unicast
  mpls traffic-eng level-1-2
  mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
  redistribute connected
!
interface Bundle-Ether1
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface Bundle-Ether2
!
interface Loopback0
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3521
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3522
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3523
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3524
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3525
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3526
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3527
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3528
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/1
  address-family ipv4 unicast
!
!
!

```

## 2. Configure two ISIS groups and apply these to the configuration:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group isis

group isis
router isis '.'
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  mpls traffic-eng level-1-2
  mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
  redistribute connected
  redistribute ospf 1 level-1-2
!
interface 'TenGig.*'
  lsp-interval 40

```

```

        hello-interval 15
        address-family ipv4 unicast
        metric 50
        !
        !
        interface 'Bundle-Ether.*'
        address-family ipv4 unicast
        metric 55
        !
        !
        !
    end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group isis2

group isis2
  router isis '.*'
  !
  router isis '^(\vink)'
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  !
  interface '^(Ten)Gig.*'
  !
  interface '^(Ten)Gig.*'
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  metric 66
  !
  !
  !
end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | inc apply-group

Building configuration...

apply-group isis  l2tr  isis2  mpp  bundle1  acrief

```

### 3. Check the inheritance view of the ISIS configuration:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance router isis

router isis vink
  net 49.0011.2222.2222.2222.00
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  mpls traffic-eng level-1-2
  mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
  redistribute connected
  ## Inherited from group isis
  redistribute ospf 1 level-1-2
  !
  interface Bundle-Ether1
    address-family ipv4 unicast
    ## Inherited from group isis
    metric 55
    !
    !
  interface Bundle-Ether2
    ## Inherited from group isis
    address-family ipv4 unicast
    ## Inherited from group isis
    metric 55
    !

```

```

!
interface Loopback0
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3521
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3522
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3523
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3524
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3525
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3526
## Inherited from group isis
lsp-interval 40
## Inherited from group isis
hello-interval 15
## Inherited from group isis
address-family ipv4 unicast
## Inherited from group isis
metric 50
!
!

```



```

interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3527
  ## Inherited from group isis
  lsp-interval 40
  ## Inherited from group isis
  hello-interval 15
  ## Inherited from group isis
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  ## Inherited from group isis
  metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3528
  ## Inherited from group isis
  lsp-interval 40
  ## Inherited from group isis
  hello-interval 15
  ## Inherited from group isis
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  ## Inherited from group isis
  metric 50
!
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/1
  ## Inherited from group isis
  lsp-interval 40
  ## Inherited from group isis
  hello-interval 15
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  ## Inherited from group isis
  metric 50
!
!
!

```

#### 4. Verify the actual functionality:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show isis interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3528 | inc Metric

Metric (L1/L2):          50/50

```

## OSPF Hierarchy: Example

This example illustrates hierarchical inheritance and priority. The configuration that is lower in hierarchy gets the highest priority.

#### 1. Configure a local OSPF configuration:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running router ospf

router ospf 1
  apply-group go-c
  nsr
  router-id 121.121.121.121
  nsf cisco
  redistribute connected
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  area 0
  apply-group go-b

```

```

interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
  apply-group go-a
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/4
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/21
  bfd minimum-interval 100
  bfd fast-detect
  bfd multiplier 3
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3891
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3892
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3893
!
interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3894
!
!
router ospf 100
!
router ospf 1000
!
router ospf 1001
!

```

## 2. Configure a configuration group and apply it in a configuration submode:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group go-a
```

```

group go-a
  router ospf '*'
  area '*'
  interface 'Gig.*'
    cost 200
  !
!
end-group

```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group go-b
```

```

group go-b
  router ospf '*'
  area '*'
  interface 'Gig.*'
    cost 250
  !
!
end-group

```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group go-c
```

```

group go-c
  router ospf '*'
  area '*'
  interface 'Gig.*'

```

```

        cost 300
    !
    !
    !

```

```
end-group
```

3. Check the inheritance view and verify that the apply-group in the lowest configuration submode gets the highest priority:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance router ospf 1
```

```

router ospf 1
  nsr
  router-id 121.121.121.121
  nsf cisco
  redistribute connected
  address-family ipv4 unicast
  area 0
    interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
      ## Inherited from group go-a
      cost 200                                << apply-group in lowest submode gets highest priority
    !
    interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
      ## Inherited from group go-b
      cost 250
    !
    interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
      ## Inherited from group go-b
      cost 250
    !
    interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/4
      ## Inherited from group go-b
      cost 250
    !
    interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/21
      bfd minimum-interval 100
      bfd fast-detect
      bfd multiplier 3
      ## Inherited from group go-b
      cost 250
    !
    interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3891
    !
    interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3892
    !
    interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3893
    !
    interface TenGigE0/2/0/0.3894
    !
    !
    !

```

4. Check the functionality of the cost inheritance through the groups:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show ospf 1 interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
```

```

GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Internet Address 1.0.1.1/30, Area 0
  Process ID 1, Router ID 121.121.121.121, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 200
  Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State DR, Priority 1, MTU 1500, MaxPktSz 1500
  Designated Router (ID) 121.121.121.121, Interface address 1.0.1.1

```

```

No backup designated router on this network
Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
Non-Stop Forwarding (NSF) enabled
  Hello due in 00:00:02
Index 5/5, flood queue length 0
Next 0(0)/0(0)
Last flood scan length is 1, maximum is 40
Last flood scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 7 msec
LS Ack List: current length 0, high water mark 0
Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 0
Suppress hello for 0 neighbor(s)
Multi-area interface Count is 0

```

## Link Bundling Usage: Example

This example shows how to configure interface membership in a bundle link:

### 1. Configure the configuration groups:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running group bundle1

group bundle1
  interface 'GigabitEthernet0/1/0/1[1-6]'
  bundle id 1 mode active
!
end-group

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running | inc apply-group

Building configuration...

apply-group isis l2tr isis2 mpp bundle1

```

### 2. Check the local configuration:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface gigabitEthernet 0/1/0/11

interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0/11
!

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running interface Bundle-Ether1

interface Bundle-Ether1
  ipv4 address 108.108.1.1 255.255.255.0
  bundle maximum-active links 10
  bundle minimum-active links 5
!

```

### 3. Check the inheritance configuration view:

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show running inheritance interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/11

interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0/11
  ## Inherited from group bundle1

```

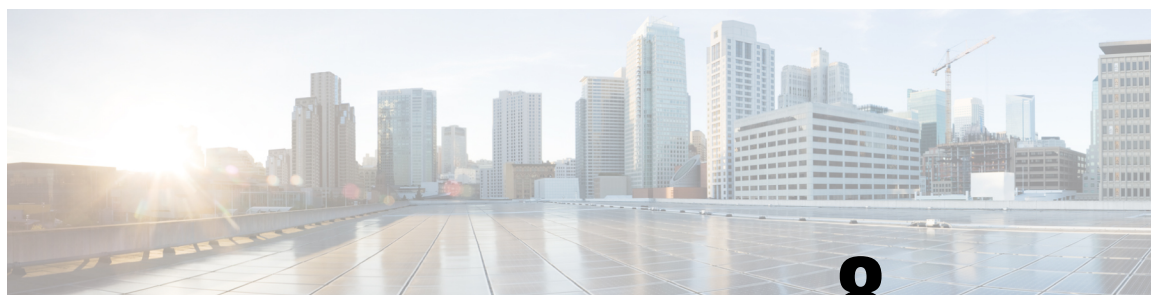
```
bundle id 1 mode active
!
```

#### 4. Check that the inheritance configuration took effect:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show interface Bundle-Ether1

Bundle-Ether1 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 1
  Hardware is Aggregated Ethernet interface(s), address is 0024.f71f.4bc3
  Internet address is 108.108.1.1/24
  MTU 1514 bytes, BW 6000000 Kbit (Max: 6000000 Kbit)
    reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 6000Mb/s
  loopback not set,
  ARP type ARPA, ARP timeout 04:00:00
  No. of members in this bundle: 6
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/11      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/12      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/13      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/14      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/15      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/16      Full-duplex  1000Mb/s      Active
  Last input 00:00:00, output 00:00:00
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  5 minute input rate 8000 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
  5 minute output rate 3000 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
    2058 packets input, 1999803 bytes, 426 total input drops
    0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
    Received 1 broadcast packets, 2057 multicast packets
      0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
    0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
    1204 packets output, 717972 bytes, 0 total output drops
    Output 2 broadcast packets, 1202 multicast packets
    0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
    0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
    0 carrier transitions
```





## CHAPTER 8

# Upgrading Field-Programmable Devices

In general terms, *field-programmable devices* (FPDs) are hardware devices implemented on router cards that support separate software upgrades. A *field-programmable gate array* (FPGA) is a type of programmable memory device that exists on most hardware components of the router. The term *FPD* has been introduced to collectively and generically describe any type of programmable hardware device on SIPs and shared port adapters (SPAs), including FPGAs. Cisco IOS XR software provides the Cisco FPD upgrade feature to manage the upgrade of FPD images on SIPs and SPAs.

This chapter describes the information that you must know to verify image versions and to perform an upgrade for SPA or SIP FPD images when incompatibilities arise.

For complete descriptions of the FPD commands listed in this module, refer to the upcoming sections. To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 28: Feature History for Upgrading FPD Software on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.9.0	Support for FPD upgrades was introduced.
Release 5.3.2	Enhance FPD upgrade and downgrade behavior.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Upgrading Field-Programmable Device, on page 181](#)
- [Prerequisites for FPD Image Upgrades, on page 182](#)
- [Overview of FPD Image Upgrade Support, on page 182](#)
- [FPD upgrade service, on page 183](#)
- [How to Upgrade FPD Images, on page 185](#)
- [Configuration Examples for FPD Image Upgrade, on page 188](#)
- [Troubleshooting Problems with FPD Image Upgrades, on page 193](#)

## Upgrading Field-Programmable Device

An FPD is a field programmable logic device which contains non-volatile, re-programmable memory to define its internal wiring and functionality. The contents of this non-volatile memory are called the FPD image or FPD firmware. Over the lifespan of an FPD, FPD firmware images may need upgrades for bug fixes or functionality improvements. These upgrades are performed in the field with minimum system impact.

# Prerequisites for FPD Image Upgrades

## Overview of FPD Image Upgrade Support

An FPD image is used to upgrade the software on an FPD.

Whenever an image is released that supports SIPs and SPAs, a companion SIP and SPA FPD image is bundled. Generally, the FPD image is not automatically upgraded. You must manually upgrade the FPD image running on the SPA or SIP when you upgrade the Cisco IOS XR software image.

FPD versions must be compatible with the Cisco IOS XR software that is running on the router; if an incompatibility exists between an FPD version and the Cisco IOS XR software, the device with the FPGA may not operate properly until the incompatibility is resolved. An FPGA incompatibility on a SPA does not necessarily affect the running of the SPA interfaces; an FPD incompatibility on a SIP disables all interfaces for all SPAs in the SIP until the incompatibility is addressed.

Use the **show hw-module fpd** command to determine if an FPD upgrade is required. A value of 'Yes' in the Upg/Dng? (upgrade/downgrade) column indicates that an upgrade or downgrade is required.

The NCS 5500 supports upgrades for FPGA devices on its SIPs and SPAs. FPGA and ROMMON software upgrades are part of an FPD image package that corresponds to a Cisco IOS XR software image. SIPs and SPAs support manual upgrades for FPGA devices using the Cisco FPD upgrade feature that is further described in this chapter.

**Note**

It is mandatory to upgrade all the required FPDs before doing a reload when you are upgrading FPDs on line cards. This is because, partial FPD component upgrades might result in booting errors (in some cases).

## Automatic FPD Upgrade

**Restriction:** Newly inserted or reloaded line cards do not reload automatically after a FPD image automatic upgrade, so you must reload the line card manually to use the new FPD image

By default, the FPD image is not automatically upgraded. You must manually upgrade the FPD image running on the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) when you upgrade the Cisco IOS XR software image.

However, if you enable the **fpd auto-upgrade** command in Admin Configuration mode, FPD images are automatically updated when:

- Software upgrade is carried out.
- Line cards are added to an existing router or reloaded.

The following conditions must be met for an Automatic FPD Upgrade to work on a system upgrade:

- FPD package installation envelope (PIE) must be installed on the router.
- FPD PIE must be activated together with the new Cisco IOS XR image.
- The **fpd auto-upgrade** command must be configured in the Admin Configuration mode.



The following conditions must be met for an Automatic FPD Upgrade to work on a FRU Insertion or reload:

- The **fpd auto-upgrade** command must be configured in the Admin Configuration mode.



**Note** Although the FPD upgrade is performed during the install operation, there is no install commit performed. Therefore, once the FPD has been upgraded, if the image is rolled back to the original version, the FPD version is not downgraded to the previous version.

Automatic FPD Upgrade is not performed when:

- A non-reload software maintenance upgrade (SMU) or PIE installation is performed, even where the FPD image version changes. Since a non-reload installation is, by definition, not supposed to reload the router, and an FPD upgrade requires a router reload, an Automatic FPD Upgrade is repressed.



**Note** In all cases where the automatic FPD upgrade is not performed, you must perform a manual FPD upgrade using the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command.



**Note** A message is displayed when router modules cannot get upgraded during automatic FPD upgrade indicating that the FPGA is intentionally skipped during upgrade. To upgrade such FPGAs, you can use the CLI command with a particular location explicitly specified. For example, **upgrade hw-module fpd all location 0/3/1**.



**Note** CFP2-DCO Optical modules do not support automatic-FPD upgrade.

## FPD upgrade service

The main tasks of the FPD upgrade service are:

- FPD image version checking to decide if a specific firmware image needs an upgrade or not.
- Automatic FPD Image Upgrade (if enabled).
- Manual FPD Image Upgrade using the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command.
- Invoke the appropriate device driver with a name of the new image to load.

An FPD image package is used to upgrade FPD images. The **install activate** command is used to place the FPD binary files into the expected location on the boot devices.

### Supported Upgrade Methods

Method	Remarks
Manual Upgrade	Upgrade using CLI, force upgrade supported.

Method	Remarks
Auto Upgrade	Upgrade using install SMU activation or during image upgrade. User can enable/disable auto upgrade feature.

## Determining Upgrade Requirement

Use the **show hw-module fpd** command to determine if an FPD upgrade is required. Check for NEED UPGD in the Status column.

Use the **show fpd package** command to find out which FPGAs are supported with your current software release and minimum hardware requirements for each module.

## Automatic FPD upgrade

Use the **fpd auto-upgrade enable** command to enable the auto upgrade feature.

The FPD images are upgraded as part of the install activation of the new image. The FPDs are upgraded before the router is reloaded.

During an FPD auto-upgrade, the installed FPD rpm package includes an FPD image with a new version of software that is different than the version of the image running on the hardware. Once the FPDs have been upgraded, even if the base image is rolled back to the older version, the FPD will not be downgraded to its previous version.

When a reload package is installed with new FPD images, the FPD images are upgraded before the router gets reloaded. This feature is controlled through an fpd auto-upgrade configuration option. The auto-upgrade feature does not address the following:

- FPD Upgrade during initial boot
- FPD Upgrade during new card insertion

## Manual FPD upgrade

Manual FPD upgrade is performed using the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command. All cards or all of FPGA in a card can be upgraded. If reload is required to activate FPD, the upgrade should be complete. All line-cards, fabric cards and RP cards cannot be reloaded during the process of the FPD upgrade.

FPD upgrade is transaction-based:

- Each fpd upgrade cli execution is one transaction
- Only one transaction is allowed at any given time
- One transaction may include one or many FPD upgrade(s)

The **force** option can be used to forcibly upgrade the FPD (regardless of whether it is required or not). It triggers all FPDs to be upgraded or downgraded. The force option can also be used to downgrade or upgrade the FPGAs even after the version check.



**Note** In some cases, FPDs can have primary and backup images.

## How to Upgrade FPD Images

You must determine if an FPD image upgrade is needed using the **show hw-module fpd** command and perform the upgrade, if needed, under the following circumstances:

- You migrate the software to a later Cisco IOS XR software release.
- You swap SPAs or SIPs from a system running a different Cisco IOS XR software release.
- You insert a new SPA or SIP.

In the event that there is an FPD incompatibility with your card, you may receive an error message. If you upgrade to a newer version of the Cisco IOS XR software and there is an FPD incompatibility, you receive the following message:

```
LC/0/1/CPU0:Dec 23 16:33:47.945 : spa_192_jacket_v2[203]: %PLATFORM-UPGRADE_FPD-4-DOWN_REV : spa fpga2 instance 0 is down-rev (V0.6), upgrade to (V1.0). Use the "upgrade hw-module fpd" CLI in admin mode.
```

If the FPD image on the card is newer than what is required by the currently running Cisco IOS XR software image on the router, you receive the following error message:

```
LC/0/1/CPU0:Dec 23 16:33:47.955 : spa_192_jacket_v2[203]: %PLATFORM-UPGRADE_FPD-4-UP_REV : spa fpga instance 1 is up-rev(V1.10), downgrade to (V0.09) is "OPTIONAL". Use "upgrade hw-module fpd force" CLI in admin mode.
```

You should perform the FPD upgrade procedure if you receive such messages. Cards may not function properly if FPD incompatibilities are not resolved.



**Note** The use of the **force** option when performing a FPD upgrade is not recommended except under explicit direction from Cisco engineering or TAC.

### Before you begin

- The FPD upgrade procedure is performed while the card is online. At the end of the procedure the card must be reloaded before the FPD upgrade is complete. To automatically reload the card, you can use the **hw-module reload** command during your next maintenance window. The upgrade procedure is not complete until the card is reloaded.
- During the FPD upgrade, you *must not* do the following:
  - Reload, perform an online insertion and removal (OIR) of a line card (LC), or power down the chassis. Doing so may cause the node to enter an unusable state.
  - Press **Ctrl-C** if the console appears to hang without any output. Doing so may abort the upgrade.
- If you are not sure whether a card requires an FPD upgrade, you can install the card and use the

**show hw-module fpd** command to determine if the FPD image on the card is compatible with the currently running Cisco IOS XR software release.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show hw-module fpd location** {all | *node-id*}
2. **admin**
3. (Optional) **show fpd package**
4. **upgrade hw-module fpd** {all | *fpga-type*} [ **force**] **location** [all | *node-id*]
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **hw-module** {**location** *node-id* | **subslot** *subslot-id*} **reload**
7. **show platform**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show hw-module fpd location</b> {all   <i>node-id</i> } <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module fpd location all</pre> or <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module fpd location 0/4/cpu0</pre>	Displays the current FPD image versions for the specified card or all cards installed in the router. Use this command to determine if you must upgrade the FPD image on your card.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>admin</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin</pre>	Enters administration EXEC mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show fpd package</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# show fpd package</pre>	Displays which cards are supported with your current Cisco IOS XR software release, which FPD image you need for each card, and what the minimum hardware requirements are for the various modules. (A minimum hardware requirement version of 0.0 indicates that all hardware can support this FPD image version.)  If there are multiple FPD images for your card, use this command to determine which FPD image to use if you want to upgrade only a specific FPD type.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>upgrade hw-module fpd</b> {all   <i>fpga-type</i> } [ <b>force</b> ] <b>location</b> [all   <i>node-id</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade hw-module fpd all location 0/3/1</pre>	Upgrades all the current FPD images that must be upgraded on the specified card with new images.  Before continuing to the next step, wait for confirmation that the FPD upgrade has successfully completed. Status messages, similar to these, are displayed to the screen until the FPD upgrade is completed:

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre> . . . Successfully upgraded 1 FPD for SPA-2XOC48POS/RPR     on location 0/3/1  RP/0/RP0/CPU0:V3_DC_MT(admin)# upgrade hw-module fpd all location all RP/0/RP0/CPU0:May 14 22:06:38.715 : upgrade_fpd_cli[65878]: %PLATFORM-UPGRADE_FPD-6-STATUS_UPG_LOC_ALL_OPT : pm fpga11 instance 14 on location 0/RP0/CPU0 was intentionally skipped during upgrade using location all option </pre>	<p>           FPD upgrade started.            FPD upgrade in progress..            FPD upgrade in progress..            FPD upgrade sent to location xxxx            FPD upgrade sent to location yyyy            FPD upgrade in progress..            FPD upgrade finished for location xxx            FPD upgrade in progress..            FPD upgrade finished for location yyyy            FPD upgrade completed.         </p> <p>           The “FPD upgrade in progress.” message is printed every minute. These logs are information logs, and as such, are displayed if the <b>logging console informational</b> command is configured.         </p> <p>           If Ctrl-C is pressed while the FPD upgrade is in progress, the following warning message is displayed:         </p> <pre> FPD upgrade in progress on some hardware, aborting now is not recommended as it might cause HW programming failure and result in RMA of the hardware. Do you want to continue? [Confirm(y/n)] </pre> <p>           If you confirm that you want to abort the FPD upgrade procedure, this message is displayed:         </p> <pre> FPD upgrade process has been aborted, please check the status of the hardware and reissue the upgrade command if required. </pre> <p> <b>Note</b> If your card supports multiple FPD images, you can use the <b>show fpd package</b> admin command to determine what specific image to upgrade in the <b>upgrade hw-module fpd</b> command.         </p> <p> <b>Note</b> A message is displayed when router modules cannot get upgraded during upgrade with <b>location all</b> option indicating that the FPGA is intentionally skipped during upgrade. To upgrade such FPGAs, you can use the CLI command with a particular location explicitly specified. For example, <b>upgrade hw-module fpd all location 0/3/1</b>.         </p>
Step 5	<p><b>exit</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# exit </pre>	<p>Exits administration EXEC mode and returns to EXEC mode.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>hw-module</b> {location <i>node-id</i>   subslot <i>subslot-id</i> } <b>reload</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# hw-module subslot 0/3/1 reload</pre> or  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# hw-module location 0/3/cpu0 reload</pre>	Use the <b>hw-module subslot reload</b> command to reload a SPA and the <b>hw-module location reload</b> command to reload a SIP or line card.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>show platform</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show platform</pre>	Verifies that the FPD image on the card has been successfully upgraded by displaying the status of all cards in the system.

## Configuration Examples for FPD Image Upgrade

The following examples indicates the use of commands associated with the FPD image upgrade procedure.

### show hw-module fpd Command Output: Example

Use the **show hw-module fpd** to display the current version of FPD images on the SPAs, SIPs and other cards installed on your router.

This command can be used to identify information about FPDs on any card. If you enter the location of a line card that is not a SPA, the output displays information about any programmable devices on that line card.

The following example shows how to display FPD compatibility for all modules in the router:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# ios#show hw-module fpd
Tue Jan 22 13:56:55.082 UTC
```

Location	Card type	HWver	FPD device	ATR Status	FPD Versions	
					Running	Programd
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	MB-MIFPGA	CURRENT	0.19	0.19
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	Bootloader	CURRENT	1.10	1.10
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	CPU-IOFPGA	CURRENT	1.18	1.18
0/RP0	NCS-55A2-MOD-S	0.3	MB-IOFPGA	CURRENT	0.18	0.18
0/PM0	NC55-1200W-ACFW	1.0	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW	NEED UPGD	2.08	2.08
0/PM1	NC55-1200W-ACFW	1.0	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW	NEED UPGD	2.08	2.08

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#.
```



**Note** After Release 5.3.x, Upg/Dng? will display Yes only for upgrade.

The following example shows the FPD for which upgrade will be skipped.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show hw-module fpd location all
```

```
=====
Existing Field Programmable Devices
=====
Location      Card Type      HW      Version Type Subtype Inst  Current SW Upg/
=====
0/SM1/SP      140G-4-S1S2S3  0.1    lc      rommonA  0      2.08      Yes
-----
                                lc      rommon  0      2.08      Yes
-----
                                lc      fpqa1   0      6.04^     No
-----
                                lc      fpga2   0      4.01      No
-----
```

NOTES:

1. ^ One or more FPD will be intentionally skipped from upgrade using CLI with option "all" or during "Auto fpd".

It can be upgraded only using the "admin> upgrade hw-module fpd <fpd> location <loc>" CLI with exact location.

The following example shows how to display FPD compatibility for a specific module in the router:

**Table 29: show hw-module fpd Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Location	Location of the module in the <i>rack/slot/module</i> notation.
Card Type	Module part number.
HW Version	Hardware model version for the module.
Type	Hardware type. Can be one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spa—Shared port adapter</li> <li>• lc—Line card</li> </ul>
Subtype	FPD type. Can be one of the following types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fabldr—Fabric downloader</li> <li>• fpga1—Field-programmable gate array</li> <li>• fpga2—Field-programmable gate array 2</li> <li>• fpga3—Field-programmable gate array 3</li> <li>• fpga4—Field-programmable gate array 4</li> <li>• fpga5—Field-programmable gate array 5</li> <li>• rommonA—Read-only memory monitor A</li> <li>• rommon—Read-only memory monitor B</li> </ul>
Inst	FPD instance. The FPD instance uniquely identifies an FPD and is used by the FPD process to register an FPD.
Current SW Version	Currently running FPD image version.

Field	Description
Upg/Dng?	Specifies whether an FPD upgrade or downgrade is required. A downgrade is required in rare cases when the version of the FPD image has a higher major revision than the version of the FPD image in the current Cisco IOS XR software package.

## show fpd package Command Output: Example

Use the **show fpd package** command in administration EXECAdmin EXEC mode to find out which SPAs and SIPs are supported with your current Cisco IOS XR software release, which FPD image package you need for each SPA or SIP, and what the minimum hardware requirements are for each module. If multiple FPD images are available for your card, they are listed as Subtype fpga2, fpga3, and so on.



### Note

The FPD name used in the FPD Description column of the output of the **show fpd package** command includes the last ten characters of DCO-PID. Depending on the slot and port numbers, the FPD name is appended with DCO\_0, DCO\_1, or DCO\_2. For example, the FPD names for CFP2-WDM-D-1HL in port 0 and port 1 are -WDM-D-1HL\_DCO\_0 and WDM-D-1HL\_DCO\_1 respectively.

The following example shows sample output from the **show fpd package** command:

```
show fpd package
Tue Jan 22 13:56:00.212 UTC
```

Field Programmable Device Package					
Card Type	FPD Description	Req Reload	SW Ver	Min Req SW Ver	Min Req Board Ver
NC55-1200W-ACFW	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW (A)	NO	2.09	2.09	0.0
NC55-900W-ACFW-I	LIT-PrimCU-ACFW-I (A)	NO	1.04	1.04	0.0
NC55-900W-DCFW-I	LIT-PrimCU-DCFW-I (A)	NO	2.260	2.260	0.0
NC55-930W-DCFW-C	LIT-PrimCU-DCFW-C (A)	NO	2.259	2.259	0.0
NC55-MPA-12T-S	MPAFPGA	YES	0.27	0.27	0.0
NC55-MPA-1TH2H-S	-WDM-D-1HL_DCO_2	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
	WDM-DE-1HL_DCO_2	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	WDM-DS-1HL_DCO_2	NO	38.268	38.268	0.1
NC55-MPA-2TH-HX-S	-WDM-D-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	-WDM-D-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
	WDM-DE-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	WDM-DE-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	WDM-DS-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.268	38.268	0.1
	WDM-DS-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.268	38.268	0.1
NC55-MPA-2TH-S	-WDM-D-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	-WDM-D-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1



	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
	WDM-DE-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	WDM-DE-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.518	38.518	0.1
	WDM-DS-1HL_DCO_0	NO	38.268	38.268	0.1
	WDM-DS-1HL_DCO_1	NO	38.268	38.268	0.1
NC55-MPA-4H-HD-S	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
NC55-MPA-4H-HX-S	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
NC55-MPA-4H-S	MPAFPGA	YES	0.53	0.53	0.0
NC55A2-MOD-SE-H-S	Bootloader (A)	YES	1.11	1.11	0.0
	CPU-IOFPGA (A)	YES	1.18	1.18	0.1
	MB-IOFPGA (A)	YES	0.18	0.18	0.1
	MB-MIFPGA	YES	0.19	0.19	0.0
	SATA (A)	NO	5.00	5.00	0.0
NCS-55A2-MOD-HD-S	Bootloader (A)	YES	1.11	1.11	0.0
	CPU-IOFPGA (A)	YES	1.18	1.18	0.1
	MB-IOFPGA (A)	YES	0.18	0.18	0.1
	MB-MIFPGA	YES	0.19	0.19	0.0
	SATA (A)	NO	5.00	5.00	0.0
NCS-55A2-MOD-HX-S	Bootloader (A)	YES	1.11	1.11	0.0
	CPU-IOFPGA (A)	YES	1.18	1.18	0.1
	MB-IOFPGA (A)	YES	0.18	0.18	0.1
	MB-MIFPGA	YES	0.19	0.19	0.0
	SATA (A)	NO	5.00	5.00	0.0
NCS-55A2-MOD-S	Bootloader (A)	YES	1.11	1.11	0.0
	CPU-IOFPGA (A)	YES	1.18	1.18	0.1
	MB-IOFPGA (A)	YES	0.18	0.18	0.1
	MB-MIFPGA	YES	0.19	0.19	0.0
	SATA (A)	NO	5.00	5.00	0.0
NCS-55A2-MOD-SE-S	Bootloader (A)	YES	1.11	1.11	0.0
	CPU-IOFPGA (A)	YES	1.18	1.18	0.1
	MB-IOFPGA (A)	YES	0.18	0.18	0.1
	MB-MIFPGA	YES	0.19	0.19	0.0
	SATA (A)	NO	5.00	5.00	0.0
	STATSFPGA	YES	0.01	0.01	0.0

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display:

**Table 30: show fpd package Field Descriptions**

Field	Description
Card Type	Module part number.
FPD Description	Description of all FPD images available for the SPA.
Type	Hardware type. Possible types can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spa—Shared port adapter</li> <li>• lc—Line card</li> </ul>
Subtype	FPD subtype. These values are used in the <b>upgrade hw-module fpd</b> command to indicate a specific FPD image type to upgrade.

Field	Description
SW Version	FPD software version recommended for the associated module running the current Cisco IOS XR software.
Min Req SW Vers	Minimum required FPD image software version to operate the card. Version 0.0 indicates that a minimum required image was not programmed into the card.
Min Req HW Vers	Minimum required hardware version for the associated FPD image. A minimum hardware requirement of version 0.0 indicates that all hardware can support this FPD image version.

**Note**

In the **show fpd package** command output, the “subtype” column shows the FPDs that correspond with each SPA image. To upgrade a specific FPD with the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command, replace the *fpga-type* argument with the appropriate FPD from the “subtype” column, as shown in the following example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade hw-module fpd fpga2 location 0/3/1 reload
```

## upgrade hw-module fpd Command Output: Example

Use the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command to upgrade the FPD image on a SPA, SIP or line card.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade hw-module fpd fpga location 0/1/cpu0

Mon Jan 12 05:44:37.611 PST

% RELOAD REMINDER: - The upgrade operation of the target module will not interrupt its
normal
operation. However, for the changes to take effect, the target module
will need to be manually reloaded after the upgrade operation. This can
be accomplished with the use of "hw-module <target> reload" command.
- If automatic reload operation is desired after the upgrade, please use
the "reload" option at the end of the upgrade command.
- The output of "show hw-module fpd location" command will not display
correct version information after the upgrade if the target module is
not reloaded.
Continue? [confirm] y

Starting the upgrade/download of following FPD:

=====
Location      Type Subtype Upg/Dng   Current   Upg/Dng
              Version   Version
=====
0/1/CPU0      lc   fpga    upg       0.40      0.40
=====
LC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:44:43.700 : lc_fpd_upgrade[192]: %PLATFORM-UPGRADE_FPD-6-START :
Starting to upgrade fpga subtype image from 0.4 to 0.4 for for this card on location
0/1/CPU0
LC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:44:42.990 : fabricq_mgr[152]: EES:Internal clock detect IDLE
```

```

period(-106461) more than threshold(1200000)
LC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:44:42.990 : ingressq[179]: EES:Internal clock detect IDLE
period(-106461) more than threshold(1200000)
LC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:45:09.240 : fabricq_mgr[152]: EES:Internal clock detect IDLE
period(-105945) more than threshold(1200000)
LC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:45:09.241 : ingressq[179]: EES:Internal clock detect IDLE
period(-105944) more than threshold(1200000)
SP/0/1/SP:Jan 12 05:45:16.020 : upgrade_daemon[280]: ...programming...
SP/0/1/SP:Jan 12 05:45:16.034 : upgrade_daemon[280]: ...it will take a while...
SP/0/1/SP:Jan 12 05:45:16.053 : upgrade_daemon[280]: ...it will take a while...
SP/0/1/SP:Jan 12 05:47:42.967 : upgrade_daemon[280]: ...programming...
SP/0/1/SP:Jan 12 05:47:42.981 : upgrade_daemon[280]: ...it will take a while...

% SLC/0/1/CPU0:Jan 12 05:48:08.737 : lc_fpd_upgrade[192]: %PLATFORM-UPGRADE_FPD-6-PASSED :

Successfully upgrade fpga subtype image for for this card on location 0/1/CPU0

```

## show platform Command Output: Example

Use the **show platform** command to verify that the SPA is up and running.

## Troubleshooting Problems with FPD Image Upgrades

This section contains information to help troubleshoot problems that can occur during the upgrade process.

### Power Failure or Removal of a SPA During an FPD Image Upgrade

If the FPD upgrade operation is interrupted by a power failure or the removal of the SPA, it could corrupt the FPD image. This corruption of the FPD image file makes the SPA unusable by the router and the system displays the following messages when it tries to power up the SPA. When it cannot successfully power up the SPA, it places it in the failed state, as shown in the following example:

```

LC/0/3/CPU0:Feb 4 08:23:16.672 : spa_192_jacket[188]: %L2-SPA-5-OIR_INSERTED : SPA discovered
in bay 0
LC/0/3/CPU0:Feb 4 08:23:23.349 : spa_192_jacket[188]: %L2-SPA-5-OIR_ERROR : SPA (0): An
error occurred (0x1002), error recovery action: reset SPA
LC/0/3/CPU0:Feb 4 08:23:26.431 : spa_192_jacket[188]: %L2-SPA-5-OIR_INSERTED : SPA
discovered in bay 0
LC/0/3/CPU0:Feb 4 08:23:32.593 : spa_192_jacket[188]: %L2-SPA-5-OIR_ERROR : SPA (0): Too
many retries, error recovery stopped
LC/0/3/CPU0:Feb 4 08:23:32.593 : spa_192_jacket[188]: %L2-SPA-5-OIR_ERROR : SPA (0): An
error occurred (0x1002), error recovery action: hold SPA in reset

```

When a SPA is in the failed state, it may not register itself with the FPD upgrade mechanism. In this case, you do not see the SPA listed when you use the **show hw-module fpd** command. To verify the state of a SPA, use the **show hw-module subslot error** command and the **show hw-module subslot status** command.

### Performing a SPA FPD Recovery Upgrade

To recover a SPA from the failed state because of a corrupted FPD image, you must manually shut down the SPA. Use the **hw-module subslot subslot-id shutdown** command in Global Configuration mode to administratively shutdown the SPA. After the SPA is shut down, you can use the **upgrade hw-module fpd** command in administration EXEC mode:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin)# upgrade hw-module fpd fpga location 0/3/0
```

## Performing a SIP FPD Recovery Upgrade

If a SIP upgrade fails for whatever reason, do not reload the SIP. Try to perform the upgrade procedure again. You can perform the upgrade procedure multiple times, as long as you do not reload the SIP. The FPD upgrade procedure takes several minutes to complete; do not interrupt the procedure. If you reload the SIP when the FPD image is corrupted, the SIP malfunctions and you must contact Cisco technical support for assistance.

To recover a SIP from the failed state because of a corrupted FPD image, you must contact Cisco technical support.

To recover a SIP from the failed state because of a corrupted FPD image, you must turn off the automatic reset of the SIP card. Use the **hw-module reset auto disable** command in administration configuration mode, as shown in the following example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# hw-module reset auto disable location 0/1/4
```



## CHAPTER 9

# Configuring Frequency Synchronization

Frequency Synchronization is used to distribute precision frequency around a network. Frequency is synchronized accurately using Synchronized Ethernet (SyncE) in devices connected by Ethernet in a network.

This module describes the tasks required to configure frequency synchronization on Cisco IOS XR software.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Overview, on page 195](#)
- [Configuring Frequency Synchronization, on page 198](#)

## Overview

Frequency or timing synchronization is the ability to distribute precision frequency around a network. In this context, timing refers to precision frequency, not an accurate time of day. Precision frequency is required in next generation networks for applications such as circuit emulation.

To achieve compliance to ITU specifications for TDM, differential method circuit emulation must be used, which requires a known, common precision frequency reference at each end of the emulated circuit. The incumbent example of frequency synchronization is provided by SDH equipment. This is used in conjunction with an external timing technology to provide synchronization of precision timing across the network.

SDH equipments are widely replaced by Ethernet equipments and synchronized frequency is required over such Ethernet ports. Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE) is used to accurately synchronize frequency in devices connected by Ethernet in a network. SyncE provides level frequency distribution of known common precision frequency references to a physical layer Ethernet network.

To maintain SyncE links, a set of operational messages are required. These messages ensure that a node is always deriving timing information from the most reliable source and then transfers the timing source quality information to clock the SyncE link. In SDH networks, these are known as Synchronization Status Messages (SSMs). SyncE uses Ethernet Synchronization Message Channel (ESMC) to provide transport for SSMs.

### Source and Selection Points

Frequency Synchronization implementation involves Sources and Selection Points.

A Source inputs frequency signals into a system or transmits them out of a system. There are four types of sources:

- Line interfaces. This includes SyncE interfaces and SONET interfaces.

- Clock interfaces. These are external connectors for connecting other timing signals, such as BITS, UTI and GPS.
- PTP clock. If IEEE 1588 version 2 is configured on the router, a PTP clock may be available to frequency synchronization as a source of the time-of-day and frequency.
- Internal oscillator. This is a free-running internal oscillator chip.

Each source has a Quality Level (QL) associated with it which gives the accuracy of the clock. This QL information is transmitted across the network using ESMC or SSMs contained in the SDH frames. This provides information about the best available source the devices in the system can synchronize to. To define a predefined network synchronization flow and prevent timing loops, you can assign priority values to the sources on each router. The combination of QL information and user-assigned priority levels allow each router to choose a source to synchronize its SyncE or SDH interfaces, as described in the ITU standard G.781.

A Selection Point is any point where a choice is made between several frequency signals and possibly one or many of them are selected. Selection points form a graph representing the flow of timing signals between different cards in a router running Cisco IOS XR software. For example, there can be one or many selection points between different Synchronous Ethernet inputs available on a single line card. This information is forwarded to a selection point on the RSP, to choose between the selected source from each card.

The input signals to the selection points can be:

- Received directly from a source.
- Received as the output from another selection point on the same card.
- Received as the output from a selection point on a different card.

The output of a selection point can be used in a number of ways, like:

- To drive the signals sent out of a set of interfaces.
- As input into another selection point on a card.
- As input into a selection point on an another card.

Use **show frequency synchronization selection** command to see a detailed view of the different selection points within the system.

## SyncE Hardware Support Matrix

This table provides details on the hardware that supports SyncE:



### Note

The table also contains support details of upcoming releases. You can read this table in context of the current release and see relevant *Release Notes* for more information on supported features and hardware.

Hardware Variant	Cisco IOS XR	Cisco IOS XR 64 bit
A9K-8X100GE-L-SE/TR (10GE and 100GE)	5.3.0	6.1.1
A9K-RSP880-SE/TR	5.3.0	6.1.1

Hardware Variant	Cisco IOS XR	Cisco IOS XR 64 bit
A9K-8X100GE-L-SE/TR (40-GE)	6.0.1	6.1.1
A9K-4X100GE-SE/TR	5.3.2 (100G LAN only)	6.1.1
A9K-8X100GE-SE/TR	6.0.1	
A9K-MOD400-SE/TR A9K-MOD200-SE/TR with MPA 20x10GE and Legacy MPAs	6.0.1	6.2.2
A9K-MOD400-SE/TR A9K-MOD200-SE/TR with MPAs 2x100 and 1x100	6.1.3	6.2.2
A9K-400G-DWDM-TR	5.3.3 6.0.1	
A9K-24X10GE-1G-SE/TR A9K-48X10GE-1G-SE/TR	6.2.1	6.3.2
A99-RSP-SE/TR (Cisco ASR 9910 Series Routers)	6.1.4	6.3.2
A99-12X100GE	6.3.2	6.3.2
RSP880-LT-SE/TR	6.2.2	6.4.1
A9K-RSP440-TR/SE Enhanced Ethernet Linecards A99-RP-SE	4.3.4	
A99-RP2-TR/SE	5.3.0	6.3.2 6.4.1
Cisco ASR 9001 Series Routers	4.3.4	
Cisco ASR 9901 Series Routers	NA	6.4.1
A99-RSP-SE/TR (Cisco ASR 9906 Series Routers)	6.3.1	6.3.2
A9K-RSP5-SE/TR	NA	6.5.15
A99-RP3-SE/TR	NA	6.5.15
A9K-8X100GE-X-TR	NA	6.5.15
A9K-16X100GE-TR	NA	6.5.15
A9K-32X100GE-TR	NA	6.5.15

# Configuring Frequency Synchronization

## Enabling Frequency Synchronization on the Router

This task describes the router-level configuration required to enable frequency synchronization.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **frequency synchronization**
3. **clock-interface timing-mode {independent | system}**
4. **quality itu-t option {1 | 2} generation {1 | 2}**
5. **log selection {changes | errors}**
6. Use one of these commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>frequency synchronization</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# frequency synchronization	Enables frequency synchronization on the router.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>clock-interface timing-mode {independent   system}</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# clock-interface timing-mode system	(Optional) Configures the type of timing sources that can be used to drive the output from a clock interface. If this command is not used, the default quality mode is used. In the default mode, the clock interface output is driven only by input from line interfaces and the internal oscillator; it is never driven by input from another clock interface. In addition, some heuristic tests are run to detect if the signal being sent out of one clock interface can be looped back by some external box and sent back in via the same, or another clock interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>independent</b>—Specifies that the output of clock interfaces is driven only by the line interfaces (SyncE and SONET/SDH), as in the default mode. Loopback detection is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>system</b>—Specifies that the output of a clock interface is driven by the system-selected timing source (the source used to drive all SyncE and SONET/SDH</li> </ul>



	Command or Action	Purpose
		interfaces), including clock interfaces. Loopback detection is disabled.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>quality itu-t option {1   2} generation {1   2}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# quality itu-t option 2 generation 1</pre>	<p>(Optional) Specifies the quality level for the router. The default is <b>option 1</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>option 1</b>—Includes PRC, SSU-A, SSU-B, SEC and DNU.</li> <li>• <b>option 2 generation 1</b>—Includes PRS, STU, ST2, ST3, SMC, ST4, RES and DUS.</li> <li>• <b>option 2 generation 2</b>—Includes PRS, STU, ST2, ST3, TNC, ST3E, SMC, ST4, PROV and DUS.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The quality option configured here must match the quality option specified in the <b>quality receive</b> and <b>quality transmit</b> commands in interface frequency synchronization configuration mode.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>log selection {changes   errors}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# log selection changes</pre>	<p>Enables logging to frequency synchronization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>changes</b>—Logs every time there is a change to the selected source, in addition to errors.</li> <li>• <b>errors</b>—Logs only when there are no available frequency sources, or when the only available frequency source is the internal oscillator.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p>Use one of these commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# end</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# commit</pre>	<p>Saves configuration changes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:</li> </ul> <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file, and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

**What to do next**

Configure frequency synchronization on any interfaces that should participate in frequency synchronization.

## Configuring Frequency Synchronization on an Interface

By default, there is no frequency synchronization on line interfaces. Use this task to configure an interface to participate in frequency synchronization.

**Before you begin**

You must enable frequency synchronization globally on the router.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure**
2. **interface** *type interface-path-id*
3. **frequency synchronization**
4. **selection input**
5. **priority** *priority-value*
6. **wait-to-restore** *minutes*
7. **ssm disable**
8. **time-of-day-priority** *priority*
9. **quality transmit** {**exact** | **highest** | **lowest**} **itu-t option** *ql-option*
10. **quality receive** {**exact** | **highest** | **lowest**} **itu-t option** *ql-option*
11. Use one of these commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type interface-path-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/1/1/0	Enters interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>frequency synchronization</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# frequency synchronization	Enables frequency synchronization on the interface and enters interface frequency synchronization mode to configure the various options. By default, this causes the system selected frequency signal to be used for clocking transmission, but does not enable the use of the interface as an input.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>selection input</b> <b>Example:</b>	(Optional) Specifies the interface as a timing source to be passed to the selection algorithm.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# selection input	
<b>Step 5</b>	<p><b>priority</b> <i>priority-value</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# priority 100</pre>	<p>(Optional) Configures the priority of the frequency source on a controller or an interface. Values can range from 1 (highest priority) to 254 (lowest priority). The default value is 100.</p> <p>This command is used to set the priority for an interface or clock interface. The priority is used in the clock-selection algorithm to choose between two sources that have the same quality level (QL). Lower priority values are preferred.</p>
<b>Step 6</b>	<p><b>wait-to-restore</b> <i>minutes</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# wait-to-restore 300</pre>	<p>(Optional) Configures the wait-to-restore time, in minutes, for frequency synchronization on an interface. This is the amount of time after the interface comes up before it is used for synchronization. Values can range from 0 to 12. The default value is 5.</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>ssm</b> <i>disable</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# ssm disable</pre>	<p>(Optional) Disables Synchronization Status Messages (SSMs) on the interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For SyncE interfaces, this disables sending ESMC packets, and ignores any received ESMC packets.</li> <li>For SONET and clock interfaces, this causes DNUs to be sent, and ignores any received QL value.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>time-of-day-priority</b> <i>priority</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# time-of-day-priority 50</pre>	<p>(Optional) Specifies the priority of this time source as the time-of-day (ToD) source. The priority is used as the first criterion when selecting between sources for a time-of-day selection point. Values can range from 1 (highest priority) to 254 (lowest priority); the default value is 100.</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	<p><b>quality</b> <i>transmit {exact   highest   lowest} itu-t option ql-option</i></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# quality transmit highest itu-t option 1 prc</pre>	<p>(Optional) Adjusts the QL that is transmitted in SSMs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>exact ql</b>—Specifies the exact QL to send, unless DNU would otherwise be sent.</li> <li><b>highest ql</b>—Specifies an upper limit on the QL to be sent. If the selected source has a higher QL than the QL specified here, this QL is sent instead.</li> <li><b>lowest ql</b>—Specifies a lower limit on the QL to be sent. If the selected source has a lower QL than the QL specified here, DNU is sent instead.</li> </ul> <p>The quality option specified in this command must match the globally-configured quality option in the <b>quality itu-t option</b> command.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>Note</b> For clock interfaces that do not support SSM, only the lowest QL can be specified. In this case, rather than sending DNU, the output is squelched, and no signal is sent.</p>
<b>Step 10</b>	<p><b>quality receive {exact   highest   lowest} itu-t option ql-option</b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# quality receive highest itu-t option 1 prc</pre>	<p>(Optional) Adjusts the QL value that is received in SSMs, before it is used in the selection algorithm.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>exact ql</b>—Specifies the exact QL regardless of the value received, unless the received value is DNU.</li> <li>• <b>highest ql</b>—Specifies an upper limit on the received QL. If the received value is higher than this specified QL, this QL is used instead.</li> <li>• <b>lowest ql</b>—Specifies a lower limit on the received QL. If the received value is lower than this specified QL, DNU is used instead.</li> </ul> <p>The quality option specified in this command must match the globally-configured quality option in the <b>quality itu-t option</b> command.</p> <p><b>Note</b> For clock interfaces that do not support SSM, only the exact QL can be specified.</p>
<b>Step 11</b>	<p>Use one of these commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# commit</pre>	<p>Saves configuration changes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes: <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file, and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Verifying the Frequency Synchronization Configuration

After performing the frequency synchronization configuration tasks, use this task to check for configuration errors and verify the configuration.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show frequency synchronization configuration-errors**
2. **show frequency synchronization interfaces brief**
3. **show frequency synchronization interfaces *node-id***
4. **show processes fsyncmgr location *node-id***

### DETAILED STEPS

#### Step 1 show frequency synchronization configuration-errors

##### Example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization configuration-errors

Node 0/2/CPU0:
=====
  interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0 frequency synchronization
    * Frequency synchronization is enabled on this interface, but isn't enabled globally.

  interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0 frequency synchronization quality transmit exact itu-t option 2
  generation 1 PRS
    * The QL that is configured is from a different QL option set than is configured globally.
```

Displays any errors that are caused by inconsistencies between shared-plane (global) and local-plane (interface) configurations. There are two possible errors that can be displayed:

- Frequency Synchronization is configured on an interface (line interface or clock-interface), but is not configured globally. Refer to [Enabling Frequency Synchronization on the Router, on page 198](#)
- The QL option configured on some interface does not match the global QL option. Under an interface (line interface or clock interface), the QL option is specified using the **quality transmit** and **quality receive** commands. The value specified must match the value configured in the global **quality itu-t option** command, or match the default (option 1) if the global **quality itu-t option** command is not configured.

Once all the errors have been resolved, meaning there is no output from the command, continue to the next step.

#### Step 2 show frequency synchronization interfaces brief

##### Example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization interfaces brief

Flags:  > - Up           D - Down           S - Assigned for selection
        d - SSM Disabled  x - Peer timed out   i - Init state

Fl  Interface           QLrcv  QLuse  Pri  QLsnt  Source
===  =====
>Sx GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0  Fail   Fail   100  DNU    None
Dd  GigabitEthernet0/2/0/1  n/a    Fail   100  n/a    None
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization clock-interfaces brief
```

Flags: > - Up                      D - Down                      S - Assigned for selection  
       d - SSM Disabled            s - Output squelched    L - Looped back

Node 0/0/CPU0:  
 =====

Fl	Clock Interface	QLrcv	QLuse	Pri	QLsnd	Source
>S	Sync0	PRC	Fail	100	SSU-B	Internal0 [0/0/CPU0]
>	Sync1	SSU-A	Fail	100	SSU-B	Internal0 [0/0/CPU0]
>S	Internal0	n/a	SSU-B	255	n/a	None

Node 0/1/CPU0:  
 =====

Fl	Clock Interface	QLrcv	QLuse	Pri	QLsnd	Source
D	Sync0	None	Fail	100	SSU-B	Internal0 [0/1/CPU0]
D	Sync1	None	Fail	100	SSU-B	Internal0 [0/1/CPU0]
>S	Internal0	n/a	SSU-B	255	n/a	None

Verifies the configuration. Note the following points:

- All line interface that have frequency synchronization configured are displayed.
  - All clock interfaces and internal oscillators are displayed.
  - Sources that have been nominated as inputs (in other words, have **selection input** configured) have 'S' in the Flags column; sources that have not been nominated as inputs do not have 'S' displayed.
- Note** Internal oscillators are always eligible as inputs.
- '>' or 'D' is displayed in the flags field as appropriate.

If any of these items are not true, continue to the next step.

### Step 3 show frequency synchronization interfaces *node-id*

#### Example:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization interfaces GigabitEthernet0/2/0/2
```

Interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/2 (shutdown)  
 Assigned as input for selection  
 SSM Enabled  
 Input:  
   Down  
   Last received QL: Failed  
   Effective QL:     Failed, Priority: 100  
 Output:  
   Selected source:   Sync0 [0/0/CPU0]  
   Selected source QL: Opt-I/PRC  
   Effective QL:     Opt-I/PRC  
 Next selection points: LC\_INGRESS

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization clock-interfaces location 0/1/CPU0
```

Node 0/1/CPU0:  
 =====

Clock interface Sync0 (Down: mode not configured)

```

SSM supported and enabled
Input:
  Down
  Last received QL: Opt-I/PRC
  Effective QL:      Failed, Priority: 100
Output:
  Selected source:   Internal0 [0/1/CPU0]
  Selected source QL: Opt-I/SSU-B
  Effective QL:      Opt-I/SSU-B
Next selection points: RP_SYSTEM

Clock interface Sync1 (Down: mode not configured)
SSM supported and enabled
Input:
  Down
  Last received QL: Opt-I/PRC
  Effective QL:      Failed, Priority: 100
Output:
  Selected source:   Internal0 [0/1/CPU0]
  Selected source QL: Opt-I/SSU-B
  Effective QL:      Opt-I/SSU-B
Next selection points: RP_SYSTEM

Clock interface Internal0 (Up)
Assigned as input for selection
Input:
  Default QL:      Opt-I/SSU-B
  Effective QL: Opt-I/SSU-B, Priority: 255
Next selection points: RP_SYSTEM RP_CLOCK_INTF

```

Investigates issues within individual interfaces. If the clock interface is down, a reason is displayed. This may be because there is missing or conflicting platform configuration on the clock interface.

#### Step 4 **show processes fsyncmgr location *node-id***

##### **Example:**

```

RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show processes fsyncmgr location 0/0/CPU0

      Job Id: 134
      PID: 30202
      Executable path: /pkg/bin/fsyncmgr
      Instance #: 1
      Version ID: 00.00.0000
      Respawn: ON
      Respawn count: 1
Max. spawns per minute: 12
      Last started: Mon Mar  9 16:30:43 2009
      Process state: Run
      Package state: Normal
      Started on config: cfg/gl/freqsync/g/a/enable
      core: MAINMEM
      Max. core: 0
      Placement: None
      startup_path: /pkg/startup/fsyncmgr.startup
      Ready: 0.133s
      Process cpu time: 1730768.741 user, -133848.-361 kernel, 1596920.380 total
-----

```

Verifies that the fsyncmgr process is running on the appropriate nodes.

---





## CHAPTER 10

# Configuring Network Time Protocol

*Network Time Protocol* (NTP) is a protocol designed to time-synchronize devices within a network. Cisco IOS XR software implements NTPv4. NTPv4 retains backwards compatibility with the older versions of NTP, including NTPv3 and NTPv2 but excluding NTPv1, which has been discontinued due to security vulnerabilities.

This module describes the tasks you need to implement NTP on the Cisco IOS XR software.

For more information about NTP on the Cisco IOS XR software and complete descriptions of the NTP commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 230](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of running a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 31: Feature History for Implementing NTP on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	Support was added for IPv6 addresses, VRFs, multicast-based associations, and burst and iburst modes for poll-based associations.
Release 4.3.0	Support was added for NTP-PTP interworking.
Release 4.3.1	Support was added for NTP server inside VRF interface

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Implementing NTP on Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 208](#)
- [Information About Implementing NTP, on page 208](#)
- [How to Implement NTP, on page 210](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing NTP, on page 225](#)
- [Configuring NTP server inside VRF interface, on page 228](#)
- [Additional References, on page 229](#)

# Prerequisites for Implementing NTP on Cisco IOS XR Software

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Information About Implementing NTP

NTP synchronizes timekeeping among a set of distributed time servers and clients. This synchronization allows events to be correlated when system logs are created and other time-specific events occur.

NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol. All NTP communication uses Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). An NTP network usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server. NTP distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses the concept of a “stratum” to describe how many NTP “hops” away a machine is from an authoritative time source. A “stratum 1” time server typically has an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock, or a GPS time source) directly attached, a “stratum 2” time server receives its time via NTP from a “stratum 1” time server, and so on.

NTP avoids synchronizing to a machine whose time may not be accurate, in two ways. First, NTP never synchronizes to a machine that is not synchronized itself. Second, NTP compares the time reported by several machines and does not synchronize to a machine whose time is significantly different than the others, even if its stratum is lower. This strategy effectively builds a self-organizing tree of NTP servers.

The Cisco implementation of NTP does not support stratum 1 service; in other words, it is not possible to connect to a radio or atomic clock (for some specific platforms, however, you can connect a GPS time-source device). We recommend that time service for your network be derived from the public NTP servers available in the IP Internet.

If the network is isolated from the Internet, the Cisco implementation of NTP allows a machine to be configured so that it acts as though it is synchronized via NTP, when in fact it has determined the time using other means. Other machines can then synchronize to that machine via NTP.

Several manufacturers include NTP software for their host systems, and a publicly available version for systems running UNIX and its various derivatives is also available. This software also allows UNIX-derivative servers to acquire the time directly from an atomic clock, which would subsequently propagate time information along to Cisco routers.

The communications between machines running NTP (known as *associations*) are usually statically configured; each machine is given the IP address of all machines with which it should form associations. Accurate timekeeping is made possible by exchanging NTP messages between each pair of machines with an association.

The Cisco implementation of NTP supports two ways that a networking device can obtain NTP time information on a network:

- By polling host servers
- By listening to NTP broadcasts

In a LAN environment, NTP can be configured to use IP broadcast messages. As compared to polling, IP broadcast messages reduce configuration complexity, because each machine can simply be configured to send or receive broadcast or multicast messages. However, the accuracy of timekeeping is marginally reduced because the information flow is one-way only.

An NTP broadcast client listens for broadcast messages sent by an NTP broadcast server at a designated IPv4 address. The client synchronizes the local clock using the first received broadcast message.

The time kept on a machine is a critical resource, so we strongly recommend that you use the security features of NTP to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. Two mechanisms are available: an access list-based restriction scheme and an encrypted authentication mechanism.

When multiple sources of time (VINES, hardware clock, manual configuration) are available, NTP is always considered to be more authoritative. NTP time overrides the time set by any other method.

### Preventing Issues due to GPS Week Number Rollover (WNRO)

- If there are no GPS sources in the NTP source chain or server chain, there is no impact of GPS Week Number Rollover (WNRO).
- GPS WNRO affects only the system clock and not user traffic.
- Contact your GPS manufacturer to fix the GPS source for this condition.

To mitigate impact of GPS sources that are subject to GPS WNRO perform the following optional workarounds:

- If the GPS source has been identified to be a cause of potential disruption on April 6, 2019 (or after), configure `ntp master` in the Cisco that is device connected to this source, and its clock on the Stratum 1 device to preventively isolate it. This configuration enables the device to present its own clock for synchronization to downstream NTP clients.



#### Note

The usage of `ntp master` command as mentioned above is only a workaround to this condition. Use this command until the GPS source-related conditions are resolved, and to prevent the distribution of incorrect clock values throughout the network.

- Configure multiple NTP servers (ideally 4, but more than 3) at Stratum 2 level of the network, to enable NTP clients at Stratum 2 level to get clock from more than one Stratum 1 server. This way, WNRO affected Stratum 1 servers are staged to be marked as ‘false ticker’ or ‘outlier’ clock sources as compared to other non-WNRO affected Stratum 1 servers.

## NTP-PTP Interworking

NTP-PTP interworking provides the ability to use PTP, as well as other valid time of day (TOD) sources such as Data over Cable Service Interface Specification (DOCSIS) Timing Interface (DTI) and global positioning system (GPS), as the time source for the operating system. Prior to the support of NTP-PTP interworking, only backplane time was supported for the operating system time.

NTP-PTP interworking also provides the means to communicate status changes between PTP and NTP processes. It also supports the unambiguous control of the operating system time and backplane time in the event of startup, switchovers or card and process failures.

**Related Topics**

[Configuring NTP-PTP Interworking](#), on page 221

# How to Implement NTP

## Configuring Poll-Based Associations



---

**Note** No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

---

You can configure the following types of poll-based associations between the router and other devices (which may also be routers):

- Client mode
- Symmetric active mode

The client and the symmetric active modes should be used when NTP is required to provide a high level of time accuracy and reliability.

When a networking device is operating in the client mode, it polls its assigned time serving hosts for the current time. The networking device then picks a host from all the polled time servers to synchronize with. Because the relationship that is established in this case is a client-host relationship, the host does not capture or use any time information sent by the local client device. This mode is most suited for file-server and workstation clients that are not required to provide any form of time synchronization to other local clients. Use the **server** command to individually specify the time-serving hosts that you want your networking device to consider synchronizing with and to set your networking device to operate in the client mode.

When a networking device is operating in the symmetric active mode, it polls its assigned time-serving hosts for the current time and it responds to polls by its hosts. Because this is a peer-to-peer relationship, the host also retains time-related information about the local networking device that it is communicating with. This mode should be used when there are several mutually redundant servers that are interconnected via diverse network paths. Most stratum 1 and stratum 2 servers on the Internet today adopt this form of network setup. Use the **peer** command to individually specify the time-serving hosts that you want your networking device to consider synchronizing with and to set your networking device to operate in the symmetric active mode.

When the router polls several other devices for the time, the router selects one device with which to synchronize.



---

**Note** To configure a peer-to-peer association between the router and another device, you must also configure the router as a peer on the other device.

You can configure multiple peers and servers, but you cannot configure a single IP address as both a peer and a server at the same time.

To change the configuration of a specific IP address from peer to server or from server to peer, use the **no** form of the **peer** or **server** command to remove the current configuration before you perform the new configuration. If you do not remove the old configuration before performing the new configuration, the new configuration does not overwrite the old configuration.

---

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **server** *ip-address* [**version number**] [**key key-id**] [**minpoll interval**] [**maxpoll interval**] [**source type interface-path-id**] [**prefer**] [**burst**] [**iburst**]
4. **peer** *ip-address* [**version number**] [**key key-id**] [**minpoll interval**] [**maxpoll interval**] [**source type interface-path-id**] [**prefer**]
5. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>server</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>version number</b> ] [ <b>key key-id</b> ] [ <b>minpoll interval</b> ] [ <b>maxpoll interval</b> ] [ <b>source type interface-path-id</b> ] [ <b>prefer</b> ] [ <b>burst</b> ] [ <b>iburst</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# server 172.16.22.44 minpoll 8 maxpoll 12	Forms a server association with another system. This step can be repeated as necessary to form associations with multiple devices.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>peer</b> <i>ip-address</i> [ <b>version number</b> ] [ <b>key key-id</b> ] [ <b>minpoll interval</b> ] [ <b>maxpoll interval</b> ] [ <b>source type interface-path-id</b> ] [ <b>prefer</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# peer 192.168.22.33 minpoll 8 maxpoll 12 source tengige 0/0/0/1	Forms a peer association with another system. This step can be repeated as necessary to form associations with multiple systems.  <b>Note</b> To complete the configuration of a peer-to-peer association between the router and the remote device, the router must also be configured as a peer on the remote device.
<b>Step 5</b>	Use one of the following commands: • <b>end</b> • <b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end or	Saves configuration changes.  • When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:  <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre>

Command or Action	Purpose
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp) # commit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring Broadcast-Based NTP Associates

In a broadcast-based NTP association, an NTP server propagates NTP broadcast packets throughout a network. Broadcast clients listen for the NTP broadcast packets propagated by the NTP server and do not engage in any polling.

Broadcast-based NTP associations should be used when time accuracy and reliability requirements are modest and if your network is localized and has a large number of clients (more than 20). Broadcast-based NTP associations also are recommended for use on networks that have limited bandwidth, system memory, or CPU resources. Time accuracy is marginally reduced in broadcast-based NTP associations because information flows only one way.

Use the **broadcast client** command to set your networking device to listen for NTP broadcast packets propagated through a network. For broadcast client mode to work, the broadcast server and its clients must be located on the same subnet. The time server that is transmitting NTP broadcast packets must be enabled on the interface of the given device using the **broadcast** command.

Use the **broadcast** command to set your networking device to send NTP broadcast packets.



### Note

No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. (Optional) **broadcastdelay** *microseconds*
4. **interface** *type interface-path-id*
5. **broadcast client**
6. **broadcast** [**destination** *ip-address*] [**key** *key-id*] [**version** *number*]
7. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**

- **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>broadcastdelay</b> <i>microseconds</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# broadcastdelay 5000	Adjusts the estimated round-trip delay for NTP broadcasts.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type interface-path-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# interface POS 0/1/0/0	Enters NTP interface configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>broadcast client</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp-int)# broadcast client	Configures the specified interface to receive NTP broadcast packets. <b>Note</b> Go to next step to configure the interface to send NTP broadcast packets.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>broadcast</b> [ <b>destination</b> <i>ip-address</i> ] [ <b>key</b> <i>key-id</i> ] [ <b>version</b> <i>number</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp-int)# broadcast destination 10.50.32.149	Configures the specified interface to send NTP broadcast packets. <b>Note</b> Go to previous step to configure the interface to receive NTP broadcast packets.
<b>Step 7</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp-int)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp-int)# commit	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:   Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?  [cancel]:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring NTP Access Groups



**Note** No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

The access list-based restriction scheme allows you to grant or deny certain access privileges to an entire network, a subnet within a network, or a host within a subnet.

The access group options are scanned in the following order, from least restrictive to most restrictive:

1. **peer**—Allows time requests and NTP control queries and allows the system to synchronize itself to a system whose address passes the access list criteria.
2. **serve**—Allows time requests and NTP control queries, but does not allow the system to synchronize itself to a system whose address passes the access list criteria.
3. **serve-only**—Allows only time requests from a system whose address passes the access list criteria.
4. **query-only**—Allows only NTP control queries from a system whose address passes the access list criteria.

If the source IP address matches the access lists for more than one access type, the first type is granted. If no access groups are specified, all access types are granted to all systems. If any access groups are specified, only the specified access types are granted.

For details on NTP control queries, see RFC 1305 (NTP version 3).

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **access-group** {**peer** | **query-only** | **serve** | **serve-only**} *access-list-name*
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**



## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>access-group {peer   query-only   serve   serve-only} access-list-name</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# access-group peer access1	Creates an access group and applies a basic IPv4 or IPv6 access list to it.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:               <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting (yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring NTP Authentication

This task explains how to configure NTP authentication.


**Note**

No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

The encrypted NTP authentication scheme should be used when a reliable form of access control is required. Unlike the access-list-based restriction scheme that is based on IP addresses, the encrypted authentication scheme uses authentication keys and an authentication process to determine if NTP synchronization packets sent by designated peers or servers on a local network are deemed as trusted, before the time information that it carries along is accepted.

The authentication process begins from the moment an NTP packet is created. A message authentication code (MAC) is computed using the MD5 Message Digest Algorithm and the MAC is embedded into an NTP synchronization packet. The NTP synchronization packet together with the embedded MAC and key number are transmitted to the receiving client. If authentication is enabled and the key is trusted, the receiving client computes the MAC in the same way. If the computed MAC matches the embedded MAC, the system is allowed to sync to the server that uses this key in its packets.

After NTP authentication is properly configured, your networking device only synchronizes with and provides synchronization to trusted time sources.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **authenticate**
4. **authentication-key** *key-number* **md5** [**clear** | **encrypted**] *key-name*
5. **trusted-key** *key-number*
6. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>authenticate</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# authenticate	Enables the NTP authentication feature.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>authentication-key</b> <i>key-number</i> <b>md5</b> [ <b>clear</b>   <b>encrypted</b> ] <i>key-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# authentication-key 42 md5 clear key1	Defines the authentication keys. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Each key has a key number, a type, a value, and, optionally, a name. Currently the only key type supported is <b>md5</b>.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>trusted-key</b> <i>key-number</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# trusted-key 42</pre>	Defines trusted authentication keys. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a key is trusted, this router only synchronizes to a system that uses this key in its NTP packets.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>end</b></li> <li><b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end</pre> or <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit</pre>	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:  <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting (yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Disabling NTP Services on a Specific Interface

NTP services are disabled on all interfaces by default.

NTP is enabled globally when any NTP commands are entered. You can selectively prevent NTP packets from being received through a specific interface by turning off NTP on a given interface.

### SUMMARY STEPS

- configure**
- ntp**
- Use one of the following commands:
  - no interface** *interface-path-id*
  - interface** *interface-path-id* **disable**
- Use one of the following commands:
  - end**

- **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp</pre>	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no interface type interface-path-id</b></li> <li>• <b>interface type interface-path-id disable</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# no interface pos 0/0/0/1</pre> or <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# interface POS 0/0/0/1 disable</pre>	Disables NTP services on the specified interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end</pre> or <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit</pre>	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:   <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets

By default, the source IP address of an NTP packet sent by the router is the address of the interface through which the NTP packet is sent. Use this procedure to set a different source address.



**Note** No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **source type interface-path-id**
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>source type interface-path-id</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# source POS 0/0/0/1	Configures an interface from which the IP source address is taken.  <b>Note</b> This interface is used for the source address for all packets sent to all destinations. If a source address is to be used for a specific association, use the <b>source</b> keyword in the <b>peer</b> or <b>server</b> command shown in <a href="#">Configuring Poll-Based Associations</a> , on page 210.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit	Saves configuration changes.  • When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:  <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> • Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server

You can configure the router to act as an authoritative NTP server, even if the system is not synchronized to an outside time source.



### Note

No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **master** *stratum*
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> <code>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp</code>	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>master</b> <i>stratum</i> <b>Example:</b>	Makes the router an authoritative NTP server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# master 9</pre>	<p><b>Note</b> Use the <b>master</b> command with caution. It is very easy to override valid time sources using this command, especially if a low stratum number is configured. Configuring multiple machines in the same network with the <b>master</b> command can cause instability in time keeping if the machines do not agree on the time.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>Use one of the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit</pre>	<p>Saves configuration changes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes: <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Configuring NTP-PTP Interworking

Use this task to configure NTP to use PTP as the time source.

### Before you begin

PTP must be supported and enabled on the router before NTP-PTP interworking can be configured. If PTP is not enabled, you receive an error message similar to the following when you try to commit the configuration:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp master primary-reference-clock
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit
```

```
% Failed to commit one or more configuration items. Please issue
'show configuration failed' from this session to view the errors
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# show configuration failed
[:::]
ntp
```

```

master primary-reference-clock
!!% 'ip-ntp' detected the 'fatal' condition 'PTP is not supported on this platform'
!
end

```

Refer to the [Configuring PTP, on page 244](#) module for more information.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **master primary-reference-clock**
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>master primary-reference-clock</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# master primary-reference-clock	Specifies PTP to be the NTP time source.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:                 Uncommitted changes found, commit them before                    exiting(yes/no/cancel)?                [cancel]:                 • Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.                 • Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.             </li> </ul>



	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Updating the Hardware Clock

On devices that have hardware clocks (system calendars), you can configure the hardware clock to be periodically updated from the software clock. This is advisable for devices using NTP, because the time and date on the software clock (set using NTP) is more accurate than the hardware clock. The time setting on the hardware clock has the potential to drift slightly over time.



**Note** No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **update-calendar**
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>ntp</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	Enters NTP configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>update-calendar</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# update-calendar	Configures the router to update its system calendar from the software clock at periodic intervals.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands:	Saves configuration changes.

Command or Action	Purpose
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:           <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before   exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Verifying the Status of the External Reference Clock

This task explains how to verify the status of NTP components.



### Note

The commands can be entered in any order.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show ntp associations [detail] [location node-id]**
2. **show ntp status [location node-id]**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show ntp associations [detail] [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show ntp associations</pre>	Displays the status of NTP associations.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show ntp status [location node-id]</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Displays the status of NTP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show ntp status	

## Examples

The following is sample output from the **show ntp associations** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show ntp associations

      address      ref clock      st  when  poll reach  delay  offset  disp
+~127.127.1.1      127.127.1.1      5   5    1024   37    0.0    0.00   438.3
*~172.19.69.1      172.24.114.33     3   13   1024    1    2.0    67.16    0.0
* master (syncd), # master (unsyncd), + selected, - candidate, ~ configured
```

The following is sample output from the **show ntp status** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show ntp status

Clock is synchronized, stratum 4, reference is 172.19.69.1
nominal freq is 1000.0000 Hz, actual freq is 999.9988 Hz, precision is 2**26
reference time is C54C131B.9EECF6CA (07:26:19.620 UTC Mon Nov 24 2008)
clock offset is 66.3685 msec, root delay is 7.80 msec
root dispersion is 950.04 msec, peer dispersion is 3.38 msec
```

# Configuration Examples for Implementing NTP

## Configuring Poll-Based Associations: Example

The following example shows an NTP configuration in which the router's system clock is configured to form a peer association with the time server host at IP address 192.168.22.33, and to allow the system clock to be synchronized by time server hosts at IP address 10.0.2.1 and 172.19.69.1:

```
ntp
 server 10.0.2.1 minpoll 5 maxpoll 7
 peer 192.168.22.33

 server 172.19.69.1
```

## Configuring Broadcast-Based Associations: Example

The following example shows an NTP client configuration in which interface 0/2/0/0 is configured to receive NTP broadcast packets, and the estimated round-trip delay between an NTP client and an NTP broadcast server is set to 2 microseconds:

```
ntp
 interface tengige 0/2/0/0
```

```

        broadcast client
    exit
broadcastdelay 2

```

The following example shows an NTP server configuration where interface 0/2/0/2 is configured to be a broadcast server:

```

ntp
 interface tengige 0/2/0/2
   broadcast

```

### Configuring NTP Access Groups: Example

The following example shows a NTP access group configuration where the following access group restrictions are applied:

- Peer restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named peer-acl.
- Serve restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of access list named serve-acl.
- Serve-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named serve-only-acl.
- Query-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named query-only-acl.

```

ntp
 peer 10.1.1.1
 peer 10.1.1.1
 peer 10.2.2.2
 peer 10.3.3.3
 peer 10.4.4.4
 peer 10.5.5.5
 peer 10.6.6.6
 peer 10.7.7.7
 peer 10.8.8.8
 access-group peer peer-acl
 access-group serve serve-acl
 access-group serve-only serve-only-acl
 access-group query-only query-only-acl
 exit
ipv4 access-list peer-acl
 10 permit ip host 10.1.1.1 any
 20 permit ip host 10.8.8.8 any
 exit
ipv4 access-list serve-acl
 10 permit ip host 10.4.4.4 any
 20 permit ip host 10.5.5.5 any
 exit
ipv4 access-list query-only-acl
 10 permit ip host 10.2.2.2 any
 20 permit ip host 10.3.3.3 any
 exit
ipv4 access-list serve-only-acl
 10 permit ip host 10.6.6.6 any
 20 permit ip host 10.7.7.7 any
 exit

```

### Configuring NTP Authentication: Example

The following example shows an NTP authentication configuration. In this example, the following is configured:

- NTP authentication is enabled.
- Two authentication keys are configured (key 2 and key 3).
- The router is configured to allow its software clock to be synchronized with the clock of the peer (or vice versa) at IP address 10.3.32.154 using authentication key 2.
- The router is configured to allow its software clock to be synchronized with the clock by the device at IP address 10.32.154.145 using authentication key 3.
- The router is configured to synchronize only to systems providing authentication key 3 in their NTP packets.

```
ntp
authenticate
authentication-key 2 md5 encrypted 06120A2D40031D1008124
authentication-key 3 md5 encrypted 1311121E074110232621
trusted-key 3
server 10.3.32.154 key 3
peer 10.32.154.145 key 2
```

### Disabling NTP on an Interface: Example

The following example shows an NTP configuration in which 0/2/0/0 interface is disabled:

```
ntp
interface tengige 0/2/0/0
disable
exit
authentication-key 2 md5 encrypted 06120A2D40031D1008124
authentication-key 3 md5 encrypted 1311121E074110232621
authenticate
trusted-key 3
server 10.3.32.154 key 3
peer 10.32.154.145 key 2
```

### Configuring the Source IP Address for NTP Packets: Example

The following example shows an NTP configuration in which Ethernet management interface 0/0/CPU0/0 is configured as the source address for NTP packets:

```
ntp
authentication-key 2 md5 encrypted 06120A2D40031D1008124
authentication-key 3 md5 encrypted 1311121E074110232621
authenticate
trusted-key 3
server 10.3.32.154 key 3
peer 10.32.154.145 key 2
source MgmtEth0/0/CPU0/0
```

### Configuring the System as an Authoritative NTP Server: Example

The following example shows a NTP configuration in which the router is configured to use its own NTP master clock to synchronize with peers when an external NTP source becomes unavailable:

```
ntp
 master 6
```

### Updating the Hardware Clock: Example

The following example shows an NTP configuration in which the router is configured to update its hardware clock from the software clock at periodic intervals:

```
ntp
 server 10.3.32.154
 update-calendar
```

## Configuring NTP server inside VRF interface

This task explains how to configure NTP server inside VRF interface.

**Note**

No specific command enables NTP; the first NTP configuration command that you issue enables NTP.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **ntp**
3. **vrf** *vrf-name*
4. **source** *interface-type interface-instance*
5. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>ntp</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enters NTP configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp	
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>vrf vrf-name</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp vrf Customer_A	Specify name of a VRF (VPN- routing and forwarding) instance to configure.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>source interface-type interface-instance</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ntp vrf Customer_A source bvi 70	Configures an interface from which the IP source address is taken. This allows IOS-XR to respond to NTP queries on VRF interfaces, in this case the source is BVI. <b>Note</b> This interface is used for the source address for all packets sent to all destinations. If a source address is to be used for a specific association, use the <b>source</b> keyword in the <b>peer</b> or <b>server</b> command shown in <a href="#">Configuring Poll-Based Associations</a> , on page 210.
<b>Step 5</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# end or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ntp)# commit	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:   Uncommitted changes found, commit them before  exiting(yes/no/cancel)?  [cancel]:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to implementing NTP on Cisco IOS XR software.

**Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR clock commands	<i>Clock Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR NTP commands	<i>NTP Commands on</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Information about getting started with Cisco IOS XR Software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
Cisco IOS XR master command index	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

**Standards**

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

**MIBs**

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

**RFCs**

RFCs	Title
RFC 1059	<i>Network Time Protocol, Version 1: Specification and Implementation</i>
RFC 1119	<i>Network Time Protocol, Version 2: Specification and Implementation</i>
RFC 1305	<i>Network Time Protocol, Version 3: Specification, Implementation, and Analysis</i>



**Technical Assistance**

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>





# CHAPTER 11

## Configuring PTP

*Precision Time Protocol* (PTP) is a protocol that defines a method to distribute time around a network. PTP support is based on the IEEE 1588-2008 standard.

This module describes the concepts around this protocol and details the various configurations involved. For information on PTP commands, see *System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

**Table 32: Feature History for Configuring PTP on Cisco IOS XR Software:**

Release	Modification
Release 4.2.0	This feature was introduced.
Release 4.3.1	Support for PTP in Ethernet link bundles was added.
Release 5.3.2	Support for the RSP IEEE 1588 port was added for the PIDs A9K-RSP880-TR, A9K-RSP880-SE.
Release 6.0.1	Support for the RSP IEEE 1588 port was added for the PIDs A9K-RSP440-SE, A9K-RSP440-TR, A9K-RP-SE, A9K-RP-TR.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Overview, on page 233](#)
- [ITU-T Telecom Profiles for PTP, on page 243](#)
- [Configuring PTP, on page 244](#)
- [Configuration Examples, on page 255](#)

## Overview

The Precision Time Protocol (PTP), as defined in the IEEE 1588 standard, synchronizes with nanosecond accuracy the real-time clocks of the devices in a network. The clocks are organized into a master-slave hierarchy. PTP identifies the port that is connected to a device with the most precise clock. This clock is referred to as the master clock. All the other devices on the network synchronize their clocks with the master and are referred to as members. Constantly-exchanged timing messages ensure continued synchronization. PTP ensures that the best available clock is selected as the source of time (the grandmaster clock) for the network and that other clocks in the network are synchronized to the grandmaster.

Table 33: PTP Clocks

Network Element	Description
Grandmaster (GM)	A network device physically attached to the primary time source. All clocks are synchronized to the grandmaster clock.
Ordinary Clock (OC)	<p>An ordinary clock is a 1588 clock with a single PTP port that can operate in one of the following modes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Master mode—Distributes timing information over the network to one or more slave clocks, thus allowing the slave to synchronize its clock to the master.</li> <li>• Slave mode—Synchronizes its clock to a master clock. You can enable the slave mode on up to two interfaces simultaneously in order to connect to two different master clocks.</li> </ul>
Boundary Clock (BC)	<p>The device participates in selecting the best master clock and can act as the master clock if no better clocks are detected.</p> <p>Boundary clock starts its own PTP session with a number of downstream slaves. The boundary clock mitigates the number of network hops and results in packet delay variations in the packet network between the Grand Master and Slave.</p>
Transparent Clock (TC)	A transparent clock is a device or a switch that calculates the time it requires to forward traffic and updates the PTP time correction field to account for the delay, making the device transparent in terms of time calculations.

PTP consists of two parts:

- The port State machine and Best Master Clock Algorithm: This provides a method to determine the ports in the network that will remain passive (neither master nor slave), run as a master (providing time to other clocks in the network), or run as slaves (receiving time from other clocks in the network).
- Delay-Request/Response mechanism and a Peer-delay mechanism: This provides a mechanisms for slave ports to calculate the difference between the time of their own clocks and the time of their master clock.



**Note** Cisco ASR 9000 Series routers do not support Peer-delay mechanism.

The implementation of PTP on Cisco IOS XR software is designed to operate effectively in Telecommunication networks, which are different from the networks for which PTP was originally designed.

PTP is configurable on Gigabit Ethernet interfaces (1G, 10G, 40G, and 100G), Bundle Ethernet interfaces, and sub-interfaces. PTP is not configurable on LAG Ethernet sub-interfaces.

### Frequency and Time Selection

The selection of the source to synchronize the backplane clock frequency is made by frequency synchronization, and is outside of the scope of PTP. The Announce, Sync, and Delay-request frequencies must be the same on the master and slave.

### Delay-Response Mechanism

The Delay Request-response mechanism (defined in section 11.3 of IEEE Std 1588-2008) lets a slave port estimate the difference between its own clock-time and the clock-time of its master. The following options are supported:

- One-step mechanism - The timestamp for a Sync message is sent in the Sync message itself.
- Two-step mechanism - The timestamp for a Sync message is sent later in a Follow-up message.

When running a port in Slave state, a router can send Delay-request messages and handle incoming Sync, Follow-up, and Delay-response messages. The timeout periods for both Sync and Delay-response messages are individually configurable.

### Hybrid Mode

Your router allows the ability to select separate sources for frequency and time-of-day (ToD). Frequency selection can be between any source of frequency available to the router, such as: BITS, GPS, SyncE or IEEE 1588 PTP. The ToD selection is between the source selected for frequency and PTP, if available (ToD selection is from GPS, DTI or PTP). This is known as hybrid mode, where a physical frequency source (BITS or SyncE) is used to provide frequency synchronization, while PTP is used to provide ToD synchronization.

Frequency selection uses the algorithm described in ITU-T recommendation G.871, and is described in the *Configuring Frequency Synchronization* module in this document. The ToD selection is controlled using the time-of-day priority configuration. This configuration is found under the source interface frequency synchronization configuration mode and under the global PTP configuration mode. It controls the order for which sources are selected for ToD. Values in the range of 1 to 254 are allowed, with lower numbers indicating higher priority.

### Port States

State machine indicates the behavior of each port. The possible states are:

State	Description
INIT	Port is not ready to participate in PTP.
LISTENING	First state when a port becomes ready to participate in PTP: In this state, the port listens to PTP masters for a (configurable) period of time.
PRE-MASTER	Port is ready to enter the MASTER state.
MASTER	Port provides timestamps for any Slave or boundary clocks that are listening.

State	Description
UNCALIBRATED	Port receives timestamps from a Master clock but, the router's clock is not yet synchronized to the Master.
SLAVE	Port receives timestamps from a Master clock and the router's clock is synchronized to the Master.
PASSIVE	Port is aware of a better clock than the one it would advertise if it was in MASTER state and is not a Slave clock to that Master clock.

## GPS ToD Support for NMEA

National Marine Electronics Associations (NMEA) 0183 is a standard protocol used by GPS receivers to transmit data and is responsible for creating a standard uniform interface for digital data exchange between different marine electronic products. NMEA provides protocol strings to send out GPS updates. GPRMC is one such NMEA string that provides exact data and time (Greenwich time), latitude, longitude, heading, and speed. Router receives GPS ToD messages in serial ASCII stream through the RS422 interface in three formats - NTP Type 4, Cisco, and GPRMC. The timing data is extracted from this stream.


**Note**

Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers can support ToD in NMEA or GPRMC format. Currently, this is supported only on RS422.


**Note**

You can refer to the below support information in context of the current release and see relevant *Release Notes* for more information on supported features and hardware.

Supported hardware are:

- A9K-RSP440-SE/TR
- A9K-RSP880-SE/TR
- A99-RP2-SE/TR

## PTP Support Information

This table lists different types of support information related to PTP:

Transport Media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP over IPv4</li> <li>• Ethernet</li> <li>• IPv6</li> </ul>
-----------------	---

Messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Signaling</li> <li>• Announce</li> <li>• Sync</li> <li>• Follow-up</li> <li>• Delay-request</li> <li>• Delay-response</li> <li>• Management</li> </ul>
Transport Modes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unicast: This is the default mode. All packets are sent as unicast messages.</li> <li>• Mixed: Announce and Sync messages are sent as multicast messages. Signaling, Delay-request, and Delay-response messages are sent as unicast messages.</li> <li>• Multicast: All packets are sent as multicast messages.</li> </ul>

## PTP Hardware Support Matrix


**Note**

The table also contains support details of upcoming releases. You can read this table in context of the current release and see relevant *Release Notes* for more information on supported features and hardware.

This table provides a detailed information on the supported hardware:

Hardware Variant	1588/PTP	Cisco IOS XR	Cisco IOS XR 64 bit	Comments
A9K-8X100GE-L-SE/TR (10GE and 100GE)	Default & G.8265.1	5.3.3	6.3.2 6.4.1	PTP over Ethernet does not work on 100G ports on Cisco IOS XR until 6.4.1. Support was introduced in 6.4.1.
	G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	
	G.8273.2	6.2.1	6.3.2	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	

A9K-RSP880-SE/TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	5.3.3	6.3.2 6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.2.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-8X100GE-L-SE/TR (40-GE)	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.0.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	NA	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-4X100GE-SE/TR A9K-8X100GE-SE/TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.2.1	6.4.1	PTP over Ethernet does not work on 100G ports on Cisco IOS XR until 6.4.1. Support was introduced in 6.4.1.  In 6.2.1, only G.8275.1 PTP profile is supported on the cards; No support for G.8273.2 PTP profile.
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.1	6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.4.1	6.4.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-MOD400-SE/TR & A9K-MOD200-SE/TR with Legacy MPAs	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.1.3	6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.2	6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	-	-	-
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	-



A9K-MOD400-SE/TR & A9K-MOD200-SE/TR with MPA 20x10GE , A9K-MPA-1X100GE and A9K-MPA-2X100GE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.1.3	6.4.1	PTP over Ethernet does not work on 100G ports on Cisco IOS XR until 6.4.1. Support was introduced in 6.4.1.  In 6.2.2, only G.8275.1 PTP profile is supported on the cards. No support for G.8273.2 PTP profile until 6.5.1.
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.2	6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.5.1	6.5.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A99-12X100GE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.3.2	6.3.2	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.3.2	6.3.2	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	-	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-24X10GE-1GSE/TR A9K-48X10GE-1GSE/TR	1588/PTP	6.2.2	6.3.2	-
	Default & G.8265.1	6.3.1		
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.2 6.3.1	6.3.2	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.3.1	6.3.2	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A99-RSP-SE/TR (Cisco ASR 9910 Series Routers)	1588/PTP	6.3.1	6.3.2	-
	Default & G.8265.1			
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.3.1	6.3.2	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.4.1	6.3.2	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	

A9K-RSP880-LT-SE/TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.2.2	6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.2	6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.4.1	6.4.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-RSP440-TR/SE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	4.3.4	NA	Enhanced Ethernet linecards do not support G.8273.2 with G.8275.1 PTP profile. .
A99-RP-SE	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	NA	NA	
Enhanced Ethernet Linecards	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	NA	
A99-RP2-TR/SE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	5.3.3	6.3.2 6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.2.1	6.3.2 6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	NA	
Cisco ASR 9001 Series Routers	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	4.3.4	NA	Enhanced Ethernet based hardware does not support G.8273.2 with G.8275.1 PTP profile.
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	NA	NA	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	NA	

Cisco ASR 9901 Series Routers	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.4.1	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	NA	6.4.1	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.1	
A99-RSP-SE/TR (Cisco ASR 9906 Series Routers)	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	6.3.1	6.3.2	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8275.2	6.3.1	6.3.2	
	1588/PTP G.8273.2	6.4.1	6.3.2	
	PTP Multiprofile	6.5.1	6.5.1	
A9K-RSP5-SE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	
A9K-RSP5-TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	

A99-RP3-SE	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	
A99-RP3-TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	
A9K-8X100GE-X-TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	
A9K-16X100GE-TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	NA
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	
A9K-32X100GE-TR	1588/PTP Default & G.8265.1	NA	6.5.15	-
	1588/PTP G.8275.2	NA	6.5.15	
	1588/PTP G.8275.1 & G.8273.2	NA	6.6.1	
	PTP Multiprofile	NA	6.5.15	

## Restrictions

- PTP Grandmaster (GM) is not supported with all the PTP profiles.

- RSP IEEE 1588 port on RSP/RP is not supported.
- Two-step clock operation is recommended over one-step clock operation for a PTP Master.
- 1 Pulse per Second (1PPS) output is not supported on Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers.

## ITU-T Telecom Profiles for PTP

Cisco IOS XR software supports ITU-T Telecom Profiles for PTP as defined in the ITU-T recommendation. A profile consists of PTP configuration options applicable only to a specific application.

Separate profiles can be defined to incorporate PTP in different scenarios based on the IEEE 1588-2008 standard. A telecom profile differs in several ways from the default behavior defined in the IEEE 1588-2008 standard and the key differences are mentioned in the subsequent sections.

The following sections describe the ITU-T Telecom Profiles that are supported for PTP.

### G.8265.1 Profile

G.8265.1 profile fulfills specific frequency-distribution requirements in telecom networks. Features of G.8265.1 profile are:

- *Clock advertisement*: G.8265.1 profile specifies changes to values used in Announce messages for advertising PTP clocks. The clock class value is used to advertise the quality level of the clock, while the other values are not used.
- *Clock Selection*: G.8265.1 profile also defines an alternate Best Master Clock Algorithm (BMCA) to select port states and clocks is defined for the profile. This profile also requires to receive Sync messages (and optionally, Delay-Response messages) to qualify a clock for selection.
- *Port State Decision*: The ports are statically configured to be Master or Slave instead of using FSM to dynamically set port states.
- *Packet Rates*: The packet rates higher than rates specified in the IEEE 1588-2008 standard are used. They are:
  - Sync/Follow-Up Packets: Rates from 128 packets-per-second to 16 seconds-per-packet.
  - Delay-Request/Delay-Response Packets: Rates from 128 packets-per-second to 16 seconds-per-packet.
  - Announce Packets: Rates from 8 packets-per-second to 64 packets-per-second.
- *Transport Mechanism*: G.8265.1 profile only supports IPv4 PTP transport mechanism.
- *Mode*: G.8265.1 profile supports transport of data packets only in unicast mode.
- *Clock Type*: G.8265.1 profile only supports Ordinary Clock-type (a clock with only one PTP port).
- *Domain Numbers*: The domain numbers that can be used in a G.8265.1 profile network ranges from 4 to 23. The default domain number is 4.
- *Port Numbers*: All PTP port numbers can only be 1 because all clocks in a this profile network are Ordinary Clocks.

G.8265.1 profile defines an alternate algorithm to select between different master clocks based on the local priority given to each master clock and their quality levels (QL). This profile also defines Packet Timing Signal Fail (PTSF) conditions to identify the master clocks that do not qualify for selection. They are:

- PTSF-lossSync condition: Raised for master clocks that do not receive a reliable stream of Sync and Delay-Resp messages. Cisco IOS XR software requests Sync and Delay-Resp grants for each configured master clock to track the master clock with this condition.
- PTSF-lossAnnounce condition: Raised for master clocks that do not receive a reliable stream of Announce messages.
- PTSF-unusable condition: Raised for master clocks that receives a reliable stream of Announce, Sync, and Delay-Resp messages, but not usable by slave clocks. Cisco IOS XR software does not use this condition.

### Hardware variant-specific behavior

The profile G8265.1 displays the following behavior on these hardware variants A9K-RSP5-SE, A9K-RSP5-TR, A99-RP3-SE, and A99-RP3-TR:

- Configuring either a master or slave clock type is mandatory.
- G.8265.1 is only a frequency synchronization profile and the servo state is displayed as `FREQ_LOCKED` and the PTP slave interface remains as slave. Phase synchronization is not supported.
- G.8265.1 profile supports only PTP pure mode and not PTP hybrid mode.

## Configuring PTP

### Prerequisite

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

### PTP Interface and Profile Configuration

When a global PTP profile is attached to an interface, its values are used as default settings for that interface. When additional settings are configured under an interface itself, these settings override the defaults in that profile. When no profile is attached to an interface, the configuration on the interface is used to determine the PTP settings for that interface.

When configuring PTP, use one of the following approaches:

- Create a profile (or multiple profiles) containing all the default settings to use on all PTP interfaces. Override any settings that differ for particular interfaces by using the interface configuration under the interfaces themselves.
- Configure all settings separately for each interface, without using any global profiles. Use this approach if the interfaces do not have consistent settings, or if you are configuring only a small number of PTP interfaces.

## Configuring Frequency Synchronization and Quality Settings for PTP

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure frequency and quality settings for PTP on a router.

1. To enable frequency synchronization on the router, use **frequency synchronization** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# frequency synchronization
```

2. To configure ITU-T quality parameters, use **quality itu-t option *option* generation *number*** command in the frequency synchronization configuration mode.

- **option 1:** Includes PRC, SSU-A, SSU-B, SEC, and DNU. This is the default option.
- **option 2 generation 1:** Includes PRS, STU, ST2, ST3, SMC, and DUS.
- **option 2 generation 2:** Includes PRS, STU, ST2, ST3, TNC, ST3E, SMC, and DUS.



### Note

The **quality option** configured here must match the **quality option** specified in the **quality receive** and **quality transmit** commands.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-freqsync)# quality itu-t
option 2 generation 2
```

### Verification

To display the frequency synchronization selection, use **show frequency synchronization selection** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization selection
Node 0/RSP1/CPU0:
=====
Selection point: T0-SEL-B (3 inputs, 1 selected)
  Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago
  Next selection points
    SPA scoped      : None
    Node scoped     : T4-SEL-C CHASSIS-TOD-SEL
    Chassis scoped: LC_TX_SELECT
    Router scoped  : None
  Uses frequency selection
  Used for local line interface output
  S  Input                                     Last Selection Point      QL  Pri  Status
  == =====
  1  Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]                       n/a                        PRC   1   Locked
    HundredGigE0/5/0/2                         0/5/CPU0 ETH_RXMUX 1      PRC   1   Available
    Internal0 [0/RSP1/CPU0]                     n/a                        SEC  255   Available

Selection point: T4-SEL-A (1 inputs, 1 selected)
  Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago
  Next selection points
    SPA scoped      : None
    Node scoped     : T4-SEL-C
    Chassis scoped: None
    Router scoped  : None
  Uses frequency selection
  S  Input                                     Last Selection Point      QL  Pri  Status
```

```

== =====
1 HundredGigE0/5/0/2 0/5/CPU0 ETH_RXMUX 1 PRC 1 Available

Selection point: T4-SEL-C (2 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 06:49:15 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: None
  Router scoped : None
Uses frequency selection
Used for local clock interface output
S Input Last Selection Point QL Pri Status
== =====
1 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0] 0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1 PRC 1 Locked
  HundredGigE0/5/0/2 0/RSP1/CPU0 T4-SEL-A 1 PRC 1 Available

Selection point: CHASSIS-TOD-SEL (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 6d04h ago, and selection made 6d04h ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: None
  Router scoped : None
Uses time-of-day selection
S Input Last Selection Point Pri Time Status
== =====
1 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0] 0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1 100 Yes Available

Node 0/3/CPU0:
=====
Selection point: ETH_RXMUX (0 inputs, 0 selected)
Last programmed 9w6d ago, and selection made 9w6d ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: T0-SEL-B T4-SEL-A
  Router scoped : None
Uses frequency selection

Selection point: LC_TX_SELECT (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 9w6d ago, and selection made 9w6d ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: None
  Router scoped : None
Uses frequency selection
Used for local line interface output
S Input Last Selection Point QL Pri Status
== =====
24 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0] 0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1 PRC 1 Available

Node 0/5/CPU0:
=====
Selection point: ETH_RXMUX (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:27 ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: T0-SEL-B T4-SEL-A
  Router scoped : None
Uses frequency selection
S Input Last Selection Point QL Pri Status

```



```

== =====
1 HundredGigE0/5/0/2 n/a PRC 1 Available

Selection point: LC_TX_SELECT (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 6d04h ago, and selection made 6d04h ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped : None
  Node scoped : None
  Chassis scoped: None
  Router scoped : None
Uses frequency selection
Used for local line interface output
S Input Last Selection Point QL Pri Status
== =====
24 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0] 0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1 PRC 1 Available

```

## Configuring Global Profile

This procedure describes the steps involved to create a global configuration profile for a PTP interface that can then be assigned to any interface as required.

1. To enter the PTP configuration mode, use **ptp** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ptp
```

2. To configure a PTP profile, use **profile** command in the ptp configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ptp)# profile tp64
```

3. To configure frequency for a Sync message for the given PTP profile, use **sync frequency rate** command in the ptp-profile configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ptp-profile)# sync frequency 16
```

4. To configure delay-request frequency for the given PTP profile, use **delay-request frequency rate** command in the ptp-profile configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ptp-profile)# delay-request frequency 16
```

### Verification

To display the configured PTP profile details, use **show run ptp** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run ptp
```

```

Wed Feb 28 11:16:05.943 UTC
ptp
clock
  domain 24
  profile g.8275.1 clock-type T-BC
!
profile slave
  transport ethernet
  sync frequency 16
  announce interval 1
  delay-request frequency 16

```

```

!
profile master
  transport ethernet
  sync frequency 16
  announce interval 1
  delay-request frequency 16
!
profile slave1
  transport ethernet
  sync frequency 64
  announce interval 1
  delay-request frequency 64
!

```

## Configuring PTP Slave Interface

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure a PTP interface to be a Slave.

1. To configure an interface, use **interface** *interface-path-id* command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
```

2. To enter the PTP configuration mode for the given interface, use **ptp** command in the interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ptp
```

3. To configure a PTP profile (or specify a previously defined profile), use **profile** *name* command in the ptp interface configuration mode.



### Note

Any additional commands entered in ptp-interface configuration mode overrides the global profile settings.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# profile tp64
```

4. To configure the transport mode for all PTP messages in the given PTP profile, use **transport** *mode\_type* command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# transport ipv4
```

5. To configure timeout for PTP announce messages in the given PTP profile, use **announce** *interval interval-value* command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# announce interval 1
```

6. To configure the port state, use **port state** command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# port state slave-only
```

7. To configure IPv4 or IPv6 address for PTP master, use **master** *ipv4|ipv6 address* command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# master ipv4 192.168.2.1
```

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# master ipv6 2001:DB8::1
```

8. To return to the interface configuration mode, use **exit** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# exit
```

9. To configure a gateway for the given interface, use **ipv4 address address mask** command in the interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 1.7.1.2 255.255.255.0
```

### Verification

To verify the port state details, use **show run interface interface-name** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
```

```
Fri Aug 3 19:57:14.184 UTC
interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
 ptp
  profile tp64
  transport ipv4
  port state slave-only
  master ipv4 192.168.2.1
  !
  announce interval 1
  !
  ipv4 address 1.7.1.1 255.255.255.0
  !
```

## Configuring PTP Master Interface

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure a PTP interface to be a Master.

1. To configure an interface, use **interface type interface-path-id** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
```

2. To enter the PTP configuration mode for the given interface, use **ptp** command in the interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ptp
```

3. To configure a PTP profile (or specify a previously defined profile), use **profile name** command in the ptp interface configuration mode.



#### Note

Any additional commands entered in PTP interface configuration mode override settings in this profile.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# profile tp64
```

4. To configure the transport mode for all PTP messages in the given PTP profile, use **transport mode\_type** command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# transport ipv4
```

5. To configure timeout for PTP announce messages in the given PTP profile, use **announce interval interval-value** command in the ptp interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# announce interval 1
```

6. To return to the interface configuration mode, use **exit** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# exit
```

7. To configure a gateway for the given interface, use **ipv4 address address mask** command in the interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 1.7.1.2 255.255.255.0
```

### Verification

To verify the port state details, use **show run interface interface-name** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
```

```
Fri Aug 3 13:57:44.366 PST
interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
 ptp
  profile tp64
  transport ipv4
  !
  announce interval 1
  !
  ipv4 address 1.7.1.2 255.255.255.0
  !
```

## Configuring Clock Interface for a PTP Master

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure a Clock interface for a Master.

1. To configure a clock interface, use **clock-interface sync value location node** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# clock-interface sync 1 location 0/RSP0/CPU0
```

2. To configure port parameters for the given clock interface, use **port-parameters dti** command in the clock-interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clock-if)# port-parameters dti
```

3. To enable frequency synchronization, use **frequency synchronization** command in the clock-interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clock-if) # frequency synchronization
```

4. To configure selection input for the given clock interface, use **selection input** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync) # selection input
```

5. To configure priority for the clock interface, use **priority number** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync) # priority 1
```

6. To configure wait-to-restore time for the clock interface, use **wait-to-restore number** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync) # wait-to-restore 0
```

7. To disable SSM packets for the clock interface, use **ssm disable** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync) # ssm disable
```

8. To configure quality settings for the clock interface, use **quality receive exact itu-t option number generation number PRS** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync) # quality receive exact itu-t option 2  
generation 2 PRS
```

### Verification

To display the current running configuration of an interface, use **show run clock-interface** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run clock-interface sync 1 location 0/RSP0/CPU0

clock-interface sync 1 location 0/RSP0/CPU0
port-parameters
    dti
!
frequency synchronization
    selection input
    priority 1
    wait-to-restore 0
    ssm disable
    quality receive exact itu-t option 2 generation 2 PRC
!
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router#
```

## Configuring PTP Hybrid Mode

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure router in a hybrid mode. You can do this by selecting PTP for Time-of-Day (ToD) and another source for frequency.

1. To enable frequency synchronization on the router, use **frequency synchronization** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# frequency synchronization
```

2. To configure a SyncE source, create an interface to be a SyncE input. This can be configured using **interface** command in the configuration mode.

**Note**

The time-of-day-priority setting specifies that SyncE to be used as a ToD source if there is no source available with a lower priority.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/0
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# frequency synchronization
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# selection input
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# time-of-day-priority 100
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-freqsync)# commit
```

3. To configure PTP as the source for ToD, enable PTP on the router using **ptp** command in command in the configuration mode. ToD priority values can range from 1 (highest priority) to 254 (lowest priority).

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ptp
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ptp)# time-of-day-priority 1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit
```

4. To configure a PTP interface, use **interface** command in configuration mode. To enable this interface as a PTP Master, use **master** command in ptp-interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 0/1/0/1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.0.0.1/24
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ptp
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# master ipv4 10.0.0.2
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if-ptp)# commit
```

**Verification**

To display the frequency synchronization selection, use **show frequency synchronization selection** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show frequency synchronization selection
Node 0/RSP1/CPU0:
=====
Selection point: T0-SEL-B (3 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped      : None
  Node scoped     : T4-SEL-C CHASSIS-TOD-SEL
  Chassis scoped  : LC_TX_SELECT
  Router scoped   : None
Uses frequency selection
Used for local line interface output
S   Input                               Last Selection Point          QL  Pri  Status
==  =====
=====
```

```

1 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]      n/a                PRC    1   Locked
  HundredGigE0/5/0/2      0/5/CPU0 ETH_RXMUX 1    PRC    1   Available
  Internal0 [0/RSP1/CPU0]  n/a                SEC   255  Available

```

Selection point: T4-SEL-A (1 inputs, 1 selected)

Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago

Next selection points

```

SPA scoped    : None
Node scoped   : T4-SEL-C
Chassis scoped: None
Router scoped : None

```

Uses frequency selection

S	Input	Last Selection Point	QL	Pri	Status
1	HundredGigE0/5/0/2	0/5/CPU0 ETH_RXMUX 1	PRC	1	Available

Selection point: T4-SEL-C (2 inputs, 1 selected)

Last programmed 06:49:15 ago, and selection made 06:49:15 ago

Next selection points

```

SPA scoped    : None
Node scoped   : None
Chassis scoped: None
Router scoped : None

```

Uses frequency selection

Used for local clock interface output

S	Input	Last Selection Point	QL	Pri	Status
1	Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]	0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1	PRC	1	Locked
	HundredGigE0/5/0/2	0/RSP1/CPU0 T4-SEL-A 1	PRC	1	Available

Selection point: CHASSIS-TOD-SEL (1 inputs, 1 selected)

Last programmed 6d04h ago, and selection made 6d04h ago

Next selection points

```

SPA scoped    : None
Node scoped   : None
Chassis scoped: None
Router scoped : None

```

Uses time-of-day selection

S	Input	Last Selection Point	Pri	Time	Status
1	Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]	0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1	100	Yes	Available

Node 0/3/CPU0:

=====

Selection point: ETH\_RXMUX (0 inputs, 0 selected)

Last programmed 9w6d ago, and selection made 9w6d ago

Next selection points

```

SPA scoped    : None
Node scoped   : None
Chassis scoped: T0-SEL-B T4-SEL-A
Router scoped : None

```

Uses frequency selection

Selection point: LC\_TX\_SELECT (1 inputs, 1 selected)

Last programmed 9w6d ago, and selection made 9w6d ago

Next selection points

```

SPA scoped    : None
Node scoped   : None
Chassis scoped: None
Router scoped : None

```

Uses frequency selection

Used for local line interface output

S	Input	Last Selection Point	QL	Pri	Status
---	-------	----------------------	----	-----	--------

```

24 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]          0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1      PRC      1  Available

Node 0/5/CPU0:
=====
Selection point: ETH_RXMUX (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 06:49:27 ago, and selection made 06:49:27 ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped      : None
  Node scoped     : None
  Chassis scoped: T0-SEL-B T4-SEL-A
  Router scoped  : None
Uses frequency selection
S  Input          Last Selection Point          QL  Pri  Status
== =====
1  HundredGigE0/5/0/2      n/a                      PRC   1  Available

Selection point: LC_TX_SELECT (1 inputs, 1 selected)
Last programmed 6d04h ago, and selection made 6d04h ago
Next selection points
  SPA scoped      : None
  Node scoped     : None
  Chassis scoped: None
  Router scoped  : None
Uses frequency selection
Used for local line interface output
S  Input          Last Selection Point          QL  Pri  Status
== =====
24 Sync1 [0/RSP1/CPU0]      0/RSP1/CPU0 T0-SEL-B 1      PRC   1  Available

```

## Configuring GPS Settings for a Grand Master Clock

This procedure describes the steps involved to configure GPS settings for a PTP Grandmaster clock.

1. To configure a clock interface, use **clock-interface sync port-number location interface-location** command in the configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# clock-interface sync 2 location 0/RSP0/CPU0
```

2. To configure port parameters for the given clock interface, use **port-parameters** command in the clock-interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clock-if)# port-parameters
```

3. To configure GPS input parameters, use **gps-input tod-format gprmc pps-input ttl** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-parms)# gps-input tod-format
gprmc pps-input ttl
```

4. To return to the clock-interface configuration mode, use **exit** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-parms)# exit
```

5. To enable frequency synchronization, use **frequency synchronization** command in the clock-interface configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clock-if)# frequency synchronization
```



6. To configure selection input for the given clock interface, use **selection input** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# selection input
```

7. To configure priority for the clock interface, use **priority number** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# priority 10
```

8. To configure wait-to-restore time for the clock interface, use **wait-to-restore number** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# wait-to-restore 0
```

9. To disable SSM packets for the clock interface, use **ssm disable** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# ssm disable
```

10. To configure quality settings for the clock interface, use **quality receive exact itu-t option number generation number PRS** command in the frequency-synchronization clock-configuration mode.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-clk-freqsync)# quality receive exact itu-t option 2  
generation 2 PRS
```

### Verification

To verify the configured GPS parameters, use **show run clock-interface** command.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run clock-interface sync 2 location 0/RSP0/CPU0

clock-interface sync 2 location 0/RSP0/CPU0
port-parameters
gps-input tod-format gprmc pps-input ttl
!
```

## Configuration Examples

### Slave Configuration Example

The following example shows a PTP slave configuration:

```
interface TenGigE 0/1/0/5
 ptp
  profile tp64
  transport ipv4
  port state slave-only
  master ipv4 1.7.1.2
  !
 announce interval 1
```

```

!
ipv4 address 1.7.1.1 255.255.255.0
!

```

## Master Configuration Example

This example shows a PTP master configuration:

```

ptp
 profile tp64
 transport ipv4
 announce interval 1
!
ipv4 address 1.7.1.2 255.255.255.0
!

```

## GPS Configuration Example

This example shows the GPS configuration for PTP.

```

clock-interface sync 2 location 0/RSP0/CPU0
port-parameters
 gps-input tod-format gprmc pps-input ttl
!
frequency synchronization
 selection input
 priority 2
 wait-to-restore 0
 ssm disable
 quality receive exact itu-t option 2 generation 2 PRS
!
!

```

## PTP Hybrid Mode Configuration Example

This example shows the configuration of PTP hybrid mode:

```

ptp
 time-of-day priority 10
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/1/0
 ptp
 transport ipv4
 port state slave-only
 master ipv4 192.168.52.38
!
 sync frequency 64
 announce interval 1
 delay-request frequency 64
!
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/0/1

```

```
ipv4 address 192.168.52.41 255.255.255.0
speed 100
frequency synchronization
selection input
priority 10
wait-to-restore 0
ssm disable
time-of-day-priority 100
!
```





## CHAPTER 12

# Configuring Network Configuration Protocol

This module provides details of the Network Configuration Protocol. For relevant commands, see *System Security Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

Release	Modification
Release 5.3.0	This feature was introduced.
Release 5.3.1	Support extended for more Yang models.
Release 6.0	Support extended for the Netconf subsystem configuration to be vrf aware. The configuration of the netconf port is no longer sufficient to start the Netconf subsystem support. At least one vrf needs to be configured. The configuration of the port is now optional.

- [The Network Configuration Protocol](#), on page 259
- [Netconf and Yang](#) , on page 261
- [Supported Yang Models](#) , on page 262
- [Denial of Services Defence for Netconf-Yang](#), on page 262
- [Dynamic Loading of Operational Yang Models](#), on page 263
- [Enabling NETCONF over SSH](#), on page 263
- [Additional Reference](#) , on page 265

## The Network Configuration Protocol

The Network Configuration Protocol (Netconf) provides mechanisms to install, manipulate, and delete the configuration of network devices. It uses an Extensible Markup Language (XML)-based data encoding for the configuration data as well as the protocol messages. Yang is a data modeling language used with Netconf.

Netconf uses a simple RPC-based (Remote Procedure Call) mechanism to facilitate communication between a client and a server. The client can be a script or application typically running as part of a network manager. The server is typically a network device.

The configuration of features need not be done the traditional way (using CLIs), the client application (controller) reads the Yang model and communicates with the Netconf server (IOS XR) accordingly.

## Netconf Sessions and Operations

A Netconf session is the logical connection between a network configuration application and a network device. A device should be capable of supporting multiple sessions and atleast one Netconf session.

Characteristics of a netconf session:

- Netconf is connection-oriented - SSH or TLS can be the underlying transport.
- The netconf client establishes session with the server.
- Netconf sessions are established with the *hello* message. Features and capabilities are announced.
- Sessions can be terminated using the *close* or *kill* messages.

Basic Netconf operations:

- Get configuration <get-config>
- Get all information <get>
- Edit configuration <edit-config>
- Copy configuration <copy-config>




---

**Note** <copy-config> does not support source attribute with “data store” at present.

---

- Delete configuration <delete-config>
- <lock>, <unlock>
- <kill-session>
- <close-session>
- Commit configuration <commit>

## The Yang data model

Each feature has a defined Yang Model which is synthesized from the schemas. A model is published in a tree format and includes:

- Top level nodes and their subtrees
- Subtrees that augment nodes in other yang models

```
Example: The aaa Yang model
module: Cisco-IOS-XR-aaa-lib-cfg
  +--rw aaa
    +--rw accountings
      | +--rw accounting* [type listname]
      |   +--rw type                xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
      |   +--rw listname             xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
      |   +--rw rp-failover?         Aaa-accounting-rp-failover
      |   +--rw broadcast?          Aaa-accounting-broadcast
      |   +--rw type-xr?             Aaa-accounting
```

```

|      +--rw method*                AAA-method
|      +--rw server-group-name*     string
+--rw authorizations
|  +--rw authorization* [type listname]
|  |      +--rw type                xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
|  |      +--rw listname            xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
|  |      +--rw method*            AAA-method
|  |      +--rw server-group-name*  string
+--rw accounting-update!
|  +--rw type                        AAA-accounting-update
|  +--rw periodic-interval?         uint32
+--rw authentications
|  +--rw authentication* [type listname]
|  |      +--rw type                xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
|  |      +--rw listname            xr:Cisco-ios-xr-string
|  |      +--rw method*            AAA-method
|  |      +--rw server-group-name*  string

```

Advantages of using the Yang model are:

- Yang supports programmatic interfaces.
- Yang supports simplified network management applications.
- Yang supports interoperability that provides a standard way to model management data.

## Netconf and Yang

The workflow displayed here, will help the user to understand how Netconf-Yang can configure and control the network with minimal user intervention. The required components:

- Cisco Router (ASR9000 series or CRS) with Netconf capability
- Netconf Client Application with connection to the router

S. No.	Device / component	Action
1	Cisco router (ASR 9000 or CRS router)	Login/ access the router.
2	Cisco router	Prerequisites for enabling Netconf. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• k9sec pie must be installed.</li> <li>• Crypto keys must be generated.</li> </ul>
3	Cisco router	Enable Netconf agent. Use the <b>netconf-yang agent ssh</b> and <b>ssh server netconf</b> command. The port can be selected. By default, it is set as 830.
4	Cisco router	Yang models are a part of the software image. The models can be retrieved from the router , using the <get-schema> operation.

S. No.	Device / component	Action
5	Netconf client (application)  The application can be on any standalone application or a SDN controller supporting Netconf	<p>Installs and processes the Yang models.</p> <p>The client can offer a list of supported yang models; else the user will have to browse and locate the required yang file.</p> <p>There is a yang model file for each configuration module; for instance if the user wants to configure CDP , the relevant yang model is Cisco-IOS-XR-cdp-cfg</p> <p><b>Note</b> Refer the table which lists all the supported yang models. <a href="#">Supported Yang Models</a> , on page 262</p>
5	Netconf client	Sends Netconf operation request over SSH to the router. A configuration request could include Yang-based XML data to the router. Currently, SSH is the only supported transport method.
6	Cisco router	Understands the Yang-based XML data and the network is configured accordingly (in case of configuration request from the client).
		The interactions between the client and the router happens until the network is configured as desired.

## Supported Yang Models

The Yang models can be downloaded from a prescribed location (ftp server) or can also be retrieved directly from the router using the get-schema operation.

For a feature, separate Yang models are available for configuring the feature and to get operational statistics (show commands). The **-cfg.yang** suffix denotes configuration and **-oper\*.yang** is for operational data statistics. In some cases, **-oper** is followed by **-sub**, indicating that a submodule(s) is available.

For a list of supported Yang models, see <https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xr>

## Denial of Services Defence for Netconf-Yang

In case of a DoS (Denial of Service) attack on Netconf, wherein, Netconf receives numerous requests in a short span of time, the router may become irresponsive if Netconf consumes most of the bandwidth or CPU processing time. This can be prevented, by limiting the traffic directed at the Netconf agent. This is achieved using the **netconf-yang agent rate-limit** and **netconf-yang agent session** commands.

If rate-limit is set, the Netconf processor measures the incoming traffic from the SSH server. If the incoming traffic exceeds the set rate-limit, the packets are dropped.

If session-limit is set, the Netconf processor checks for the number of open sessions. If the number of current sessions is greater than or equal to, the set limit, no new sessions are opened.



Session idle- timeout and absolute-timeout also prevent DoS attacks. The Netconf processor closes the sessions, even without user input or intervention, as soon as the time out session is greater than or equal to the set time limit.

The relevant commands are discussed in detail, in the *System Security Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*

## Dynamic Loading of Operational Yang Models

Netconf is enhanced to pre-load only the configurational yang models in memory, when it starts. The operational yang models are loaded into memory only when a request is issued. This helps reduce consumption of the RAM memory.

## Enabling NETCONF over SSH

This task enables NETCONF over SSH. SSH is currently the only supported transport method .

If the client supports, Netconf over ssh can utilize the multi-channeling capabilities of IOS XR ssh server. For additional details about Multi-channeling in SSH, see *Implementing Secure Shell* in *System Security Configuration Guide*.

### Prerequisites:

- k9sec pie must be installed, otherwise the port configuration for the netconf ssh server cannot be completed. (The Netconf subsystem for SSH, as well as, SSH cannot be configured without the k9sec pie.)
- Crypto keys must be generated prior to this configuration.
- The Netconf-YANG feature is packaged in the mgbl pie, which must be installed before enabling the Netconf-YANG agent.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **netconf-yang agent ssh**
3. **ssh server netconf** [ *vrf vrf-name* [ *ipv4 access-list* *ipv4 access list name* ] [ *ipv6 access-list* *ipv6 access list name* ] ]
4. **ssh server netconf port** *port-number*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>netconf-yang agent ssh</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>netconf agent ssh</b>	Enables NETCONF agent over SSH connection. After NETCONF is enabled, the Yang model in the controller, can configure the relevant models.  <b>Note</b> The Yang models can be retrieved from the router via NETCONF <get-schema> operation.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>ssh server netconf</b> [ <b>vrf vrf-name</b> [ <b>ipv4 access-list</b> <i>ipv4 access list name</i> ] [ <b>ipv6 access-list</b> <i>ipv6 access list name</i> ]]  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>ssh server netconf vrf netconfvrf ipv4 access-list InternetFilter</b>	<p>Brings up the netconf subsystem support with SSH server using a specified VRF of up to 32 characters. If no VRF is specified, the default VRF is used. To stop the SSH server from receiving any further connections for the specified VRF, use the <b>no</b> form of this command.</p> <p>Optionally ACLs for IPv4 and IPv6 can be used to restrict access to the netconf subsystem of the ssh server before the port is opened.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The netconf subsystem support with SSH server can be configured for use with multiple VRFs .</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>ssh server netconf port</b> <i>port-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>ssh server netconf port 830</b>	<p>Configures a port for the netconf ssh server. This command is optional. If no port is specified, port 830 is used by default.</p> <p><b>Note</b> 830 is the IANA-assigned TCP port for NETCONF over SSH, but it can be changed using this command.</p>

### What to do next

The **show netconf-yang statistics** command and **show netconf-yang clients** command can be used to verify the configuration details of the netconf agent.

The **clear netconf-yang agent session** command clears the specified Netconf session (on the Netconf server side).

## Examples: Netconf over SSH

This section illustrates some examples relevant to Netconf:

### Enabling netconf-yang for ssh transport and netconf subsystem for default vrf with default port (830)

```
config
netconf-yang agent ssh
ssh server netconf vrf default
!
```

### Enabling netconf-yang for ssh transport and netconf subsystem for vrf *green* and vrf *red* with netconf port (831)

```
config
netconf-yang agent ssh
!
ssh server netconf vrf green
ssh server netconf vrf red
ssh server netconf port 831
!
```

## Show command outputs

```

show netconf-yang statistics
Summary statistics
requests|          total time|    min time per request|    max
time per request|    avg time per request|
other          0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
close-session   4|          0h 0m 0s 3ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 1ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
kill-session    0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
get-schema      0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
get             0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
get-config      1|          0h 0m 0s 1ms|          0h 0m 0s 1ms|
  0h 0m 0s 1ms|          0h 0m 0s 1ms|
edit-config     3|          0h 0m 0s 2ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 1ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
commit          0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
cancel-commit   0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
lock            0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
unlock          0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
discard-changes 0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
validate        0|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|
  0h 0m 0s 0ms|          0h 0m 0s 0ms|

show netconf-yang clients
client session ID|    NC version|    client connect time|    last OP time|    last
OP type|    <lock>|
22969|          1.1|          0d 0h 0m 2s|          11:11:24|
close-session|          No|
15389|          1.1|          0d 0h 0m 1s|          11:11:25|          get-config|
          No|

```

# Additional Reference

**Table 34: Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
Netconf-Yang	For related commands, see <i>System Security Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

**Table 35: Standards**

Component	RFCs
YANG	6020
NETCONF	6241

Component	RFCs
NETCONF over SSH	6242



## CHAPTER 13

# Configuring Open Flow Agent

OpenFlow is a specification from the Open Networking Foundation (ONF) that defines a flowbased forwarding infrastructure (L2-L4 Ethernet switch model) and a standardized application programmatic interface (protocol definition) to learn capabilities, add and remove flow control entries and request statistics. OpenFlow allows a controller to direct the forwarding functions of a switch through a secure channel.

This module has details about the Open Flow Agent, relevant concepts and configurations.

**Table 36: Feature History for Implementing OFACisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 5.1.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 5.3.4	OnePK support was discontinued.

- [OpenFlow](#), on page 268
- [OpenFlow Agent Packet In and Out Feature](#), on page 270
- [OpenFlow Agent with NetFlow Collection and Analytics](#), on page 271
- [OFA on Cisco Routers and Switches](#), on page 272
- [Functional Components](#), on page 272
- [OFA on ASR 9000 series routers](#), on page 272
- [OpenFlow Matches](#), on page 272
- [OpenFlow Actions](#), on page 275
- [Cisco Extension Actions](#), on page 276
- [Set Field Actions](#), on page 277
- [Configuring OneP for Openflow](#), on page 279
- [Configuring a Layer 2 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent](#), on page 280
- [Configuring a Layer 2\\_Layer 3 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent](#), on page 281
- [Configuring a Layer 3\\_VRF Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent](#), on page 283
- [Configuring a Layer 3\\_Dual-stack Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent](#), on page 284
- [Enabling TLS](#) , on page 285
- [Configuring NetFlow for the OpenFlow Agent](#), on page 286
- [Configuration Examples: Openflow](#), on page 289
- [Usecase for Layer2](#), on page 291
- [Usecase for Layer3](#), on page 291

# OpenFlow

Openflow is an open standard to communicate between controllers, which are running applications and network elements (such as, routers and switches).

For details regarding OpenFlow, please refer the OpenFlow chapter in the *System Management Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.

## An overview of OFA

OpenFlow is a specification from the Open Networking Foundation (ONF) that defines a flowbased forwarding infrastructure (L2-L4 Ethernet switch model) and a standardized application programmatic interface (protocol definition) to learn capabilities, add and remove flow control entries and request statistics. OpenFlow allows a controller to direct the forwarding functions of a switch through a secure channel. Local device configuration is out of scope of the OpenFlow protocol. OpenFlow essentially provides a forwarding instruction set, allowing applications to directly program any-to-any routing and switching, with header field rewrite. New matches and actions can be applied to packets in arbitrary unconstrained fashion, allowing routing and switching on the new criteria. Routers and switches embed the fast packet forwarding and the high level routing decisions together into their software on the same device. With only a few exceptions based on user configuration, all routing and switching decisions are made by the built-in protocols and control plane logic that reside on the switch.

## Prerequisites for OpenFlow Agent

The following prerequisites are required to use the OpenFlow agent on the platforms supporting IOS-XR:

- Special build of the Release 5.1.x software that has the OpenFlow functionality is required.
- The Enhanced Ethernet line card for the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router is required for the OpenFlow agent feature.
- Any controller with version 1.1 or 1.3 is required (example, POX, ODL ).
- The asr9k-k9sec Package Installation Envelope (PIE) must be present. The asr9k-mpls PIE is required for support on MPLS core (such as, PWHE).

## Restrictions for OpenFlow Agent

- Same interface cannot be added to more than one logical open flow switch.
- No support for output as an action for layer3 openflow logical switch (such as pipeline131, 132).
- Only layer 3 interface support for netflow sampling statistics.

## Advantages

The advantages with Open Flow Agent are:

- increases network scalability
- reduces network complexity
- allows greater application control

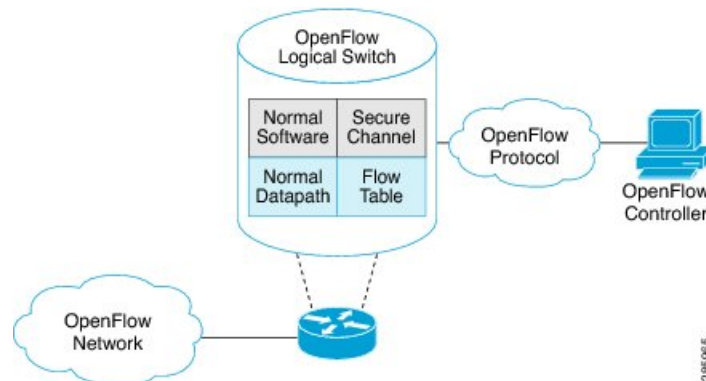
- enables customer-feature-independence

## About OpenFlow

The OpenFlow protocol is based on the concept of an Ethernet switch, with an internal flow-table and standardized interface to allow traffic flows on a switch to be added or removed. The OpenFlow protocol defines the communications channel between the OpenFlow agent and the OpenFlow controller. In an OpenFlow network, the OpenFlow Agent exists on the switch and the OpenFlow controller exists on a server, which is external to the switch. Any network management is either part of the controller or accomplished through the controller.

In the Cisco OpenFlow scheme, the physical switch is divided into multiple logical switches by using the CLI to configure the connection to the controller for each logical switch and enable interfaces for each logical switch. The Openflow Agent software manages these logical switches.

The following figure shows the Cisco implementation of the OpenFlow network.



## Openflow Mode for ASR9000

Openflow for the Cisco ASR 9000 Series router functions in the Integrated Hybrid mode. In this mode, both Openflow and normal switching and routing (for layer 3) operations such as L2 ethernet switching, L3 routing, etc are supported. Packets processed as the Openflow forwarding path can be processed as a normal forwarding path.

## OpenFlow Table Types

An OpenFlow flow table consists of a set of flows. Each flow contains a set of matches and actions. A table has a set of capabilities in terms of supported matches and actions. Just like a policy-map, a table can be applied to a set of targets but only in the ingress direction. Hence, OpenFlow matches and actions are applied to the incoming traffic only.



### Note

A set of ordered tables is referred to as a pipeline. A pipeline may contain one or more ordered tables. An OpenFlow pipeline of an OpenFlow switch on ASR9K supports only one flow table.

Table 37: OpenFlow Table Types

Table Type	Pipeline	Supported Interfaces	Description
L2	129	Bridge-domain, Gigabit ethernet, Bundle, Bundle-subinterfaces, PWHE-subinterfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supports L2 header matches.</li> <li>• Supports L2 actions.</li> <li>• Can be applied to the ingress L2 interfaces.</li> </ul>
L2_L3	130	Bridge-domain, Gigabit ethernet, Bundle, Bundle-subinterfaces, PWHE-subinterfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supports L2 and L3 (IPv4/IPv6) header matches.</li> <li>• Supports L2 actions.</li> <li>• Can be applied to the ingress L2 interfaces.</li> </ul>
L3_V4	131	VRF and global interfaces, BVI (ipv4 only), Bridge-domain, Gigabit ethernet, Bundle, Bundle-subinterfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supports L3 (IPv4) header matches.</li> <li>• Supports L3 (IPv4) actions.</li> <li>• Can be applied to the ingress L3 interfaces.</li> </ul>
L3_DS	132	VRF and global interfaces, BVI, Bridge-domain, Gigabit ethernet, Bundle, Bundle-subinterfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supports L2 and L3 (IPv4/IPv6) header matches.</li> <li>• Supports L3 (IPv4/IPv6) actions.</li> <li>• Can be applied to the ingress L3 interfaces.</li> </ul>

- L2 Table--Supports L2 header matches and has L2 actions only. This table type can be applied to the ingress of an L2 interface.
- L2\_L3 Table--Supports L2 and L3 header matches and has L2 actions only. Match parameters can be IPv4 or IPv6 type. This table type can be applied to the ingress of an L2 interface.
- L3\_V4 Table--Supports L3 IPv4 header matches and has L3 actions only. This table type can be applied to the ingress of L3 interfaces.
- L3\_DS(Dual Stack) Table--Supports L2 and L3 IPv4 and IPv6 (Dual Stack) matches and has L3 actions only. This table type can be applied to the ingress of L3 interfaces.

## OpenFlow Agent Packet In and Out Feature

The Packet In and Out feature allows a flow to be programmed by the OpenFlow Agent logical switch so that packets are sent to the Controller. The special output port: **OFP\_CONTROLLER** is specified for the flow action.

The Packet In and Out feature enables support for the OpenFlow output-to-port action. The output action tells the OpenFlow Agent to send all packets matching the flow to a specific port.



# OpenFlow Agent with NetFlow Collection and Analytics

Applications can be provided with on-demand analytics by using the OpenFlow protocol with NetFlow. NetFlow provides statistics on packets flowing through the router, and is the standard for acquiring IP operational data from IP networks.

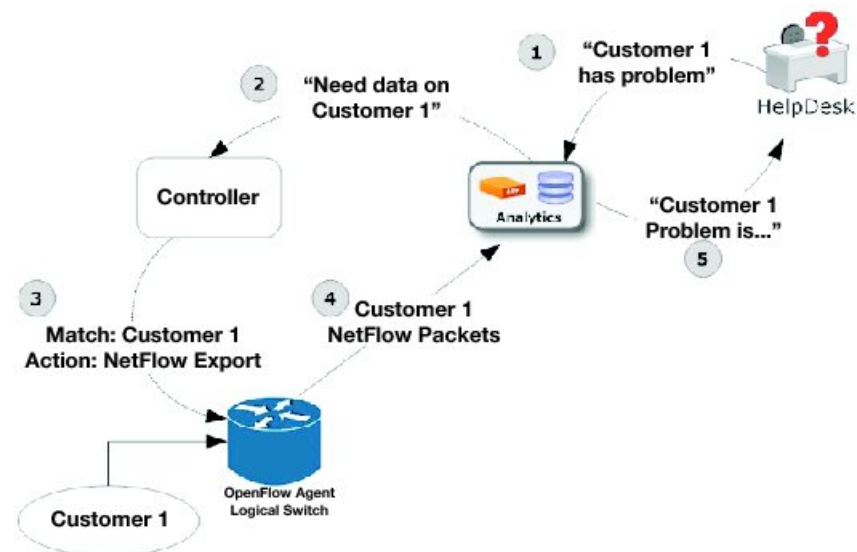
The following NetFlow maps must be configured:

- Flow Exporter Map—Specifies the destination IP address of the NetFlow collector where the NetFlow Version 9 packets are sent.
- Flow Monitor Map—Specifies the profile of the NetFlow producer, including the timeout values of active and inactive timers, size of the NetFlow cache and the exporter to be used.
- Sampler Map—Specifies how often Network Processor (NPU) needs to sample incoming and outgoing packets and create flow-packets to punt to the Line Card (LC) Central Processing Unit (CPU).

The following parameters must be specified on the OpenFlow Agent logical switch:

- Interface associated with the OpenFlow Agent logical switch that is enabled for NetFlow.
- Flow Monitor Map
- Sampler Map
- Controller IP address

**Figure 9: OpenFlow Agent and NetFlow collection and analytics workflow**



1. The help desk application tells the analytics application that Customer 1 has a problem.
2. The analytics application determines that it requires more information and requests more network data about Customer 1 from the Controller.
3. The Controller instructs the OpenFlow logical switch on the router to look for Customer 1 packets and generate and export NetFlow data based on Customer 1 packet flows.

4. The OpenFlow Agent logical switch exports NetFlow packets to the analytics application where they are processed.
5. The analytics application informs the help desk application of the problem.

## OFA on Cisco Routers and Switches

OpenFlow SDN Applications expect network elements to speak standard OpenFlow protocol and to implement standard OpenFlow switch model. The OpenFlow Agent as a local process provides:

- OF protocol stack
- OF switch model derived from disparate Cisco software and hardware
- Version, model and feature negotiation
- Local aggregation of state and statistics
- Native dedicated CLI and troubleshooting
- High Availability

## Functional Components

OpenFlow supports the configuration of multiple controllers for a logical switch. The Openflow agent can connect to a single controller or up to 8 controllers. It creates connections to all configured controllers to provide the controllers access to the OpenFlow logical switch flow tables and interfaces. It will receive flow entries from the controllers and report interface and flow status and statistics to the controllers.

The set nexthop action for layer 3 matches is implemented through a Cisco extension to the OpenFlow (1.0 and 1.3) protocol.

## OFA on ASR 9000 series routers

The OpenFlow Agent supports multiple logical switch instances on ASR9K platform, with each logical switch managing a set of physical/logical interfaces, an L2 bridge domain or a VRF. Each logical switch may have one openflow connection to a single controller, or multiple connects for reliability, each to a different controller. The openflow connection to the controller uses standard TLS or plain TCP.

When the logical switch initialises a connection to the configured controller, the signaling version for the agent-controller connection is negotiated based on the bitmap version supported on both- agent and controller sides. When a logical switch starts up for the first time or at the time a logical switch loses contact with all controllers, it operates in either fail-secure mode (with default-set rule) or fail-standalone mode depending on the CLI of fail-standalone (on or off). The default for configuration is in the fail-secure mode.

## OpenFlow Matches

Matches are supported on ingress port and various packet headers depending upon the packet type. Flows can have priorities. Hence, the highest priority flow entry that matches the packet gets selected.

Following table shows the list of matches supported on ASR9K for various table types:

OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OXM Flow match field type for OpenFlow basic class	Description	L2 only	L2_L3	L3_V4	L3_DS
OFPXMT_OFB_IN_PORT	Switch input port	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IN_PHY_PORT	Switch physical port	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_METADATA	Metadata passed between tables	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_DST	Ethernet destination address	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_SRC	Ethernet source address	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_TYPE	Ethernet frame type	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_VLAN_VID	VLAN ID	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_VLAN_PCP	VLAN priority	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_DSCP	IP DSCP (6 bits in ToS field)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_ECN	IP ECN (2 bits in ToS field)	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_PROTO	IP protocol	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV4_SRC	IPv4 source address	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV4_DST	IPv4 destination address	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_TCP_SRC	TCP source port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_TCP_DST	TCP destination port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OFPXMT_OFB_UDP_SRC	UDP source port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_UDP_DST	UDP destination port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_SCTP_SRC	SCTP source port	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_SCTP_DST	SCTP destination port	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV4_TYPE	ICMP type	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV4_CODE	ICMP code	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_OP	ARP opcode	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_SPA	ARP source IPv4 address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_TPA	ARP target IPv4 address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_SHA	ARP source hardware address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_THA	ARP target hardware address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_SRC	IPv6 source address	No	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_DST	IPv6 destination address	No	Yes	No	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_LABEL	IPv6 Flow Label	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV6_TYPE	ICMPv6 type	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV6_CODE	ICMPv6 code	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_TARGET	Target address for ND	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_SLL	Source link-layer for ND	No	No	No	No

OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_TLL	Target link-layer for ND	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_LABEL	MPLS label	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_TC	MPLS TC	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_BOS	MPLS BoS bit	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_PBB_ISID	PBB I-SID	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_TUNNEL_ID	Logical Port Metadata	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_EXTHDR	IPv6 Extension Header pseudo-field	No	No	No	No

## OpenFlow Actions

Packet forwarding and packet modification types of actions are supported. The lists of actions are always immediately applied to the packet.



### Note

- Only “Apply-actions” instruction (OFPIT\_APPLY\_ACTIONS) of OpenFlow 1.3 is supported.
- Pipeline processing instructions that allow packets to be sent to subsequent tables for further processing are not supported in this release.
- Group tables and Meter tables are not supported.

Following table shows the list of action types supported on ASR9K for various table types.

OpenFlow Actions		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OXM Flow action field type for OpenFlow basic class	Description	L2 only	L2_L3	L3_V4	L3_DS
OFPAT_OUTPUT	Output to switch port.	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPAT_COPY_TTL_OUT	Copy TTL "outwards"	No	No	No	No

OpenFlow Actions		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OFPAT_COPY_TTL_IN	Copy TTL "inwards"	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_SET_MPLS_TTL	MPLS TTL	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_DEC_MPLS_TTL	Decrement MPLS TTL	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_PUSH_VLAN	Push a new VLAN tag	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPAT_POP_VLAN	Pop the outer VLAN tag	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPAT_PUSH_MPLS	Push a new MPLS tag	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_POP_MPLS	Pop the outer MPLS tag	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_SET_QUEUE	Set queue id when outputting to a port	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_GROUP	Apply group	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_SET_NW_TTL	IP TTL	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_DEC_NW_TTL	Decrement IP TTL	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_SET_FIELD	Set a header field using OXM TLV format	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
OFPAT_PUSH_PBB	Push a new PBB service tag (I-TAG)	No	No	No	No
OFPAT_POP_PBB	Pop the outer PBB service tag	No	No	No	No

## Cisco Extension Actions

The set ipv4 or set ipv6 nexthop actions are used to redirect an ipv4 or ipv6 packet to the specified nexthop address, instead of using the destination address in the packet. This provides ABF (ACL Based Forwarding) kind of functionality using OpenFlow. However, VRF support and nexthop tracking as supported by CLI based ABF feature is not supported in this release.

The set fcid (Forward Class ID) action can be used to support PBTS (Policy Based Tunnel Selection) functionality using OpenFlow.

Following table shows the list of actions added by Cisco to support some extra features on ASR9K.

Cisco proprietary actions		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OXM Flow match field type for OpenFlow basic class	Description	L2 only	L2_L3	L3_V4	L3_DS
Set Ipv4 Nexthop	Set ipv4 nexthop address	No	No	Yes	Yes
Set Ipv6 Nexthop	Set ipv6 nexthop address	No	No	No	Yes
Set Forward Class ID	Set forward class ID	No	No	Yes	Yes

## Set Field Actions

This table lists the set field actions supported by the Cisco ASR 9000 series router:

OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OXM Flow match field type for OpenFlow basic class	Description	L2 only	L2_L3	L3_V4	L3_DS
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_DST	Ethernet destination address	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_SRC	Ethernet source address	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ETH_TYPE	Ethernet frame type	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_VLAN_VID	VLAN ID	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_VLAN_PCP	VLAN priority	Yes	Yes	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_DSCP	IP DSCP (6 bits in ToS field)	No	No	Yes	Yes

OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_ECN	IP ECN (2 bits in ToS field)	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IP_PROTO	IP protocol	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV4_SRC	IPv4 source address	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV4_DST	IPv4 destination address	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_TCP_SRC	TCP source port	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_TCP_DST	TCP destination port	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_UDP_SRC	UDP source port	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_UDP_DST	UDP destination port	No	No	Yes	Yes
OFPXMT_OFB_SCTP_SRC	SCTP source port	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_SCTP_DST	SCTP destination port	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV4_TYPE	ICMP type	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV4_CODE	ICMP code	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_OP	ARP opcode	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_SPA	ARP source IPv4 address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_TPA	ARP target IPv4 address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_SHA	ARP source hardware address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ARP_THA	ARP target hardware address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_SRC	IPv6 source address	No	No	No	No



OpenFlow Matches		OpenFlow Switch Types Supported on ASR9K			
		Applied to L2 Bridge domain		Applied to L3 or L3 VRF interface	
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_DST	IPv6 destination address	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_LABEL	IPv6 Flow Label	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV6_TYPE	ICMPv6 type	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_ICMPV6_CODE	ICMPv6 code	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_TARGET	Target address for ND	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_SLL	Source link-layer for ND	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_ND_TLL	Target link-layer for ND	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_LABEL	MPLS label	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_TC	MPLS TC	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_MPLS_BOS	MPLS BoS bit	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_PBB_ISID	PBB I-SID	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_TUNNEL_ID	Logical Port Metadata	No	No	No	No
OFPXMT_OFB_IPV6_EXTHDR	IPv6 Extension Header pseudo-field	No	No	No	No

## Configuring OneP for Openflow

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **onep**
3. **datapath transport vpathudp sender-id *number***
4. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>onep</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>onep</b>	Enters the OneP configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>datapath transport vpathudp sender-id number</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>datapath transport vpathudp sender-id 1</b>	Configures the virtual-path udp transport datapath for the specified sender-id.
Step 4	<b>commit</b>	

# Configuring a Layer 2 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **openflow**
3. **switch switch-id pipeline pipeline-number**
4. **tls trust-point local local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name**
5. **bridge-group SDN-id bridge-domain switch-id**
6. **controller ipv4 ip-address security [tls | none]**
7. **commit**
8. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>openflow</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>openflow</b>	Enters the openflow configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>switch switch-id pipeline pipeline-number</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-openflow) # <b>switch 1 pipeline 129</b>	Enters the logical switch configuration mode. For L2-only switch, the pipeline number is 129.
Step 4	<b>tls trust-point local local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enters the TLS configuration mode. Configures the local and remote trustpoints.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp2</b>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bridge-group</b> <i>SDN-id</i> <b>bridge-domain</b> <i>switch-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-openflow) # <b>bridge-group</b> SDN-1 <b>bridge-domain</b> of2	Configures the bridge-domain for the openflow switch. For layer2, the bridge-domain can be configured in the openflow switch and the interfaces of the bridge-domain will be learnt by the openflow switch.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>controller ipv4</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>security</b> [tls   none] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>controller ipv4</b> 5.0.1.1 <b>port</b> 6633 <b>security</b> tls	Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Once the <b>controller</b> command is entered, a connection to the OpenFlow controller is started for the logical switch. The <b>tls</b> keyword enables the TLS connection, whereas the <b>none</b> keyword enables the TCP connection. <b>Note</b> The OpenFlow Agent can connect to a single Controller or up to 8 Controllers. Repeat this step if you need to configure additional Controllers. An openflow switch can communicate to multiple controllers ( the support for high-availability is a controller functionality).
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(logical-switch)# <b>commit</b>	Adds the Layer 2 logical switch configuration for the OpenFlow agent to the running configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>commit</b>	

### What to do next

Repeat these steps to configure another logical switch for the OpenFlow Agent.

## Configuring a Layer 2\_Layer 3 Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **openflow**
3. **switch** *switch -id* **pipeline** *pipeline-number*
4. **tls trust-point local** *local-tp-name* **remote** *remote-tp-name*
5. **bridge-group** *SDN-id* **bridge-domain** *switch-id*
6. **controller ipv4** *ip-address* **security** [tls | none]
7. **commit**
8. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>openflow</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>openflow</b>	Enters the openflow configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>switch switch-id pipeline pipeline-number</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow)# <b>switch 1 pipeline 130</b>	Enters the logical switch configuration mode. For L2_L3 switch, the pipeline number is 130.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>tls trust-point local local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp2</b>	Enters the TLS configuration mode. Configures the local and remote trustpoints.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>bridge-group SDN-id bridge-domain switch-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-openflow) # <b>bridge-group SDN-1 bridge-domain of2</b>	Configures a bridge-domain for the openflow switch.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>controller ipv4 ip-address security [tls   none]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>controller ipv4 5.0.1.1 port 6633 security tls</b>	Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch.  Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Once the <b>controller</b> command is entered, a connection to the OpenFlow controller is started for the logical switch. The <b>tls</b> keyword enables the TLS connection, whereas the <b>none</b> keyword enables the TCP connection.  <b>Note</b> The OpenFlow Agent can connect to a single Controller or up to 8 Controllers. Repeat this step if you need to configure additional Controllers. An openflow switch can communicate to multiple controllers ( the support for high-availability is a controller functionality).
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(logical-switch)# <b>commit</b>	Adds the Layer 2 logical switch configuration for the OpenFlow agent to the running configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## What to do next

Repeat these steps to configure another logical switch for the OpenFlow Agent.

# Configuring a Layer 3\_VRF Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **openflow**
3. **switch** *switch -id pipeline pipeline-number*
4. **vrf IPv4**
5. **tls trust-point local** *local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name*
6. **controller ipv4** *ip-address security [tls | none]*
7. **commit**
8. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>openflow</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>openflow</b>	Enters the openflow configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>switch</b> <i>switch -id pipeline pipeline-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow)# <b>switch 1 pipeline 131</b>	Enters the logical switch configuration mode. For L3_V4(VRF) switch, the pipeline number is 131.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>vrf IPv4</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>vrf IPv4</b>	VRF configuration. All the interfaces belonging to IPv4 VRF will be learnt by the openflow switch.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>tls trust-point local</b> <i>local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp2</b>	Enters the TLS configuration mode. Configures the local and remote trustpoints.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>controller ipv4</b> <i>ip-address security [tls   none]</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>controller ipv4 5.0.1.1 port 6633 security tls</b>	Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch.  Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Once the <b>controller</b> command is entered, a connection to the OpenFlow controller is started for the logical switch.  <b>Note</b> The OpenFlow Agent can connect to a single Controller or up to 8 Controllers. Repeat this step if you need to configure additional Controllers.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(logical-switch)# commit	Adds the Layer 2 logical switch configuration for the OpenFlow agent to the running configuration.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**What to do next**

Repeat these steps to configure another logical switch for the OpenFlow Agent.

## Configuring a Layer 3\_Dual-stack Logical Switch for the OpenFlow Agent

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure**
2. **openflow**
3. **switch** *switch -id pipeline pipeline-number*
4. **interface** *type interface-path-id*
5. **tls trust-point local** *local-tp-name remote remote-tp-name*
6. **bridge-group** *SDN-id bridge-domain switch-id*
7. **controller ipv4** *ip-address security [tls | none]*
8. **commit**
9. **commit**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>openflow</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>openflow</b>	Enters the openflow configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>switch</b> <i>switch -id pipeline pipeline-number</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow)# <b>switch 1 pipeline 132</b>	Enters the logical switch configuration mode. For L3_DS switch, the pipeline number is 132.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type interface-path-id</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow)# <b>interface Bundle-Ether2.1</b>	Interface configuration.  <b>Note</b> VRFs can be configured here. Both IPv4 and IPv6 VRFs are supported.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	<b>tls trust-point local</b> <i>local-tp-name</i> <b>remote</b> <i>remote-tp-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp2</b>	Enters the TLS configuration mode. Configures the local and remote trustpoints.
Step 6	<b>bridge-group</b> <i>SDN-id</i> <b>bridge-domain</b> <i>switch-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-openflow) # <b>bridge-group SDN-1 bridge-domain of2</b>	
Step 7	<b>controller ipv4</b> <i>ip-address</i> <b>security [tls   none]</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>controller ipv4 5.0.1.1 port 6633 security tls</b>	Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Configures the Openflow controller for the logical switch. Once the <b>controller</b> command is entered, a connection to the OpenFlow controller is started for the logical switch. <b>Note</b> The OpenFlow Agent can connect to a single Controller or up to 8 Controllers. Repeat this step if you need to configure additional Controllers.
Step 8	<b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(logical-switch)# <b>commit</b>	Adds the Layer 2 logical switch configuration for the OpenFlow agent to the running configuration.
Step 9	<b>commit</b>	

### What to do next

Repeat these steps to configure another logical switch for the OpenFlow Agent.

## Enabling TLS

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **openflow switch** *logical-switch-id*
3. **tls trust-point local** *local-tp-name* **remote** *remote-tp-name*
4. **commit**
5. **end**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>openflow switch</b> <i>logical-switch-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>openflow switch</b> 100	Enters the OpenFlow logical switch configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>tls trust-point local</b> <i>local-tp-name</i> <b>remote</b> <i>remote-tp-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# <b>tls</b> <b>trust-point local tp1 remote tp2</b>	Enters the TLS configuration mode. Configures the local and remote trustpoints.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# commit	Adds the logical switch configuration for the OpenFlow agent to the running configuration.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>end</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-openflow-switch)# end	Exits logical switch configuration mode and enters EXEC mode.

## Configuring NetFlow for the OpenFlow Agent

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **flow exporter-map** *fem-name*
3. **destination** *location*
4. **version** v9
5. **commit**
6. **exit**
7. **flow monitor-map** *map-name*
8. **record** ipv4
9. **exporter** *map-name*
10. **cache entries** *number*
11. **cache timeout** {**active** *timeout-value* | **inactive** *timeout-value* | **update** *timeout-value*}
12. **commit**
13. **exit**
14. **sampler-map** *map-name*
15. **random** 1 **out-of** *sampling-interval*
16. **commit**
17. **exit**
18. **commit**



## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>flow exporter-map</b> <i>fem-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# flow exporter-map fem	Enters flow exporter map configuration mode.  <b>Note</b> A single flow monitor map can support up to eight exporters.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>destination</b> <i>location</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fem)# destination 10.0.1.2	Configures the export destination for the flow exporter map. The destination <b>location</b> argument can be a hostname or an IP address.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>version</b> <i>v9</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fem)# version v9	Specifies export version parameters and enters the flow exporter map version configuration mode.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fem-ver)# commit	Commits the configuration changes to running to the running configuration.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fem-ver)# exit	Exits flow exporter map version configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>flow monitor-map</b> <i>map-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# flow monitor-map mmap	Creates a monitor map and configures a monitor map name and enters flow monitor map configuration mode
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>record</b> <i>ipv4</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm)# record ipv4	Configures the flow record map name for IPv4. By default, the originating autonomous system (AS) numbers are collected and exported.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>exporter</b> <i>map-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm)# exporter fmap	Associates an exporter map with a monitor map.  <b>Note</b> A single flow monitor map can support up to eight exporters.
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>cache entries</b> <i>number</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm)# cache entries 4096	(Optional) Configures the number of entries in the flow cache. Replace the number argument with the number of flow entries allowed in the flow cache, in the range from 4096 through 1000000.  The default number of cache entries is 65535.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>cache timeout</b> { <b>active</b> <i>timeout-value</i>   <b>inactive</b> <i>timeout-value</i>   <b>update</b> <i>timeout-value</i> }  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm) # cache timeout active 10	(Optional) Configures the active, inactive, or update flow cache timeout value. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The default timeout value for the inactive flow cache is 15 seconds.</li> <li>• The default timeout value for the active flow cache is 1800 seconds.</li> <li>• The default timeout value for the update flow cache is 1800 seconds.</li> </ul> <b>Note</b> The <b>update</b> keyword and <i>timeout-value</i> argument are used for permanent caches only. It specifies the timeout value that is used to export entries from permanent caches. In this case, the entries are exported but remain the cache.
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm) # commit	Commits the configuration changes to running to the running configuration.
<b>Step 13</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-fmm) # exit	Exits flow monitor map version configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 14</b>	<b>sampler-map</b> <i>map-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config) # sampler-map	Creates a sampler map and enters sampler map configuration mode.  <b>Note</b> When configuring a sampler map, be aware that NetFlow supports policing at a rate of 35,000 packets per second per direction for each individual line card.
<b>Step 15</b>	<b>random 1 out-of</b> <i>sampling-interval</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-sm) # random 1 out-of 65535	Configures the sampling interval to use random mode for sampling packets. For the <i>sampling-interval</i> argument, specify a number from 1 to 65535.
<b>Step 16</b>	<b>commit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-sm) # commit	Commits the configuration changes to running to the running configuration.
<b>Step 17</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-sm) # exit	Exits sampler map version configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 18</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**What to do next**

Go to the “Associating the OpenFlow Agent Logical Switch with NetFlow” section to complete the second part of this configuration.

## Configuration Examples: Openflow

### Attaching a bridge domain to an Openflow Switch: Examples

- Attaching a L2-only Openflow switch

```
openflow
switch 1 pipeline 129
  tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp1
  bridge-group SDN-2 bridge-domain OF-2
  controller ipv4 5.0.1.200 port 6653 security tls
```

- Attaching a L2\_L3 Openflow switch

```
openflow
switch 1 pipeline 130
  tls trust-point local tp1 remote tp1
  bridge-group SDN-2 bridge-domain OF-2
  controller ipv4 5.0.1.200 port 6653 security tls
```

- L3\_V4 switch can be attached either to a VRF or directly to layer 3 interfaces under global VRF. In case of VRF, all the interfaces in that VRF become part of the OpenFlow switch.

```
openflow
switch 11 pipeline 131
  vrf IPv4
  controller ipv4 5.0.1.200 port 6653 security none
!
```

- L3\_DS switch can be attached either to a VRF or directly to layer 3 interfaces under global VRF.

```
openflow
switch 12 pipeline 132
  vrf IPv4
  controller ipv4 5.0.1.200 port 6653 security none
!
```

### OpenFlow Agent with NetFlow Collection and Analytics Configuration: Example

The following example describes the NetFlow exporter map configuration for the OpenFlow logical switch.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# flow exporter-map fem
Device(config-fem)# destination 10.0.1.2
Device(config-fem)# version v9
```

```
Device(config-fem-ver) # commit
Device(config-fem-ver) # exit
```

The following example describes the NetFlow monitor map configuration for the OpenFlow logical switch.

```
Device(config) # flow monitor-map mmap
Device(config-fmm) # record ipv4
Device(config-fmm) # exporter fmap
Device(config-fmm) # cache entries 4096
Device(config-fmm) # commit
Device(config-fmm) # exit
```

The following example describes the NetFlow sampler map configuration for the OpenFlow logical switch.

```
Device(config) # sampler-map
Device(config-sm) # random 1 out-of 65535
Device(config-sm) # commit
Device(config-sm) # exit
```

The following example describes how the OpenFlow Agent logical switch is configured so that the NetFlow collection and analytics are associated with it.

```
Device(config) # openflow switch 100 netflow
Device(logical-switch) # flow monitor mmap sampler smap
Device(logical-switch) # interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0/6
Router(logical-switch) # controller 10.0.1.2 port 6633
Device(logical-switch) # commit
Device(logical-switch) # end
```

The following example describes **show** command output for an OpenFlow Agent logical switch that is configured with NetFlow collection and analytics.

```
Device# show openflow switch 100
Fri Jan 25 14:29:21.078 UTC

Logical Switch Context
  Id: 100
  Switch type: Netflow
  Layer: NONE
  Signal version: Openflow 1.0
  Data plane: secure
  Fallback: normal
  Config state: no-shutdown
  Working state: enabled
  TLS version: NONE
  TLS private key: none:none
  TLS private key file: NONE
  TLS certificate file: NONE
  Controller: 10.0.1.2:6633, last alive ping: 2013-01-25 14:29:20
  Netflow Monitor: mmap
  Netflow Sampler: smap
  Loopback i/f: <none>
  Loopback addr: <none>
  Interfaces:
    GigabitEthernet0/1/0/6

Device# show openflow switch 100 flows
```

```

Fri Jan 25 14:29:24.787 UTC

Logical Openflow Switch [100]:
NXST_FLOW reply (xid=0x0):
cookie=0x0, duration=204.729s, table=0, n_packets=0, n_bytes=0, priority=500 actions=netflow

Switch flow count: 1

Device# show openflow switch 100 controllers
Fri Jan 25 14:29:28.660 UTC

Logical Openflow Switch [100]:
  Controller [tcp:10.0.1.2:6633]
    role           : Other
    connected      : Yes
    state          : ACTIVE
    sec_since_connect : 487

```

## Usecase for Layer2

**The Scenario:** Enterprise Data Center needs to perform data backup to multiple other backup sites based on the Traffic flow. The Main DC is in Vlan 100 and Backup sites are at VLAN 1000,1001,1002. These Sites are interconnected through L2VPN.

**The Solution:** Openflow, we can match any Layer 2 header field (in this example we have taken priority bits) and steer the traffic to go on any L2 interconnect and also rewrite the VLANs appropriately.

## Usecase for Layer3

**The Scenario:** Three different flows from 3 different sites connected to PE1 are trying to send 350 mbps of traffic each to PE2. The bandwidth of the shortest link, Path-2 (between PE1 and PE2) is only 1 Gigabit. Hence Path-2 gets congested as soon as the third site begins to send traffic.

**The Solution:** Openflow controller can be used to install rules on PE1:

- Match on Flow 1 (destined to Video server) and redirect traffic to Path-2
- Match on Flow 2 (destined to Web server) and redirect traffic to Path-1
- Match on Flow 3 (destined to File transfer server) and redirect traffic to Path-3

**The Inference:** Effectively utilizing the network bandwidth by redirecting destination specific traffic using OpenFlow rules.





## CHAPTER 14

# Configuring Manageability

This module describes the configuration required to enable the Extensible Markup Language (XML) agent services. The XML Parser Infrastructure provides parsing and generation of XML documents with Document Object Model (DOM), Simple Application Programming Interface (API) for XML (SAX), and Document Type Definition (DTD) validation capabilities:

- DOM allows customers to programmatically create, manipulate, and generate XML documents.
- SAX supports user-defined functions for XML tags.
- DTD allows for validation of defined document types.

**Table 38: Feature History for Configuring Manageability on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced
Release 3.9.0	The ability to enable XML requests over Secure Socket Layer (SSL) was introduced.  The ability to configure an idle timeout for the XML agent was introduced.
Release 4.0.0	The ability to configure a dedicated agent to receive and send messages via a specified VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instance was introduced.  The ability to control CPU time used by the XML agent was introduced.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Information About XML Manageability, on page 293](#)
- [How to Configure Manageability, on page 294](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Manageability, on page 295](#)
- [Additional References, on page 295](#)

## Information About XML Manageability

The Cisco IOS XR Extensible Markup Language (XML) API provides a programmable interface to the router for use by external management applications. This interface provides a mechanism for router configuration and monitoring utilizing XML formatted request and response streams. The XML interface is built on top of the Management Data API (MDA), which provides a mechanism for Cisco IOS XR components to publish their data models through MDA schema definition files.

Cisco IOS XR software provides the ability to access the router via XML using a dedicated TCP connection, Secure Socket Layer (SSL), or a specific VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.

# How to Configure Manageability

## Configuring the XML Agent

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **xml agent** [ssl]
2. **iteration on size** *iteration-size*
3. **session timeout** *timeout*
4. **throttle** { *memory size* | **process-rate** *tags* }
5. **vrf** { **default** | *vrf-name* } [**access-list** *access-list-name* ]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>xml agent</b> [ssl]  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config)# xml agent	Enables Extensible Markup Language (XML) requests over a dedicated TCP connection and enters XML agent configuration mode. Use the <b>ssl</b> keyword to enable XML requests over Secure Socket Layer (SSL).
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>iteration on size</b> <i>iteration-size</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# iteration on size 500	Configures the iteration size for large XML agent responses in KBytes. The default is 48.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>session timeout</b> <i>timeout</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# session timeout 5	Configures an idle timeout for the XML agent in minutes. By default, there is no timeout.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>throttle</b> { <i>memory size</i>   <b>process-rate</b> <i>tags</i> }  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# throttle memory 300	Configures the XML agent processing capabilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify the throttle memory size in Mbytes per session. Values can range from 100 to 600. The default is 300.</li> <li>Specify the process-rate as the number of tags that the XML agent can process per second. Values can range from 1000 to 30000. By default the process rate is not throttled.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>vrf</b> { <b>default</b>   <i>vrf-name</i> } [ <b>access-list</b> <i>access-list-name</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>	Configures the dedicated agent or SSL agent to receive and send messages via the specified VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instance.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# vrf my-vrf	

# Configuration Examples for Manageability

## Enabling VRF on an XML Agent: Examples

The following example illustrates how to configure the dedicated XML agent to receive and send messages via VRF1, VRF2 and the default VRF:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config)# xml agent  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# vrf VRF1  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# vrf VRF2
```

The following example illustrates how to remove access to VRF2 from the dedicated agent:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config)# xml agent  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# no vrf VRF2
```

The following example shows how to configure the XML SSL agent to receive and send messages through VRF1, VRF2 and the default VRF:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config)# xml agent ssl  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# vrf VRF1  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# vrf VRF2
```

The following example removes access for VRF2 from the dedicated XML agent:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config)# xml agent ssl  
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:router(config-xml-agent)# no vrf VRF2
```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to configuring manageability on Cisco IOS XR software.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR commands	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>

Related Topic	Document Title
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on Cisco IOS XR Software</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

### Standards and RFCs

Standard/RFC	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

### MIBs

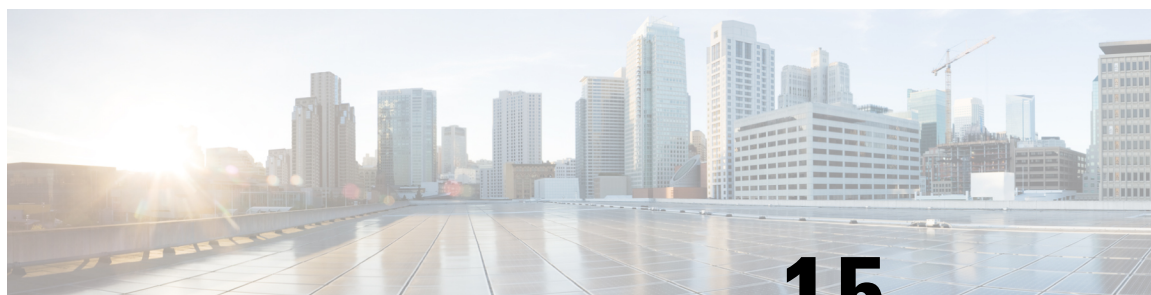
MB	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs">http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs</a>

### RFCs

RFCs	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

### Technical Assistance

Description	Link
<p>The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies.</p> <p>To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds.</p> <p>Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.</p>	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>



## CHAPTER 15

# Configuring Call Home

This module describes the configuring of the Call Home feature.

**Table 39: Feature History for Configuring Call Home**

Release	Modification
Release 4.1.0	Call Home was introduced

This model contains the following topics:

- [About Call Home, on page 297](#)
- [Configuring Call Home, on page 301](#)
- [Configuring Contact Information, on page 302](#)
- [Configuring and Activating Destination Profiles, on page 303](#)
- [Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile, on page 305](#)
- [Configuring Email, on page 308](#)
- [Enabling Call Home, on page 309](#)
- [Configuring Smart Call Home \(single command\), on page 310](#)
- [Configuring Call Home Data Privacy, on page 310](#)
- [Configuring Syslog Throttling, on page 311](#)
- [Enabling AAA Authorization, on page 311](#)
- [Sending Call Home Alert group Messages Manually, on page 312](#)
- [Manually sending command output message for a Command List , on page 313](#)
- [Configuring a HTTP Proxy Server , on page 314](#)
- [Configuring Snapshot alert group, on page 315](#)
- [Configuring Anonymous Reporting , on page 316](#)
- [Configuring Call Home to use VRF, on page 316](#)
- [Configuring Source Interface, on page 317](#)

## About Call Home

Call Home provides an email and http/https based notification for critical system policies. A range of message formats are available for compatibility with pager services or XML-based automated parsing applications. You can use this feature to page a network support engineer, email a Network Operations Center, or use Cisco

Smart Call Home services to generate a case with the Technical Assistance Center. The Call Home feature can deliver alert messages containing information about diagnostics and environmental faults and events.

The Call Home feature can deliver alerts to multiple recipients, referred to as Call Home destination profiles. Each profile includes configurable message formats and content categories. A predefined destination is provided for sending alerts to the Cisco TAC, but you also can define your own destination profiles. When you configure Call Home to send messages, the appropriate CLI show command is executed and the command output is attached to the message. Call Home messages are delivered in the following formats:

- Short text format which provides a one or two line description of the fault that is suitable for pagers or printed reports.
- Full text format which provides fully formatted message with detailed information that is suitable for human reading.
- XML machine readable format that uses Extensible Markup Language (XML) and Adaptive Messaging Language (AML) XML schema definition (XSD). The AML XSD is published on the Cisco.com website at <http://www.cisco.com/>. The XML format enables communication with the Cisco Systems Technical Assistance Center.

## Destination Profiles

A destination profile includes the following information:

- One or more alert groups—The group of alerts that trigger a specific Call Home message if the alert occurs.
- One or more e-mail or http destinations—The list of recipients for the Call Home messages generated by alert groups assigned to this destination profile.
- Message format—The format for the Call Home message (short text, full text, or XML).
- Message severity level—The Call Home severity level that the alert must meet before a Call Home message is sent to all e-mail and http url addresses in the destination profile. An alert is not generated if the Call Home severity level of the alert is lower than the message severity level set for the destination profile.

You can also configure a destination profile to allow periodic inventory update messages by using the inventory alert group that will send out periodic messages daily, weekly, or monthly.

The following predefined destination profiles are supported:

- CiscoTAC-1—Supports the Cisco-TAC alert group in XML message format.

## Call Home Alert Groups

An alert group is a predefined subset of alerts or events that Call Home detects and reports to one or more destinations. Alert groups allow you to select the set of alerts that you want to send to a predefined or custom destination profile. Alerts are sent to e-mail destinations in a destination profile only if that alert belongs to one of the alert groups associated with that destination profile and if the alert has a Call Home message severity at or above the message severity set in the destination profile.

The following table lists supported alert groups and the default CLI command output included in Call Home messages generated for the alert group.

**Table 40: Alert Groups and Executed Commands**

Alert Group	Description	Executed Commands
Environmental	Events related to power, fan, and environment-sensing elements such as temperature alarms.	<b>show environment</b> <b>show logging</b> <b>show inventory</b> <b>show environment trace</b> <b>show diag</b>
Inventory	Inventory status that is provided whenever a unit is cold booted, or when FRUs are inserted or removed. This alert is considered a noncritical event, and the information is used for status and entitlement.	<b>admin show platform</b> <b>admin show version</b> <b>admin show diag</b> <b>admin show inventory oid</b>
Syslog	Events generated by specific interesting syslog messages	<b>admin show version</b> <b>admin show logging</b> <b>admin show inventory</b>
Configuration	User-generated request for configuration or configuration change event.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>show version</b></li> <li>• <b>show running config all</b></li> <li>• <b>show inventory</b></li> <li>• <b>show configuration history last 30</b></li> <li>• <b>show configuration commit changes last 1</b></li> </ul>
Snapshot	This alert group can be configured for periodic notifications	By default, this alert group has no commands to be run. You can add the required commands that need to be run.

Call Home maps the syslog severity level to the corresponding Call Home severity level for syslog port group messages.

## Call Home Message Levels

Call Home allows you to filter messages based on their level of urgency. You can associate each destination profile (predefined and user-defined) with a Call Home message level threshold. The Call Home message level ranges from 0 (lowest level of urgency) to 9 (highest level of urgency). Call Home messages are generated if they have a severity level equal to or greater than the Call Home message level threshold for the destination profile.

Call Home messages that are sent for syslog alert groups have the syslog severity level mapped to the Call Home message level.

**Note**

Call Home does not change the syslog message level in the message text.

The following table lists each Call Home message level keyword and the corresponding syslog level for the syslog port alert group.

**Table 41: Severity and syslog Level Mapping**

Call Home Level	Keyword	syslog Level	Description
9	Catastrophic	N/A	Network-wide catastrophic failure.
8	Disaster	N/A	Significant network impact.
7	Fatal	Emergency (0)	System is unusable.
6	Critical	Alert (1)	Critical conditions that indicate that immediate attention is needed.
5	Major	Critical (2)	Major conditions.
4	Minor	Error (3)	Minor conditions.
3	Warning	Warning (4)	Warning conditions.
2	Notification	Notice (5)	Basic notification and informational messages. Possibly independently insignificant.
1	Normal	Information (6)	Normal event signifying return to normal state.
0	Debugging	Debug (7)	Debugging messages.

## Obtaining Smart Call Home

If you have a service contract directly with Cisco Systems, you can register your devices for the Smart Call Home service. Smart Call Home provides fast resolution of system problems by analyzing Call Home messages sent from your devices and providing background information and recommendations. For issues that can be identified as known, particularly GOLD diagnostics failures, Automatic Service Requests will be generated with the Cisco-TAC.

Smart Call Home offers the following features:

- Continuous device health monitoring and real-time diagnostic alerts.
- Analysis of Call Home messages from your device and, where appropriate, Automatic Service Request generation, routed to the appropriate TAC team, including detailed diagnostic information to speed problem resolution.

- Secure message transport directly from your device or through a downloadable Transport Gateway (TG) aggregation point. You can use a TG aggregation point in cases that require support for multiple devices or in cases where security requirements mandate that your devices may not be connected directly to the Internet.
- Web-based access to Call Home messages and recommendations, inventory and configuration information for all Call Home devices. Provides access to associated field notices, security advisories and end-of-life information.

You need the following items to register:

- The SMARTnet contract number for your device
- Your e-mail address
- Your Cisco.com ID

For more information about Smart Call Home, see the Smart Call Home page at this URL:

[https://supportforums.cisco.com/community/netpro/solutions/smart\\_services/smartcallhome](https://supportforums.cisco.com/community/netpro/solutions/smart_services/smartcallhome)

## Anonymous Reporting

Smart Call Home is a service capability included with many Cisco service contracts and is designed to assist customers resolve problems more quickly. If you decide not to use Smart Call Home, you can still enable Anonymous Reporting to allow Cisco to securely receive minimal error and health information from the device. If you enable Anonymous Reporting, your customer identity will remain anonymous, and no identifying information is sent.

When Call Home is configured for anonymous reporting, only , inventory, and test messages are sent to Cisco. No identifying information is sent.

**Note**

When you enable Anonymous Reporting, you acknowledge your consent to transfer the specified data to Cisco or to vendors operating on behalf of Cisco (including countries outside the United States). Cisco maintains the privacy of all customers. For information about how Cisco treats personal information, see the Cisco Privacy Statement

## Configuring Call Home

The tasks in this module describe how to configure the sending of Call Home messages. The following steps are involved:

1. Assign contact information.
2. Configure and enable one or more destination profiles.
3. Associate one or more alert groups to each profile.
4. Configure the email server options.
5. Enable Call Home.



**Note** Before enabling Call-Home, you must configure the source interface for http over IPv6. However, for http over IPv4, Call-Home works without the source interface.

Use the **http client source-interface ipv6** command to configure the source interface.

## Configuring Contact Information

Each router must include a contact e-mail address. You can optionally include other identifying information for your system installation.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **contact-email-addr** *email-address*
4. (Optional) **contract-id** *contract-id-string*
5. (Optional) **customer-id** *customer-id-string*
6. (Optional) **phone-number** *phone-number-string*
7. (Optional) **street-address** *street-address*
8. (Optional) **site-id** *site-id-string*
9. **commit**
10. **show call-home**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# call-home RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#	Enters call home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>contact-email-addr</b> <i>email-address</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# contact-email-addr user1@cisco.com	Configures the customer email address. Enter up to 200 characters in email address format with no spaces.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>contract-id</b> <i>contract-id-string</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#	Configures the contract ID. Enter up to 64 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose the entry in quotes ("").



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>contract-id</code> <code>Contract-identifier</code>	
<b>Step 5</b>	(Optional) <b>customer-id</b> <i>customer-id-string</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# customer-id Customer1	Configures the customer ID. Enter up to 64 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose the entry in quotes ("").
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>phone-number</b> <i>phone-number-string</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# phone-number +405-123-4567	Configures the customer phone number. The number must begin with a plus (+) prefix, and may contain only dashes (-) and numbers. Enter up to 16 characters.
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>street-address</b> <i>street-address</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# street-address "300 E. Tasman Dr. San Jose, CA 95134"	Configures the customer street address where RMA equipment can be shipped. Enter up to 200 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose the entry in quotes ("").
<b>Step 8</b>	(Optional) <b>site-id</b> <i>site-id-string</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# site-id SJ-RouterRoom1	Configures the site ID for the system. Enter up to 200 characters. If you include spaces, you must enclose the entry in quotes ("").
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show call-home	Displays information about the system contacts.

## Configuring and Activating Destination Profiles

You must have at least one activated destination profile for Call Home messages to be sent. The CiscoTAC-1 profile exists by default but is not active.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **profile** *profile-name*
4. **destination address email** *email-address*
5. **destination message-size-limit** *max-size*
6. **destination preferred-msg-format** {short-text | long-text | xml}

7. **destination transport-method** [ email | hhttp ]
8. **active**
9. **commit**
10. **show call-home profile** {all | *profile-name*}

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# call-home RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#</pre>	Enters call home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>profile</b> <i>profile-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# profile my_profile RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)#</pre>	Enters call home profile configuration mode to configure a new or existing profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>destination address email</b> <i>email-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# destination address email support_me@cisco.com</pre>	Configures an email address to which Call Home messages are sent for this profile.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>destination message-size-limit</b> <i>max-size</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# destination message-size-limit 1000</pre>	Configures the maximum size of Call Home messages for this profile. Values can be between 50 and 3145728 characters.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>destination preferred-msg-format</b> {short-text   long-text   xml} <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# destination preferred-msg-format xml</pre>	Configures the message format for this profile. The default is xml.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>destination transport-method</b> [ email   hhttp ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# destination transport-method email</pre>	Configures the transport method for this profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>active</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# active	Activates the destination profile.  <b>Note</b> At least one destination profile must be active for Call Home messages to be sent.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>show call-home profile {all   profile-name}</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show call-home profile all	Displays information about the destination profile.

## Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile

An alert is sent only to destination profiles that have subscribed to the Call Home alert group.

### Before you begin

Use the **show call-home alert-group** command to view available alert groups.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **profile profile-name**
4. **subscribe-to-alert-group environment [severity severity-level**
5. **subscribe-to-alert-group inventory [periodic {daily | monthly day-of-month | weekly day-of-week} hh:mm**
6. **subscribe-to-alert-group syslog severity severity-level pattern string**
7. **subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot severity severity-level pattern string**
8. **subscribe-to-alert-group configuration severity severity-level pattern string**
9. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# call-home RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#	Enters call home configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>profile</b> <i>profile-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# profile my_profile RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)#</pre>	Enters call home profile configuration mode to configure a new or existing profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>subscribe-to-alert-group environment</b> [ <b>severity</b> <i>severity-level</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group environment severity major</pre>	<p>Configures a destination profile to receive messages for the environment alert group. Alerts with a severity the same or greater than the specified severity level are sent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>catastrophic</b>—Includes network-wide catastrophic events in the alert. This is the highest severity.</li> <li>• <b>critical</b>—Includes events requiring immediate attention (system log level 1).</li> <li>• <b>disaster</b>—Includes events with significant network impact.</li> <li>• <b>fatal</b>—Includes events where the system is unusable (system log level 0).</li> <li>• <b>major</b>—Includes events classified as major conditions (system log level 2).</li> <li>• <b>minor</b>—Includes events classified as minor conditions (system log level 3).</li> <li>• <b>normal</b>—Specifies the normal state and includes events classified as informational (system log level 6). This is the default.</li> <li>• <b>notification</b>—Includes events informational message events (system log level 5).</li> <li>• <b>warning</b>—Includes events classified as warning conditions (system log level 4).</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>subscribe-to-alert-group inventory</b> [ <b>periodic</b> { <b>daily</b>   <b>monthly</b> <i>day-of-month</i>   <b>weekly</b> <i>day-of-week</i> } <i>hh:mm</i> ] <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group inventory periodic monthly 1 10:00</pre>	Configures a destination profile to receive messages for the inventory alert group. Either alerts are sent periodically, or any non-normal event triggers an alert.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>subscribe-to-alert-group syslog severity</b> <i>severity-level</i> <i>pattern string</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)#</pre>	<p>Configures a destination profile to receive messages for the syslog alert group. Alerts with a severity the same or greater than the specified severity level are sent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>catastrophic</b>—Includes network-wide catastrophic events in the alert. This is the highest severity.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>subscribe-to-alert-group syslog severity major pattern</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>critical</b>—Includes events requiring immediate attention (system log level 1).</li> <li>• <b>disaster</b>—Includes events with significant network impact.</li> <li>• <b>fatal</b>—Includes events where the system is unusable (system log level 0).</li> <li>• <b>major</b>—Includes events classified as major conditions (system log level 2).</li> <li>• <b>minor</b>—Includes events classified as minor conditions (system log level 3)</li> <li>• <b>normal</b>—Specifies the normal state and includes events classified as informational (system log level 6). This is the default.</li> <li>• <b>notification</b>—Includes events informational message events (system log level 5).</li> <li>• <b>warning</b>—Includes events classified as warning conditions (system log level 4).</li> </ul> <p>You can specify a pattern to be matched in the syslog message. If the pattern contains spaces, you must enclose it in quotes ("").</p>
<b>Step 7</b>	<p><b>subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot severity <i>severity-level</i> <i>pattern string</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group snapshot severity major pattern</pre>	<p>Configures a destination profile to receive messages for the snapshot alert group. Alerts with a severity the same or greater than the specified severity level are sent.</p> <p>You can specify a pattern to be matched in the syslog message. If the pattern contains spaces, you must enclose it in quotes ("").</p>
<b>Step 8</b>	<p><b>subscribe-to-alert-group configuration severity <i>severity-level</i> <i>pattern string</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home-profile)# subscribe-to-alert-group configuration severity major pattern</pre>	<p>Configures a destination profile to receive messages for the configuration alert group. Alerts with a severity the same or greater than the specified severity level are sent.</p> <p>You can specify a pattern to be matched in the syslog message. If the pattern contains spaces, you must enclose it in quotes ("").</p>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>commit</b>	

### What to do next

Use the **show call-home profile** command to view the profile configurations.

# Configuring Email

Call Home messages are sent via email. You must configure your email server before Call Home messages can be sent.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. (Optional) **sender from** *email-address*
4. (Optional) **sender reply-to** *email-address*
5. **mail-server** *address priority priority*
6. **rate-limit** *events-count*
7. **commit**
8. **show call-home mail-server status**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# call-home RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#</pre>	Enters call home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>sender from</b> <i>email-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# sender from my_email@cisco.com</pre>	Specifies the email message “from” address.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>sender reply-to</b> <i>email-address</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# sender reply-to my_email@cisco.com</pre>	Specifies the email message “reply-to” address.
<b>Step 5</b>	Required: <b>mail-server</b> <i>address priority priority</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# mail-server 198.51.100.10 priority 1</pre>	Specifies the mail server to use to send Call Home messages. You can specify an IP address or mail server name. You can specify up to five mail servers to use. The server with the lower priority is tried first.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	Required: <b>rate-limit</b> <i>events-count</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# rate-limit 4	Specifies the maximum trigger rate per minute. The default is five events per minute and the maximum is also five.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>show call-home mail-server status</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show call-home mail-server status	Displays the status of the specified mail server.

## Enabling Call Home

By default the sending of Call Home messages is disabled. You must perform this task to enable the sending of Call Home messages.

### Before you begin

Before enabling the sending of Call Home messages, you should complete the configuration tasks described in this module. Specifically, you must have enabled a destination profile for any Call Home messages to be sent.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **service active**
4. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# call-home RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)#	Enters call home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>service active</b>  <b>Example:</b>	Enables the sending of Call Home messages.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home)# service active	
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Configuring Smart Call Home (single command)

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home reporting** { **anonymous** | **contact-email** *email-address* } [ **http-proxy** { *address* } **port** *port-number* ]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home reporting</b> { <b>anonymous</b>   <b>contact-email</b> <i>email-address</i> } [ <b>http-proxy</b> { <i>address</i> } <b>port</b> <i>port-number</i> ]  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home reporting contact-email email@company.com</b>	Enables all call home basic configurations using a single command.

## Configuring Call Home Data Privacy

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **data-privacy** { **level** { **normal** | **high** } | **hostname** }

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters the call home configuration submenu.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>data-privacy { level { normal   high }   hostname }</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-call-home) # <b>data-privacy level high</b>	<p>Scrubs data from call-home message to protect the privacy of the user. The default data-privacy level is normal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>normal</b> - scrubs all normal level commands , such as , password/ username/ ip/ destination.</li> <li>• <b>high</b> - scrubs all normal level commands plus the IP domain name and IP address commands.</li> <li>• <b>hostname</b> - scrubbing the hostname from call-home messages may cause Smart Call Home processing failure.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Enabling the data-privacy command can affect CPU utilization when scrubbing a large amount of data.</p>

## Configuring Syslog Throttling

This task is used to enable or disable Call Home syslog message throttling and avoid sending repetitive Call Home syslog messages.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **syslog-throttling**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters call home configuration submode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>syslog-throttling</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home) # <b>syslog-throttling</b>	Enables or disables Call Home syslog message throttling and avoids sending repetitive Call Home syslog messages. By default, syslog message throttling is enabled.

## Enabling AAA Authorization

This task is used to enable AAA authorization for Call Home messages.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **aaa-authorization** [ **username** *username* ]

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>aaa-authorization</b> [ <b>username</b> <i>username</i> ]  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home) # <b>aaa-authorization username u1</b>	Enables AAA authorization. Specifies the username for authorization.

## Sending Call Home Alert group Messages Manually

This task is used to manually trigger Call Home alert group messages.

You can use the **call-home send** command to manually send a specific alert group message. Guidelines for the CLI options of the command:

- Only the snapshot, configuration, and inventory alert groups can be sent manually. Syslog alert groups cannot be sent manually.
- When you manually trigger a snapshot, configuration, or inventory alert group message and you specify a destination profile name, a message is sent to the destination profile regardless of the profile's active status, subscription status, or severity setting.
- When you manually trigger a snapshot, configuration, or inventory alert group message and do not specify a destination profile name, a message is sent to all active profiles that have either a normal or periodic subscription to the specified alert group.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **call-home send alert-group snapshot** [ **profile** *name* ]
2. **call-home send alert-group configuration** [ **profile** *name* ]
3. **call-home send alert-group inventory** [ **profile** *name* ]

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>call-home send alert-group snapshot</b> [ <i>profile name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router # <b>call-home send alert-group snapshot profile p1</b>	Sends a snapshot alert group message to one destination profile if specified or to all subscribed destination profiles.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home send alert-group configuration</b> [ <i>profile name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router # <b>call-home send alert-group configuration profile p1</b>	Sends a configuration alert group message to one destination profile if specified or to all subscribed destination profiles.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>call-home send alert-group inventory</b> [ <i>profile name</i> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router # <b>call-home send alert-group inventory profile p1</b>	Sends an inventory alert group message to one destination profile if specified or to all subscribed destination profiles.

## Manually sending command output message for a Command List

You can use the **call-home send** command to execute a command or a list of commands and send the command output through HTTP or email protocol.

Guidelines when sending the output of a command:

- The specified command or list of commands can be any run command, including commands for all modules. The command must be contained in quotes (“”).
- If the email option is selected using the “email” keyword and an email address is specified, the command output is sent to that address.
- If neither the email nor the HTTP option is specified, the output is sent in long-text format with the specified service request number to the Cisco TAC (attach@cisco.com).
- If neither the “email” nor the “http” keyword is specified, the service request number is required for both long-text and XML message formats and is provided in the subject line of the email.
- If the HTTP option is specified, the CiscoTAC-1 profile destination HTTP or HTTPS URL is used as the destination. The destination email address can be specified so that Smart Call Home can forward the message to the email address. The user must specify either the destination email address or an SR number but they can also specify both.

This task enables you to execute command and send the command output.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **call-home send** { *cli command* | *cli list* } [ **email** *email* **msg-format** { **long-text** | **xml** } ] [ **http** { **destination-email-address** *email* } ] [ **tac-request** *SR#* ]

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<p><b>call-home send</b> { <i>cli command</i>   <i>cli list</i> } [ <b>email</b> <i>email</i> <b>msg-format</b> { <b>long-text</b>   <b>xml</b> } ] [ <b>http</b> { <b>destination-email-address</b> <i>email</i> } ] [ <b>tac-request</b> <i>SR#</i> ]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router # call-home send "show version;show running-config;show inventory" email support@example.com msg-format xml</pre>	<p>Executes the CLI or CLI list and sends output via email or HTTP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• { <i>cli command</i>   <i>cli list</i> }—Specifies the command or list of commands (separated by ‘;’). It can be any run command, including commands for all modules. The commands must be contained in quotes (“”).</li> <li>• <b>email</b> <i>email</i> <b>msg-format</b> { <b>long-text</b>   <b>xml</b> }—If the email option is selected, the command output will be sent to the specified email address in long-text or XML format with the service request number in the subject. The email address, the service request number, or both must be specified. The service request number is required if the email address is not specified (default is <code>attach@cisco.com</code> for long-text format and <code>callhome@cisco.com</code> for XML format).</li> <li>• <b>http</b> { <b>destination-email-address</b> <i>email</i> }—If the http option is selected, the command output will be sent to Smart Call Home backend server (URL specified in the CiscoTAC-1 profile) in XML format. <i>destination-email-address email</i> can be specified so that the backend server can forward the message to the email address. The email address, the service request number, or both must be specified.</li> <li>• <b>tac-service-request</b> <i>SR#</i> —Specifies the service request number. The service request number is required if the email address is not specified.</li> </ul>

## Configuring a HTTP Proxy Server

This task enables the user to configure a HTTP Proxy Server.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **http-proxy** *proxy-server-name* **port** *port-number*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>http-proxy proxy-server-name port port-number</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>http-proxy pl port 100</b>	Configures the port for the specified HTTP proxy server. Range is 1 to 65535.

## Configuring Snapshot alert group

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **alert-group-configuration snapshot**
4. **add-command "command string"**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>alert-group-configuration snapshot</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home) # <b>alert-group-configuration snapshot</b>	Enters snapshot configuration mode.
Step 4	<b>add-command "command string"</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home-snapshot) # <b>add-command "show ver"</b>	Adds the command to the snapshot alert group.

# Configuring Anonymous Reporting

This task enables the user to configure an anonymous mode profile.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **profile** *name*
4. **anonymous-reporting-only**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>profile</b> <i>name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home) # <b>profile</b> <b>ciscotac</b>	Enters the profile configuration mode.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>anonymous-reporting-only</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-call-home-profile) # <b>anonymous-reporting-only</b>	Enters anonymous mode. When <b>anonymous-reporting-only</b> is set, only inventory and test messages are sent.

What to do next

.

# Configuring Call Home to use VRF

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **vrf** *vrf-name*

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>vrf vrf-name</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>vrf v1</b>	Configures call home for the specified VRF. VRF works only for the http transport method. It does not work for the email transport method.

## Configuring Source Interface

This task enables the user to configure a source interface.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **call-home**
3. **source-interface type interface-path-id**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>call-home</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>call-home</b>	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	<b>source-interface type interface-path-id</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>source-interface tengige 10.1.1.1</b>	Configures the source interface.  <b>Note</b> Source-interface supports email and HTTP messages.







## CHAPTER 16

# Configuring Object Tracking

This module describes the configuration of object tracking on your Cisco IOS XR network. For complete descriptions of the commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 327](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 42: Feature History for Implementing Object Tracking**

Release	Modification
Release 4.0.0	This feature was introduced.
Release 4.2.1	The ability to create a tracked list based on a threshold percentage or weight was added.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Implementing Object Tracking, on page 319](#)
- [Information About Object Tracking, on page 319](#)
- [How to Implement Object Tracking, on page 320](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Configuring Object Tracking, on page 326](#)
- [Additional References, on page 326](#)

## Prerequisites for Implementing Object Tracking

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Information About Object Tracking

*Object tracking* is a mechanism for tracking an object to take any client action on another object as configured by the client. The object on which the client action is performed may not have any relationship to the tracked objects. The client actions are performed based on changes to the properties of the object being tracked.

You can identify each tracked object by a unique name that is specified by the track command in the configuration mode.

The tracking process periodically polls the tracked object and reports any changes to its state. The state of the tracked objects can be up or down. The polling occurs either immediately or after a delay of a configured period.

You can also track multiple objects by a list. You can use a flexible method for combining objects with Boolean logic. This functionality includes:

- **Boolean AND function**—When a tracked list has been assigned a Boolean AND function, each object that is defined within a subset must be in an "up" state. This condition enables the tracked object to be in the "up" state.
- **Boolean OR function**—When the tracked list has been assigned a Boolean OR function, at least one object that is defined within a subset must also be in an "up" state. This condition enables the tracked object to be in the "up" state.

## How to Implement Object Tracking

This section describes the various object tracking procedures.

### Tracking the Line Protocol State of an Interface

Perform this task in global configuration mode to track the line protocol state of an interface.

A tracked object is considered up when a line protocol of the interface is up.

After configuring the tracked object, you may associate the interface whose state should be tracked and specify the number of seconds to wait before the tracking object polls the interface for its state.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **track** *track-name*
3. **type** **line-protocol** **state**
4. **interface** *type* *interface-path-id*
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **delay** {**up** *seconds* | **down** *seconds*}
7. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>track</b> <i>track-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# track track1	Enters track configuration mode.  • <i>track-name</i> —Specifies a name for the object to be tracked.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>type line-protocol state</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# type line-protocol state</pre>	Creates a track based on the line protocol of an interface.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interface type interface-path-id</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-line-prot)# interface atm 0/2/0/0.1</pre>	Specifies the interface to track the protocol state. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i>—Specifies the interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.</li> <li>• <i>interface-path-id</i>—Identifies a physical interface or a virtual interface.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Use the <b>show interfaces</b> command to see a list of all possible interfaces currently configured on the router.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The loopback and null interfaces are always in the up state and, therefore, cannot be tracked.</p>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-line-prot)# exit</pre>	Exits the track line protocol configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>delay {up seconds   down seconds}</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay up 10</pre>	Schedules the delay that can occur between tracking whether the object is up or down.
<b>Step 7</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# end</pre> or <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# commit</pre>	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:</li> </ul> <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting (yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Tracking IP Route Reachability

When a host or a network goes down on a remote site, routing protocols notify the router and the routing table is updated accordingly. The routing process is configured to notify the tracking process when the route state changes due to a routing update.

A tracked object is considered up when a routing table entry exists for the route and the route is accessible.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **track** *track-name*
3. **type route reachability**
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **vrf** *vrf-table-name*
  - **route ipv4** *IP-prefix/mask*
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **delay** {*up seconds* | *down seconds*}
7. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>track</b> <i>track-name</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# track track1	Enters track configuration mode.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>track-name</i>—Specifies a name for the object to be tracked.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>type route reachability</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# type route reachability vrf internet	Configures the routing process to notify the tracking process when the state of the route changes due to a routing update.
<b>Step 4</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>vrf</b> <i>vrf-table-name</i></li> <li>• <b>route ipv4</b> <i>IP-prefix/mask</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b>	Configures the type of IP route to be tracked, which can consist of either of the following, depending on your router type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>vrf-table-name</i>—A VRF table name.</li> <li><i>IP-prefix/mask</i>—An IP prefix consisting of the network and subnet mask (for example, 10.56.8.10/16).</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-route)# vrf vrf-table-4  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-route)# route ipv4 10.56.8.10/16</pre>	
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-line-prot)# exit</pre>	Exits the track line protocol configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>delay</b> { <b>up</b> <i>seconds</i>   <b>down</b> <i>seconds</i> }  <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay up 10</pre>	Schedules the delay that can occur between tracking whether the object is up or down.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Building a Track Based on a List of Objects

Perform this task in the global configuration mode to create a tracked list of objects (which, in this case, are lists of interfaces or prefixes) using a Boolean expression to determine the state of the list.

A tracked list contains one or more objects. The Boolean expression enables two types of calculations by using either AND or OR operators. For example, when tracking two interfaces, using the AND operator, up means that *both* interfaces are up, and down means that *either* interface is down.



### Note

An object must exist before it can be added to a tracked list.

The NOT operator is specified for one or more objects and negates the state of the object.

After configuring the tracked object, you must associate the interface whose state should be tracked and you may optionally specify the number of seconds to wait before the tracking object polls the interface for its state.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **track** *track-name*
3. **type** **list** **boolean** { **and** | **or** }
4. **object** *object-name* [ **not** ]
5. **exit**
6. (Optional) **delay** { **up** *seconds* | **down** *seconds* }
7. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**

- **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>track</b> <i>track-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# track track1	Enters track configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>track-name</i>—Specifies a name for the object to be tracked.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>type list boolean { and   or }</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-list)# type list boolean and	Configures a Boolean list object and enters track list configuration mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>boolean</b>—Specifies that the state of the tracked list is based on a Boolean calculation.</li> <li>• <b>and</b>—Specifies that the list is up if all objects are up, or down if one or more objects are down. For example when tracking two interfaces, up means that both interfaces are up, and down means that either interface is down.</li> <li>• <b>or</b>—Specifies that the list is up if at least one object is up. For example, when tracking two interfaces, up means that either interface is up, and down means that both interfaces are down.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>object</b> <i>object-name</i> [ <b>not</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-list)# object 3 not	Specifies the object to be tracked by the list <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>object-name</i>—Name of the object to track.</li> <li>• <b>not</b>—Negates the state of the object.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track-line-prot)# exit	Exits the track line protocol configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>delay {up seconds   down seconds}</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay up 10	Schedules the delay that can occur between tracking whether the object is up or down.
<b>Step 7</b>	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# end or	Saves configuration changes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes:</li> </ul> <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# commit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Tracking IPSLA Reachability

Use this task to enable the tracking of the return code of IP service level agreement (SLA) operations.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **track** *track-name*
3. **type rtr** *ipsla-no* **reachability**
4. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# <b>configure</b>	Enters global configuration mode.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>track</b> <i>track-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>track t1</b>	Enters track configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>type rtr</b> <i>ipsla-no</i> <b>reachability</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# <b>type rtr 100 reachability</b>	Specifies the IP SLA operation ID to be tracked for reachability. Values for the <i>ipsla-no</i> can range from 1 to 2048.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**Configuring IPSLA Tracking: Example**

This example shows the configuration of IPSLA tracking:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# track track1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# type rtr 1 reachability
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay up 5
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay down 10
```

## Configuration Examples for Configuring Object Tracking

**Configuring IPSLA Tracking: Example**

This example shows the configuration of IPSLA tracking, including the ACL and IPSLA configuration:

ACL configuration:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ipv4 access-list abf-track
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipv4-acl)# 10 permit any any nexthop track track1 1.2.3.4
```

Object tracking configuration:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# track track1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# type rtr 1 reachability
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay up 5
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-track)# delay down 10
```

IPSLA configuration:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# ipsla
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla)# operation 1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-op)# type icmp echo
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-icmp-echo)# source address 2.3.4.5
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-icmp-echo)# destination address 1.2.3.4
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-icmp-echo)# frequency 60
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-icmp-echo)# exit
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-op)# exit
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla)# schedule operation 1
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-sched)# start-time now
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-ipsla-sched)# life forever
```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to implementing object tracking for IPSec network security.



**Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
IP SLA configuration information	<i>Implementing IP Service Level Agreements on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module in <i>System Monitoring Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
IP SLA commands	<i>IP Service Level Agreement Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module in <i>System Monitoring Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Object tracking commands	<i>Object Tracking Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module in <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

**Standards**

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

**MIBs**

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

**RFCs**

RFCs	Title
RFC 2401	<i>Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol</i>

**Technical Assistance**

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>





## CHAPTER 17

# Configuring Physical and Virtual Terminals

Line templates define standard attribute settings for incoming and outgoing transport over physical and virtual terminal lines (vty). Vty pools are used to apply template settings to ranges of vtys.



**Note** Before creating or modifying the vty pools, enable the telnet server using the **telnet server** command in Global Configuration mode. See *IP Addresses and Services Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers* and *IP Addresses and Services Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers* for more information.

This module describes the new and revised tasks you need to implement physical and virtual terminals on your Cisco IOS XR network.

For more information about physical and virtual terminals on the Cisco IOS XR software and complete descriptions of the terminal services commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 338](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of running a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 43: Feature History for Implementing Physical and Virtual Templates on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	No modification.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals, on page 330](#)
- [Information About Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals, on page 330](#)
- [How to Implement Physical and Virtual Terminals on Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 332](#)
- [Craft Panel Interface, on page 336](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals, on page 336](#)
- [Additional References, on page 338](#)

# Prerequisites for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Information About Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals

To implement physical and virtual terminals, you need to understand the concepts in this section.

### Line Templates

The following line templates are available in the Cisco IOS XR software.

- Default line template—The default line template that applies to a physical and virtual terminal lines.
- Console line template—The line template that applies to the console line.
- User-defined line templates—User-defined line templates that can be applied to a range of virtual terminal lines.

### Line Template Configuration Mode

Changes to line template attributes are made in line template configuration mode. To enter line template configuration mode, issue the **line** command from Global Configuration mode, specifying the template to be modified. These line templates can be configured with the **line** command:

- console—console template
- default—default template
- template—user-defined template

After you specify a template with the **line** command, the router enters line template configuration mode where you can set the terminal attributes for the specified line. This example shows how to specify the attributes for the console:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# line console
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-line)#
```

From line template configuration mode, use the online help feature ( ? ) to view all available options. Some useful options include:

- absolute-timeout—Specifies a timeout value for line disconnection.
- escape-character—Changes the line escape character.
- exec-timeout—Specifies the EXEC timeout.
- length—Sets the number of lines displayed on the screen.

- session-limit—Specifies the allowable number of outgoing connections.
- session-timeout—Specifies an interval for closing the connection if there is no input traffic.
- timestamp—Displays the timestamp before each command.
- width—Specifies the width of the display terminal.

## Line Template Guidelines

The following guidelines apply to modifying the console template and to configuring a user-defined template:

- Modify the templates for the physical terminal lines on the router (the console port) from line template configuration mode. Use the **line console** command from Global Configuration mode to enter line template configuration mode for the console template.
- Modify the template for virtual lines by configuring a user-defined template with the **line template-name** command, configuring the terminal attributes for the user-defined template from line template configuration, and applying the template to a range of virtual terminal lines using the **vtty pool** command.

Attributes not defined in the console template, or any virtual template, are taken from the default template.

The default settings for the default template are described for all commands in line template configuration mode in the *Terminal Services Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router* module in *System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers*.



### Note

Before creating or modifying the vty pools, enable the telnet server using the **telnet server** command in Global Configuration mode. See *IP Addresses and Services Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers* and *IP Addresses and Services Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers* for more information.

## Terminal Identification

The physical terminal lines for the console port is identified by its location, expressed in the format of *rack/slot/module*, on the active or standby route processor (RP) where the respective console port resides. For virtual terminals, physical location is not applicable; the Cisco IOS XR software assigns a vty identifier to vtys according to the order in which the vty connection has been established.

## vty Pools

Each virtual line is a member of a pool of connections using a common line template configuration. Multiple vty pools may exist, each containing a defined number of vtys as configured in the vty pool. The Cisco IOS XR software supports the following vty pools by default:

- Default vty pool—The default vty pool consists of five vtys (vtys 0 through 4) that each reference the default line template.
- Default fault manager pool—The default fault manager pool consists of six vtys (vtys 100 through 105) that each reference the default line template.

In addition to the default vty pool and default fault manager pool, you can also configure a user-defined vty pool that can reference the default template or a user-defined template.

When configuring vty pools, follow these guidelines:

- The vty range for the default vty pool must start at vty 0 and must contain a minimum of five vtys.
- The vty range from 0 through 99 can reference the default vty pool.
- The vty range from 5 through 99 can reference a user-defined vty pool.
- The vty range from 100 is reserved for the fault manager vty pool.
- The vty range for fault manager vty pools must start at vty 100 and must contain a minimum of six vtys.
- A vty can be a member of only one vty pool. A vty pool configuration will fail if the vty pool includes a vty that is already in another pool.
- If you attempt to remove an active vty from the active vty pool when configuring a vty pool, the configuration for that vty pool will fail.

# How to Implement Physical and Virtual Terminals on Cisco IOS XR Software

## Modifying Templates

This task explains how to modify the terminal attributes for the console and default line templates. The terminal attributes that you set will modify the template settings for the specified template.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **line {console | default}**
3. Configure the terminal attribute settings for the specified template using the commands in line template configuration mode.
4. Use one of the following commands:
  - **end**
  - **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>line {console   default}</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# line console  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# line default	Enters line template configuration mode for the specified line template.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>console</b> —Enters line template configuration mode for the console template.</li> <li>• <b>default</b> —Enters line template configuration mode for the default line template.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	Configure the terminal attribute settings for the specified template using the commands in line template configuration mode.	—
<b>Step 4</b>	<p>Use one of the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>end</b></li> <li>• <b>commit</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# end</pre> <p>or</p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# commit</pre>	<p>Saves configuration changes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you issue the <b>end</b> command, the system prompts you to commit changes: <pre>Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering <b>yes</b> saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.</li> <li>• Entering <b>no</b> exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.</li> <li>• Entering <b>cancel</b> leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Use the <b>commit</b> command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.</li> </ul>

## Creating and Modifying vty Pools

This task explains how to create and modify vty pools.

You can omit [Step 3, on page 334](#) to [Step 5, on page 334](#) if you are configuring the default line template to reference a vty pool.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **telnet** {**ipv4** | **ipv6**} **server** **max-servers** *limit*
3. **line template** *template-name*
4. Configure the terminal attribute settings for the specified line template using the commands in line template configuration mode.
5. **exit**
6. **vtty-pool** {**default** | *pool-name* | **eem**} *first-vty last-vty* [**line-template** {**default** | *template-name*}]
7. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>telnet {ipv4   ipv6} server max-servers limit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# telnet ipv4 server max-servers 10	Specifies the number of allowable Telnet servers. Up to 100 Telnet servers are allowed.  <b>Note</b> By default no Telnet servers are allowed. You must configure this command in order to enable the use of Telnet servers.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>line template template-name</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template 1	Enters line template configuration mode for a user-defined template.
<b>Step 4</b>	Configure the terminal attribute settings for the specified line template using the commands in line template configuration mode.	—
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>exit</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# exit	Exits line template configuration mode and returns the router to global configuration mode.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>vty-pool {default   pool-name   eem} first-vty last-vty [line-template {default   template-name}]</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# vty-pool default 0 5 line-template default  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# vty-pool pool1 5 50 line-template template1  or  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# vty-pool eem 100 105 line-template template1	Creates or modifies vty pools. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you do not specify a line template with the <b>line-template</b> keyword, a vty pool defaults to the default line template.</li> <li><b>default</b> —Configures the default vty pool. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default vty pool must start at vty 0 and must contain a minimum of five vtys (vtys 0 through 4).</li> <li>You can resize the default vty pool by increasing the range of vtys that compose the default vty pool.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>pool-name</b> —Creates a user-defined vty pool. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A user-defined pool must start at least at vty 5, depending on whether the default vty pool has been resized.</li> <li>If the range of vtys for the default vty pool has been resized, use the first range value free from the default line template. For example, if the range of vtys for the default vty pool has been configured to include 10 vtys (vty 0 through 9),</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>the range value for the user-defined vty pool must start with vty 10.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>eam</b> —Configures the embedded event manager pool.</li> <li>• The default embedded event manager vty pool must start at vty 100 and must contain a minimum of six vtys (vtys 100 through 105).</li> <li>• <b>line-template</b> <i>template-name</i> —Configures the vty pool to reference a user-defined template.</li> </ul>
Step 7	commit	

## Monitoring Terminals and Terminal Sessions

This task explains how to monitor terminals and terminal sessions using the **show EXEC** commands available for physical and terminal lines.



**Note** The commands can be entered in any order.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) **show line** [**aux location** *node-id* | **console location** *node-id* | **vtty number**]
2. (Optional) **show terminal**
3. (Optional) **show users**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<p>(Optional) <b>show line</b> [<b>aux location</b> <i>node-id</i>   <b>console location</b> <i>node-id</i>   <b>vtty number</b>]</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show line</pre>	<p>Displays the terminal parameters of terminal lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specifying the <b>show line aux location</b> <i>node-id</i> EXEC command displays the terminal parameters of the auxiliary line.</li> <li>• Specifying the <b>show line console location</b> <i>node-id</i> EXEC command displays the terminal parameters of the console. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the <b>location</b> <i>node-id</i> keyword and argument, enter the location of the Route Processor (RP) on which the respective auxiliary or console port resides.</li> <li>• The <i>node-id</i> argument is expressed in the format of <i>rack/slot/module</i>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specifying the <code>show line vty number EXEC</code> command displays the terminal parameters for the specified vty.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>show terminal</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show terminal</pre>	Displays the terminal attribute settings for the current terminal line.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>show users</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show users</pre>	Displays information about the active lines on the router.

## Craft Panel Interface

The Craft Panel is an easily-accessible and user-friendly interface which assists the field operator in troubleshooting the router. It consists of a LCD display and three LEDs. The LEDs indicate minor, major and critical alarms.

For more details of the Craft Panel Interface, refer the *Hardware and System set-up guides*.

## Configuration Examples for Implementing Physical and Virtual Terminals

### Modifying the Console Template: Example

This configuration example shows how to modify the terminal attribute settings for the console line template:

```
line console
 exec-timeout 0 0
 escape-character 0x5a
 session-limit 10
 disconnect-character 0x59
 session-timeout 100
 transport input telnet
 transport output telnet
```

In this configuration example, the following terminal attributes are applied to the console line template:

- The EXEC time out for terminal sessions is set to 0 minutes, 0 seconds. Setting the EXEC timeout to 0 minutes and 0 seconds disables the EXEC timeout function; thus, the EXEC session for the terminal session will never time out.

- The escape character is set to the 0x5a hexadecimal value (the 0x5a hexadecimal value translates into the “Z” character).
- The session limit for outgoing terminal sessions is set to 10 connections.
- The disconnect character is set to 0x59 hexadecimal value (the 0x59 hexadecimal character translates into the “Y” character).
- The session time out for outgoing terminal sessions is set to 100 minutes (1 hour and 40 minutes).
- The allowed transport protocol for incoming terminal sessions is Telnet.
- The allowed transport protocol for outgoing terminal sessions is Telnet.

To verify that the terminal attributes for the console line template have been applied to the console, use the **show line** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show line console location 0/0/CPU0
```

Tty	Speed	Modem	Uses	Noise	Overruns	Acc I/O
* con0/0/CPU0	9600	-	-	-	0/0	-/-

```
Line con0_0_CPU0, Location "Unknown", Type "Unknown"
Length: 24 lines, Width: 80 columns
Baud rate (TX/RX) is 9600, 1 parity, 2 stopbits, 8 databits
Template: console
Config:
Allowed transports are telnet.
```

### Modifying the Default Template: Example

This configuration example shows how to override the terminal settings for the default line template:

```
line default
  exec-timeout 0 0
  width 512
  length 512
```

In this example, the following terminal attributes override the default line template default terminal attribute settings:

- The EXEC timeout for terminal sessions is set to 0 minutes and 0 seconds. Setting the EXEC timeout to 0 minutes and 0 seconds disables the EXEC timeout function; thus, the EXEC session for the terminal session will never time out (the default EXEC timeout for the default line template is 10 minutes).
- The width of the terminal screen for the terminals referencing the default template is set to 512 characters (the default width for the default line template is 80 characters).
- The length, the number of lines that will display at one time on the terminal referencing the default template, is set to 512 lines (the default length for the default line template is 24 lines).

### Configuring a User-Defined Template to Reference the Default vty Pool: Example

This configuration example shows how to configure a user-defined line template (named test in this example) for vtys and to configure the line template test to reference the default vty pool:

```
line template test
  exec-timeout 100 0
```

```

width 100
length 100
exit
vty-pool default 0 4 line-template test

```

### Configuring a User-Defined Template to Reference a User-Defined vty Pool: Example

This configuration example shows how to configure a user-defined line template (named test2 in this example) for vtys and to configure the line template test to reference a user-defined vty pool (named pool1 in this example):

```

line template test2
  exec-timeout 0 0
  session-limit 10
  session-timeout 100
  transport input all
  transport output all
  exit
vty-pool pool1 5 50 line-template test2

```

### Configuring a User-Defined Template to Reference the Fault Manager vty Pool: Example

This configuration example shows how to configure a user-defined line template (named test3 in this example) for vtys and to configure the line template test to reference the fault manager vty pool:

```

line template test3
  width 110
  length 100
  session-timeout 100
  exit
vty-pool eem 100 106 line-template test3

```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to implementing physical and virtual terminals on Cisco IOS XR software.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR terminal services commands	<i>Terminal Services Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router module of System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR command master index	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Information about getting started with Cisco IOS XR software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>

Related Topic	Document Title
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

### Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

### MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

### RFCs

RFCs	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

### Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>





## CHAPTER 18

# Configuring Simple Network Management Protocol

*Simple Network Management Protocol* (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.

This module describes the new and revised tasks you need to implement SNMP on your Cisco IOS XR network.

For detailed conceptual information about SNMP on the Cisco IOS XR software and complete descriptions of the SNMP commands listed in this module, see [Related Documents, on page 364](#). For information on specific MIBs, refer to *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Routers MIB Specifications Guide*. To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of performing a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 44: Feature History for Implementing SNMP on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	Support was added for 3DES and AES encryption. The ability to preserve ENTITY-MIB and CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB data was added.
Release 4.2.0	Support was added for SNMP over IPv6.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Implementing SNMP, on page 342](#)
- [Restrictions for SNMP Use on Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 342](#)
- [Information About Implementing SNMP, on page 342](#)
- [Session MIB support on subscriber sessions , on page 348](#)
- [How to Implement SNMP on Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 349](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing SNMP, on page 358](#)
- [Additional References, on page 364](#)

## Prerequisites for Implementing SNMP

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Restrictions for SNMP Use on Cisco IOS XR Software

SNMP outputs are only 32-bits wide and therefore cannot display any information greater than  $2^{32}$ .  $2^{32}$  is equal to 4.29 Gigabits. Note that a 10 Gigabit interface is greater than this and so if you are trying to display speed information regarding the interface, you might see concatenated results.

## Information About Implementing SNMP

To implement SNMP, you need to understand the concepts described in this section.

### SNMP Functional Overview

The SNMP framework consists of three parts:

- SNMP manager
- SNMP agent
- Management Information Base (MIB)

### SNMP Manager

The SNMP manager is the system used to control and monitor the activities of network hosts using SNMP. The most common managing system is called a *network management system* (NMS). The term NMS can be applied to either a dedicated device used for network management, or the applications used on such a device. A variety of network management applications are available for use with SNMP. These features range from simple command-line applications to feature-rich graphical user interfaces (such as the CiscoWorks 2000 line of products).

### SNMP Agent

The SNMP agent is the software component within the managed device that maintains the data for the device and reports these data, as needed, to managing systems. The agent and MIB reside on the router. To enable the SNMP agent, you must define the relationship between the manager and the agent.

### MIB

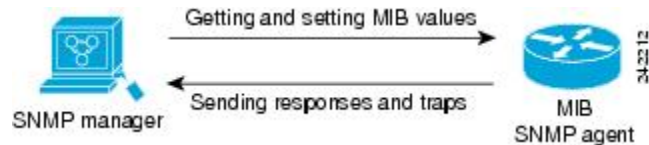
The *Management Information Base* (MIB) is a virtual information storage area for network management information, which consists of collections of managed objects. Within the MIB there are collections of related objects, defined in MIB modules. MIB modules are written in the SNMP MIB module language, as defined in STD 58, RFC 2578, RFC 2579, and RFC 2580. Note that individual MIB modules are also referred to as MIBs; for example, the Interfaces Group MIB (IF-MIB) is a MIB module within the MIB on your system.



The SNMP agent contains MIB variables whose values the SNMP manager can request or change through Get or Set operations. A manager can get a value from an agent or store a value into that agent. The agent gathers data from the MIB, the repository for information about device parameters and network data. The agent can also respond to manager requests to get or set data.

This figure illustrates the communications relationship between the SNMP manager and agent. A manager can send the agent requests to get and set MIB values. The agent can respond to these requests. Independent of this interaction, the agent can send unsolicited notifications (traps) to the manager to notify the manager of network conditions.

**Figure 10: Communication Between an SNMP Agent and Manager**



### Related Topics

[Additional References](#), on page 364

## SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent. These notifications do not require that requests be sent from the SNMP manager. On Cisco IOS XR software, unsolicited (asynchronous) notifications can be generated only as *traps*. Traps are messages alerting the SNMP manager to a condition on the network. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to a neighbor router, or other significant events.



### Note

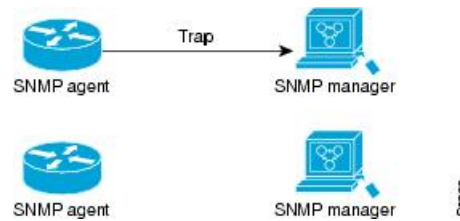
Inform requests (inform operations) are supported in Cisco IOS XR software from release 4.1 onwards. For more information see, [http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/asr9000/software/asr9k\\_r5-3/sysman/command/reference/b-sysman-cr53xasr/b-sysman-cr53xasr\\_chapter\\_010010.html#wp2863682680](http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/asr9000/software/asr9k_r5-3/sysman/command/reference/b-sysman-cr53xasr/b-sysman-cr53xasr_chapter_010010.html#wp2863682680)

Traps are less reliable than informs because the receiver does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. The sender cannot determine if the trap was received. An SNMP manager that receives an inform request acknowledges the message with an SNMP response protocol data unit (PDU). If the manager does not receive an inform request, it does not send a response. If the sender never receives a response, the inform request can be sent again. Thus, informs are more likely to reach their intended destination.

However, traps are often preferred because informs consume more resources in the router and in the network. Unlike a trap, which is discarded as soon as it is sent, an inform request must be held in memory until a response is received or the request times out. Also, traps are sent only once, and an inform may be retried several times. The retries increase traffic and contribute to a higher overhead on the network. Thus, traps and inform requests provide a trade-off between reliability and resources.

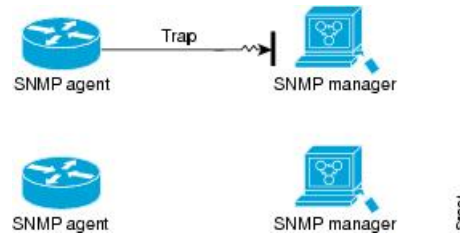
**Figure 11: Trap Received by the SNMP Manager**

In this illustration, the agent router sends a trap to the SNMP manager. Although the manager receives the trap, it does not send any acknowledgment to the agent. The agent has no way of knowing that the trap reached its destination.



**Figure 12: Trap Not Received by the SNMP Manager**

In this illustration, the agent sends a trap to the manager, but the trap does not reach the manager. Because the agent has no way of knowing that the trap did not reach its destination, the trap is not sent again. The manager never receives the trap.



## SNMP Versions

Cisco IOS XR software supports the following versions of SNMP:

- Simple Network Management Protocol Version 1 (SNMPv1)
- Simple Network Management Protocol Version 2c (SNMPv2c)
- Simple Network Management Protocol Version 3 (SNMPv3)

Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c use a community-based form of security. The community of managers able to access the agent MIB is defined by an IP address access control list and password.

SNMPv2c support includes a bulk retrieval mechanism and more detailed error message reporting to management stations. The bulk retrieval mechanism supports the retrieval of tables and large quantities of information, minimizing the number of round-trips required. The SNMPv2c improved error handling support includes expanded error codes that distinguish different kinds of error conditions; these conditions are reported through a single error code in SNMPv1. Error return codes now report the error type. Three kinds of exceptions are also reported: no such object exceptions, no such instance exceptions, and end of MIB view exceptions.

SNMPv3 is a security model. A *security model* is an authentication strategy that is set up for a user and the group in which the user resides. A *security level* is the permitted level of security within a security model. A combination of a security model and a security level will determine which security mechanism is employed when an SNMP packet is handled. See [Table 46: SNMP Security Models and Levels, on page 345](#) for a list of security levels available in SNMPv3. The SNMPv3 feature supports RFCs 3411 to 3418.

You must configure the SNMP agent to use the version of SNMP supported by the management station. An agent can communicate with multiple managers; for this reason, you can configure the Cisco IOS-XR software to support communications with one management station using the SNMPv1 protocol, one using the SNMPv2c protocol, and another using SMNPv3.

## Comparison of SNMPv1, v2c, and v3

SNMP v1, v2c, and v3 all support the following operations:

- get-request—Retrieves a value from a specific variable.
- get-next-request—Retrieves the value following the named variable; this operation is often used to retrieve variables from within a table. With this operation, an SNMP manager does not need to know the exact variable name. The SNMP manager searches sequentially to find the needed variable from within the MIB.
- get-response—Operation that replies to a get-request, get-next-request, and set-request sent by an NMS.
- set-request—Operation that stores a value in a specific variable.
- trap—Unsolicited message sent by an SNMP agent to an SNMP manager when some event has occurred.

The below table identifies other key SNMP features supported by the SNMP v1, v2c, and v3.

**Table 45: SNMPv1, v2c, and v3 Feature Support**

Feature	SNMP v1	SNMP v2c	SNMP v3
Get-Bulk Operation	No	Yes	Yes
Inform Operation	No	Yes (No on the Cisco IOS XR software)	Yes (No on the Cisco IOS XR software)
64 Bit Counter	No	Yes	Yes
Textual Conventions	No	Yes	Yes
Authentication	No	No	Yes
Privacy (Encryption)	No	No	Yes
Authorization and Access Controls (Views)	No	No	Yes

## Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, v3

The security level determines if an SNMP message needs to be protected from disclosure and if the message needs to be authenticated. The various security levels that exist within a security model are as follows:

- noAuthNoPriv—Security level that does not provide authentication or encryption.
- authNoPriv—Security level that provides authentication but does not provide encryption.
- authPriv—Security level that provides both authentication and encryption.

Three security models are available: SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. The security model combined with the security level determine the security mechanism applied when the SNMP message is processed.

The below table identifies what the combinations of security models and levels mean.

**Table 46: SNMP Security Models and Levels**

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	What Happens
v1	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	What Happens
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v3	noAuthNoPriv	Username	No	Uses a username match for authentication.
v3	authNoPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	No	Provides authentication based on the HMAC <sup>4</sup> -MD5 <sup>5</sup> algorithm or the HMAC-SHA <sup>6</sup> .
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	DES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides DES <sup>7</sup> 56-bit encryption in addition to authentication based on the CBC <sup>8</sup> DES (DES-56) standard.
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	3DES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides 168-bit 3DES <sup>9</sup> level of encryption.
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	AES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides 128-bit AES <sup>10</sup> level of encryption.

<sup>4</sup> Hash-Based Message Authentication Code

<sup>5</sup> Message Digest 5

<sup>6</sup> Secure Hash Algorithm

<sup>7</sup> Data Encryption Standard

<sup>8</sup> Cipher Block Chaining

<sup>9</sup> Triple Data Encryption Standard

<sup>10</sup> Advanced Encryption Standard

Use of 3DES and AES encryption standards requires that the security package (k9sec) be installed. For information on installing software packages, see *Upgrading and Managing Cisco IOS XR Software*.

## SNMPv3 Benefits

SNMPv3 provides secure access to devices by providing authentication, encryption and access control. These added security benefits secure SNMP against the following security threats:

- **Masquerade**—The threat that an SNMP user may assume the identity of another SNMP user to perform management operations for which that SNMP user does not have authorization.
- **Message stream modification**—The threat that messages may be maliciously reordered, delayed, or replayed (to an extent that is greater than can occur through the natural operation of a subnetwork service) to cause SNMP to perform unauthorized management operations.
- **Disclosure**—The threat that exchanges between SNMP engines could be eavesdropped. Protecting against this threat may be required as a matter of local policy.

In addition, SNMPv3 provides access control over protocol operations on SNMP managed objects.

## SNMPv3 Costs

SNMPv3 authentication and encryption contribute to a slight increase in the response time when SNMP operations on MIB objects are performed. This cost is far outweighed by the security advantages provided by SNMPv3.

This table shows the order of response time (from least to greatest) for the various security model and security level combinations.

*Table 47: Order of Response Times from Least to Greatest*

Security Model	Security Level
SNMPv2c	noAuthNoPriv
SNMPv3	noAuthNoPriv
SNMPv3	authNoPriv
SNMPv3	authPriv

## User-Based Security Model

SNMPv3 User-Based Security Model (USM) refers to SNMP message-level security and offers the following services:

- Message integrity—Ensures that messages have not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner and that data sequences have not been altered to an extent greater than can occur nonmaliciously.
- Message origin authentication—Ensures that the claimed identity of the user on whose behalf received data was originated is confirmed.
- Message confidentiality—Ensures that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities, or processes.

SNMPv3 authorizes management operations only by configured users and encrypts SNMP messages.

USM uses two authentication protocols:

- HMAC-MD5-96 authentication protocol
- HMAC-SHA-96 authentication protocol

USM uses Cipher Block Chaining (CBC)-DES (DES-56) as the privacy protocol for message encryption.

## View-Based Access Control Model

The View-Based Access Control Model (VACM) enables SNMP users to control access to SNMP managed objects by supplying read, write, or notify access to SNMP objects. It prevents access to objects restricted by views. These access policies can be set when user groups are configured with the **snmp-server group** command.

## MIB Views

For security reasons, it is often valuable to be able to restrict the access rights of some groups to only a subset of the management information within the management domain. To provide this capability, access to a

management object is controlled through MIB views, which contain the set of managed object types (and, optionally, the specific instances of object types) that can be viewed.

## Access Policy

Access policy determines the access rights of a group. The three types of access rights are as follows:

- read-view access—The set of object instances authorized for the group when objects are read.
- write-view access—The set of object instances authorized for the group when objects are written.
- notify-view access—The set of object instances authorized for the group when objects are sent in a notification.

## IP Precedence and DSCP Support for SNMP

SNMP IP Precedence and differentiated services code point (DSCP) support delivers QoS specifically for SNMP traffic. You can change the priority setting so that SNMP traffic generated in a router is assigned a specific QoS class. The IP Precedence or IP DSCP code point value is used to determine how packets are handled in weighted random early detection (WRED).

After the IP Precedence or DSCP is set for the SNMP traffic generated in a router, different QoS classes cannot be assigned to different types of SNMP traffic in that router.

The IP Precedence value is the first three bits in the type of service (ToS) byte of an IP header. The IP DSCP code point value is the first six bits of the differentiate services (DiffServ Field) byte. You can configure up to eight different IP Precedence markings or 64 different IP DSCP markings.

## Session MIB support on subscriber sessions

SNMP monitoring requires information about subscribers of all types. The CISCO-SUBSCRIBER-SESSION-MIB is defined to model per-subscriber data as well as aggregate subscriber (PPPoE) data. It is required to support notifications (traps) for aggregate session counts crossing configured thresholds. Generic MIB Data Collector Manager (DCM) support for CISCO-SUBSCRIBER-SESSION-MIB, helps faster data collection and also better handling of parallel data.

## SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent. These notifications do not require that requests be sent from the SNMP manager. On Cisco IOS XR software, unsolicited (asynchronous) notifications can be generated only as *traps*. Traps are messages alerting the SNMP manager to a condition on the network. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to a neighbor router, or other significant events.



### Note

Inform requests (inform operations) are supported in Cisco IOS XR software from release 4.1 onwards. For more information see, [http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/asr9000/software/asr9k\\_r5-3/sysman/command/reference/b-sysman-cr53xasr/b-sysman-cr53xasr\\_chapter\\_010010.html#wp2863682680](http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/asr9000/software/asr9k_r5-3/sysman/command/reference/b-sysman-cr53xasr/b-sysman-cr53xasr_chapter_010010.html#wp2863682680)

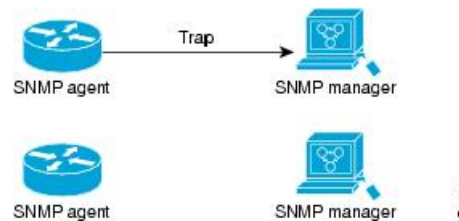
Traps are less reliable than informs because the receiver does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. The sender cannot determine if the trap was received. An SNMP manager that receives an inform request acknowledges the message with an SNMP response protocol data unit (PDU). If the manager does

not receive an inform request, it does not send a response. If the sender never receives a response, the inform request can be sent again. Thus, informs are more likely to reach their intended destination.

However, traps are often preferred because informs consume more resources in the router and in the network. Unlike a trap, which is discarded as soon as it is sent, an inform request must be held in memory until a response is received or the request times out. Also, traps are sent only once, and an inform may be retried several times. The retries increase traffic and contribute to a higher overhead on the network. Thus, traps and inform requests provide a trade-off between reliability and resources.

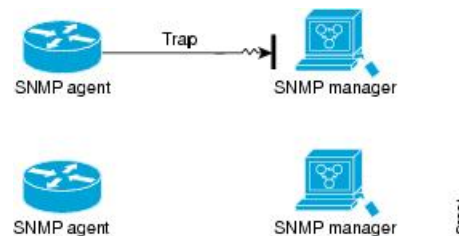
**Figure 13: Trap Received by the SNMP Manager**

In this illustration, the agent router sends a trap to the SNMP manager. Although the manager receives the trap, it does not send any acknowledgment to the agent. The agent has no way of knowing that the trap reached its destination.



**Figure 14: Trap Not Received by the SNMP Manager**

In this illustration, the agent sends a trap to the manager, but the trap does not reach the manager. Because the agent has no way of knowing that the trap did not reach its destination, the trap is not sent again. The manager never receives the trap.



## Session Types

The supported session types are:

- PPPoE
- IP SUB PKT
- IP SUB DHCP

## How to Implement SNMP on Cisco IOS XR Software

This section describes how to implement SNMP.

The **snmp-server** commands enable SNMP on Management Ethernet interfaces by default. For information on how to enable SNMP server support on other inband interfaces, see the *Implementing Management Plane*

*Protection on Cisco IOS XR Software module in System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers.*

## Configuring SNMPv3

This task explains how to configure SNMPv3 for network management and monitoring.



### Note

No specific command enables SNMPv3; the first **snmp-server** global configuration command (config), that you issue enables SNMPv3. Therefore, the sequence in which you issue the **snmp-server** commands for this task does not matter.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server view** *view-name oid-tree {included | excluded}*
3. **snmp-server group** *name {v1 | v2c | v3 {auth | noauth | priv}}* [*read view*] [*write view*] [*notify view*] [*access-list-name*]
4. **snmp-server user** *username groupname {v1 | v2c | v3 [auth {md5 | sha} {clear | encrypted} auth-password [priv des56 {clear | encrypted} priv-password]]}* [*access-list-name*]
5. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server view</b> <i>view-name oid-tree {included   excluded}</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server view view_name 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 included	Creates or modifies a view record.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>snmp-server group</b> <i>name {v1   v2c   v3 {auth   noauth   priv}}</i> [ <i>read view</i> ] [ <i>write view</i> ] [ <i>notify view</i> ] [ <i>access-list-name</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server group group_name v3 noauth read view_name1 write view_name2	Configures a new SNMP group or a table that maps SNMP users to SNMP views.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>snmp-server user</b> <i>username groupname {v1   v2c   v3 [auth {md5   sha} {clear   encrypted}</i>	Configures a new user to an SNMP group.



	Command or Action	Purpose
	<b>auth-password</b> [ <b>priv des56</b> { <b>clear</b>   <b>encrypted</b> } <b>priv-password</b> ]]] [ <b>access-list-name</b> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server user noauthuser group_name v3	<b>Note</b> Only one remote host can be assigned to the same username for SNMP version 3. If you configure the same username with different remote hosts, only the last username and remote host combination will be accepted and will be seen in the <b>show running</b> configuration. In the case of multiple SNMP managers, multiple unique usernames are required.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Configuring SNMP Trap Notifications

This task explains how to configure the router to send SNMP trap notifications.



**Note** You can omit [Step 3, on page 350](#) if you have already completed the steps documented under the [Configuring SNMPv3, on page 350](#) task.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server group** *name* {**v1** | **v2c** | **v3** {**auth** | **noauth** | **priv**}} [**read view**] [**write view**] [**notify view**] [**access-list-name**]
3. **snmp-server user** *username* *groupname* {**v1** | **v2c** | **v3** [**auth** {**md5** | **sha**} {**clear** | **encrypted**} **auth-password** [**priv des56** {**clear** | **encrypted**} **priv-password**]]] [**access-list-name**]
4. **snmp-server host** *address* [**traps**] [**version** {**1** | **2c** | **3** [**auth** | **noauth** | **priv**]]] *community-string* [**udp-port port**] [**notification-type**]
5. **snmp-server traps** [**notification-type**]
6. **commit**
7. (Optional) **show snmp host**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server group</b> <i>name</i> { <b>v1</b>   <b>v2c</b>   <b>v3</b> { <b>auth</b>   <b>noauth</b>   <b>priv</b> }} [ <b>read view</b> ] [ <b>write view</b> ] [ <b>notify view</b> ] [ <b>access-list-name</b> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server group group_name v3 noauth read view_name1 write view_name2	Configures a new SNMP group or a table that maps SNMP users to SNMP views.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>snmp-server user</b> <i>username groupname</i> { <i>v1</i>   <i>v2c</i>   <i>v3</i> [ <i>auth</i> { <i>md5</i>   <i>sha</i> } { <i>clear</i>   <i>encrypted</i> } <i>auth-password</i> [ <i>priv des56</i> { <i>clear</i>   <i>encrypted</i> } <i>priv-password</i> ]]] [ <i>access-list-name</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server user noauthuser group_name v3	Configures a new user to an SNMP group.  <b>Note</b> Only one remote host can be assigned to the same username for SNMP version 3. If you configure the same username with different remote hosts, only the last username and remote host combination will be accepted and will be seen in the <b>show running</b> configuration. In the case of multiple SNMP managers, multiple unique usernames are required.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>snmp-server host</b> <i>address</i> [ <i>traps</i> ] [ <i>version</i> { <i>1</i>   <i>2c</i>   <i>3</i> [ <i>auth</i>   <i>noauth</i>   <i>priv</i> ]}] <i>community-string</i> [ <i>udp-port port</i> ] [ <i>notification-type</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server host 12.26.25.61 traps version 3 noauth userV3noauth	Specifies SNMP trap notifications, the version of SNMP to use, the security level of the notifications, and the recipient (host) of the notifications.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>snmp-server traps</b> [ <i>notification-type</i> ]  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server traps bgp	Enables the sending of trap notifications and specifies the type of trap notifications to be sent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a trap is not specified with the <i>notification-type</i> argument, all supported trap notifications are enabled on the router. To display which trap notifications are available on your router, enter the <b>snmp-server traps ?</b> command.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 7</b>	(Optional) <b>show snmp host</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp host	Displays information about the configured SNMP notification recipient (host), port number, and security model.

## Setting the Contact, Location, and Serial Number of the SNMP Agent

This task explains how to set the system contact string, system location string, and system serial number of the SNMP agent.



### Note

The sequence in which you issue the **snmp-server** commands for this task does not matter.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. (Optional) **snmp-server contact** *system-contact-string*
3. (Optional) **snmp-server location** *system-location*

4. (Optional) **snmp-server chassis-id** *serial-number*
5. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server contact</b> <i>system-contact-string</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server contact Dial System Operator at beeper # 27345	Sets the system contact string.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server location</b> <i>system-location</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server location Building 3/Room 214	Sets the system location string.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server chassis-id</b> <i>serial-number</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server chassis-id 1234456	Sets the system serial number.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Defining the Maximum SNMP Agent Packet Size

This task shows how to configure the largest SNMP packet size permitted when the SNMP server is receiving a request or generating a reply.



**Note** The sequence in which you issue the **snmp-server** commands for this task does not matter.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. (Optional) **snmp-server packetsize** *byte-count*
3. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server packetsize</b> <i>byte-count</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server packetsize 1024	Sets the maximum packet size.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Changing Notification Operation Values

After SNMP notifications have been enabled, you can specify a value other than the default for the source interface, message queue length, or retransmission interval.

This task explains how to specify a source interface for trap notifications, the message queue length for each host, and the retransmission interval.



### Note

The sequence in which you issue the **snmp-server** commands for this task does not matter.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. (Optional) **snmp-server trap-source** *type interface-path-id*
3. (Optional) **snmp-server queue-length** *length*
4. (Optional) **snmp-server trap-timeout** *seconds*
5. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server trap-source</b> <i>type interface-path-id</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server trap-source POS 0/0/1/0	Specifies a source interface for trap notifications.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server queue-length</b> <i>length</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server queue-length 20	Establishes the message queue length for each notification.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server trap-timeout</b> <i>seconds</i>  <b>Example:</b>	Defines how often to resend notifications on the retransmission queue.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server trap-timeout 20	
Step 5	commit	

## Setting IP Precedence and DSCP Values

This task describes how to configure IP Precedence or IP DSCP for SNMP traffic.

### Before you begin

SNMP must be configured.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. Use one of the following commands:
  - **snmp-server ipv4 precedence** *value*
  - **snmp-server ipv4 dscp** *value*
3. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure	
Step 2	Use one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>snmp-server ipv4 precedence</b> <i>value</i></li> <li>• <b>snmp-server ipv4 dscp</b> <i>value</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server dscp 24</pre>	Configures an IP precedence or IP DSCP value for SNMP traffic.
Step 3	commit	

## Configuring MIB Data to be Persistent

Many SNMP MIB definitions define arbitrary 32-bit indices for their object tables. MIB implementations often do a mapping from the MIB indices to some internal data structure that is keyed by some other set of data. In these MIB tables the data contained in the table are often other identifiers of the element being modelled. For example, in the ENTITY-MIB, entries in the entPhysicalTable are indexed by the 31-bit value, entPhysicalIndex, but the entities could also be identified by the entPhysicalName or a combination of the other objects in the table.

Because of the size of some MIB tables, significant processing is required to discover all the mappings from the 32-bit MIB indices to the other data which the network management station identifies the entry. For this

reason, it may be necessary for some MIB indices to be persistent across process restarts, switchovers, or device reloads. The ENTITY-MIB entPhysicalTable and CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB are two such MIBs that often require index values to be persistent.

Also, because of query response times and CPU utilization during CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB statistics queries, it is desirable to cache service policy statistics.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. (Optional) **snmp-server entityindex persist**
2. (Optional) **snmp-server mibs cbqosmib persist**
3. (Optional) **snmp-server cbqosmib cache refresh time *time***
4. (Optional) **snmp-server cbqosmib cache service-policy count *count***
5. **snmp-server ifindex persist**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server entityindex persist</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>snmp-server entityindex persist</b>	Enables the persistent storage of ENTITY-MIB data.
<b>Step 2</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server mibs cbqosmib persist</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>snmp-server mibs cbqosmib persist</b>	Enables persistent storage of the CISCO-CLASS-BASED-QOS-MIB data.
<b>Step 3</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server cbqosmib cache refresh time <i>time</i></b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>snmp-server mibs cbqosmib cache refresh time 45</b>	Enables QoS MIB caching with a specified cache refresh time.
<b>Step 4</b>	(Optional) <b>snmp-server cbqosmib cache service-policy count <i>count</i></b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>snmp-server mibs cbqosmib cache service-policy count 50</b>	Enables QoS MIB caching with a limited number of service policies to cache.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>snmp-server ifindex persist</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# <b>snmp-server ifindex persist</b>	Enables ifIndex persistence globally on all Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) interfaces.

## Configuring LinkUp and LinkDown Traps for a Subset of Interfaces

By specifying a regular expression to represent the interfaces for which you are interested in setting traps, you can enable or disable linkUp and linkDown traps for a large number of interfaces simultaneously.

### Before you begin

SNMP must be configured.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server interface subset** *subset-number* **regular-expression** *expression*
3. **notification linkupdown disable**
4. **commit**
5. (Optional) **show snmp interface notification subset** *subset-number*
6. (Optional) **show snmp interface notification regular-expression** *expression*
7. (Optional) **show snmp interface notification** *type interface-path-id*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<b>configure</b>	
Step 2	<b>snmp-server interface subset</b> <i>subset-number</i> <b>regular-expression</b> <i>expression</i>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server interface subset 10     regular-expression "^Gig[a-zA-Z]+[0-9/]+\."</pre> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-if-subset)#	<p>Enters snmp-server interface mode for the interfaces identified by the regular expression.</p> <p>The <i>subset-number</i> argument identifies the set of interfaces, and also assigns a priority to the subset in the event that an interface is included in more than one subset. Lower numbers have higher priority and their configuration takes precedent over interface subsets with higher numbers.</p> <p>The <i>expression</i> argument must be entered surrounded by double quotes.</p> <p>Refer to the <i>Understanding Regular Expressions, Special Characters, and Patterns</i> module in <i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i> for more information regarding regular expressions.</p>
Step 3	<b>notification linkupdown disable</b>  <b>Example:</b>  <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-snmp-if-subset)# notification linkupdown disable</pre>	<p>Disables linkUp and linkDown traps for all interfaces being configured. To enable previously disabled interfaces, use the <b>no</b> form of this command.</p>
Step 4	<b>commit</b>	
Step 5	(Optional) <b>show snmp interface notification subset</b> <i>subset-number</i>  <b>Example:</b>	<p>Displays the linkUp and linkDown notification status for all interfaces identified by the subset priority.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp interface notification subset 10	
<b>Step 6</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>show snmp interface notification regular-expression <i>expression</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp interface notification regular-expression "^Gig[a-zA-Z]+[0-9/]+\."</pre>	Displays the linkUp and linkDown notification status for all interfaces identified by the regular expression.
<b>Step 7</b>	<p>(Optional) <b>show snmp interface notification <i>type interface-path-id</i></b></p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp interface notification tengige 0/4/0/3.10</pre>	Displays the linkUp and linkDown notification status for the specified interface.

# Configuration Examples for Implementing SNMP

## Configuring SNMPv3: Examples

### Setting an Engine ID

This example shows how to set the identification of the local SNMP engine:

```
snmp-server engineID local 00:00:00:09:00:00:00:a1:61:6c:20:61
```



#### Note

After the engine ID has been configured, the SNMP agent restarts.

### Verifying the Identification of the Local SNMP Engines

This example shows how to verify the identification of the local SNMP engine:

```
config
show snmp engineid

SNMP engineID 00000009000000a1ffffffff
```



## Creating a View

There are two ways to create a view:

- You can include the object identifier (OID) of an ASN.1 subtree of a MIB family from a view by using the **included** keyword of the **snmp-server view** command.
- You can exclude the OID subtree of the ASN.1 subtree of a MIB family from a view by using the **excluded** keyword of the **snmp-server view** command.

This example shows how to create a view that includes the sysName (1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5) object:

```
config
 snmp-server view SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 included
```

This example shows how to create a view that includes all the OIDs of a system group:

```
config
 snmp-server view SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
```

This example shows how to create a view that includes all the OIDs under the system group except the sysName object (1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5), which has been excluded:

```
config
 snmp-server view SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
 snmp-server view SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 excluded
```

## Verifying Configured Views

This example shows how to display information about the configured views:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp view

v1default 1.3.6.1 - included nonVolatile active
SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 - included nonVolatile active
SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 - excluded nonVolatile active
```

## Creating Groups

If you do not explicitly specify a notify, read, or write view, the Cisco IOS XR software uses the v1 default (1.3.6.1). This example shows how to create a group that utilizes the default view:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server group group-name v3 auth
```

The following configuration example shows how to create a group that has read access to all the OIDs in the system except the sysUpTime object (1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3), which has been excluded from the view applied to the group, but write access only to the sysName object (1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5):

!

```
snmp-server view view_name1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
snmp-server view view_name1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3 excluded
snmp-server view view_name2 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5 included
snmp-server group group_name1 v3 auth read view_name1 write view_name2
!
```

## Verifying Groups

This example shows how to verify the attributes of configured groups:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp group

groupname: group_name1          security model:usm
readview : view_name1          writeview: view_name2
notifyview: vldefault
row status: nonVolatile
```

## Creating and Verifying Users

Given the following SNMPv3 view and SNMPv3 group configuration:

```
!
snmp-server view view_name 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
snmp-server group group_name v3 noauth read view_name write view-name
!
```

This example shows how to create a noAuthNoPriv user with read and write view access to a system group:

```
config
snmp-server user noauthuser group_name v3
```



### Note

The user must belong to a noauth group before a noAuthNoPriv user can be created.

Only one remote host can be assigned to the same username for SNMP version 3. If you configure the same username with different remote hosts, only the last username and remote host combination will be accepted and will be seen in the show running configuration. In the case of multiple SNMP managers, multiple unique usernames are required.

This example shows the same username case which only the last configuration will be accepted:

```
snmp-server user username nervectrgrp remote 10.69.236.146 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
<password> priv aes 128 <password>
snmp-server user username nervectrgrp remote 10.214.127.2 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha <password>
priv aes 128 <password>
snmp-server user username nervectrgrp remote 10.69.236.147 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
<password> priv aes 128 <password>
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run snmp-server user

snmp-server user username nervectrgrp remote 10.69.236.147 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
```

```
encrypted <password> priv aes 128 encrypted <password>
```

This example shows all 3 hosts for username1, username2, and username3 will be accepted.

:

```
snmp-server user username1 nectrgrp remote 10.69.236.146 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
<password> priv aes 128 <password>
snmp-server user username2 nectrgrp remote 10.214.127.2 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
<password> priv aes 128 <password>
snmp-server user username3 nectrgrp remote 10.69.236.147 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
<password> priv aes 128 <password>
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show run snmp-server user

snmp-server user batmanusr1 nectrgrp remote 10.69.236.146 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
encrypted <password> priv aes 128 encrypted <password>
snmp-server user batmanusr2 nectrgrp remote 10.214.127.2 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
encrypted <password> priv aes 128 encrypted <password>
snmp-server user batmanusr3 nectrgrp remote 10.69.236.147 udp-port 162 v3 auth sha
encrypted <password> priv aes 128 encrypted <password>
```

This example shows how to verify the attributes that apply to the SNMP user:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp user
```

```
User name: noauthuser
Engine ID: localSnmpID
storage-type: nonvolatile active
```

Given the following SNMPv3 view and SNMPv3 group configuration:

```
!
snmp-server view SNMP_VIEW1 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
snmp-server group SNMP_GROUP1 v3 auth notify SNMP_VIEW1 read SNMP_VIEW1 write SNMP_VIEW1
!
```

This example shows how to create a user with authentication (including encryption), read, and write view access to a system group:

```
config
snmp-server user userv3authpriv SNMP_GROUP1 v3 auth md5 password123 priv aes 128 password123
```

Given the following SNMPv3 view and SNMPv3 group configuration:

```
!
snmp-server view view_name 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
snmp group group_name v3 priv read view_name write view_name
!
```

This example shows how to create authNoPriv user with read and write view access to a system group:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server user authuser group_name v3 auth md5 clear
auth_passwd
```



**Note** Because the group is configured at a security level of Auth, the user must be configured as “auth” at a minimum to access this group (“priv” users could also access this group). The authNoPriv user configured in this group, authuser, must supply an authentication password to access the view. In the example, auth\_passwd is set as the authentication password string. Note that **clear** keyword is specified before the auth\_passwd password string. The **clear** keyword indicates that the password string being supplied is unencrypted.

This example shows how to verify the attributes that apply to SNMP user:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp user

User name: authuser
Engine ID: localSnmpID
storage-type: nonvolatile active
```

Given the following SNMPv3 view and SNMPv3 group configuration:

```
!
snmp view view_name 1.3.6.1.2.1.1 included
snmp group group_name v3 priv read view_name write view_name
!
```

This example shows how to create an authPriv user with read and write view access to a system group:

```
config
 snmp-server user privuser group_name v3 auth md5 clear auth_passwd priv des56 clear
priv_passwd
```



**Note** Because the group has a security level of Priv, the user must be configured as a “priv” user to access this group. In this example, the user, privuser, must supply both an authentication password and privacy password to access the OIDs in the view.

This example shows how to verify the attributes that apply to the SNMP user:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp user

User name: privuser
Engine ID: localSnmpID
storage-type: nonvolatile active
```

## Configuring Trap Notifications: Example

The following example configures an SNMP agent to send out different types of traps. The configuration includes a v2c user, a noAuthNoPriv user, anauthNoPriv user, and an AuthPriv user.



**Note** The default User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port is 161. If you do not specify a UDP port with the **udp-port** keyword and *port* argument, then the configured SNMP trap notifications are sent to port 161.

```
!
snmp-server host 10.50.32.170 version 2c public udp-port 2345
snmp-server host 10.50.32.170 version 3 auth userV3auth udp-port 2345
snmp-server host 10.50.32.170 version 3 priv userV3priv udp-port 2345
snmp-server host 10.50.32.170 version 3 noauth userV3noauth udp-port 2345
snmp-server user userv2c groupv2c v2c
snmp-server user userV3auth groupV3auth v3 auth md5 encrypted 140F0A13
snmp-server user userV3priv groupV3priv v3 auth md5 encrypted 021E1C43 priv des56 encrypted
1110001C
snmp-server user userV3noauth groupV3noauth v3 LROwner
snmp-server view view_name 1.3 included
snmp-server community public RW
snmp-server group groupv2c v2c read view_name
snmp-server group groupV3auth v3 auth read view_name
snmp-server group groupV3priv v3 priv read view_name
snmp-server group groupV3noauth v3 noauth read view_name
!
```

This example shows how to verify the configuration SNMP trap notification recipients host, the recipients of SNMP trap notifications. The output displays the following information:

- IP address of the configured notification host
- UDP port where SNMP notification messages are sent
- Type of trap configured
- Security level of the configured user
- Security model configured

```
config
show snmp host

Notification host: 10.50.32.170 udp-port: 2345 type: trap
user: userV3auth security model: v3 auth

Notification host: 10.50.32.170 udp-port: 2345 type: trap
user: userV3noauth security model: v3 noauth

Notification host: 10.50.32.170 udp-port: 2345 type: trap
user: userV3priv security model: v3 priv

Notification host: 10.50.32.170 udp-port: 2345 type: trap
user: userv2c security model: v2c
```

## Setting an IP Precedence Value for SNMP Traffic: Example

The following example shows how to set the SNMP IP Precedence value to 7:

```
configure
```

```
snmp-server ipv4 precedence 7
exit
```

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]: y
```

## Setting an IP DSCP Value for SNMP Traffic: Example

The following example shows how to set the IP DSCP value of SNMP traffic to 45:

```
configure
  snmp-server ipv4 dscp 45
exit
```

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]: y
```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to Implementing SNMP on Cisco IOS XR software.

### Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR SNMP commands	<i>SNMP Server Commands on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
MIB information	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Routers MIB Specifications Guide</i>
Cisco IOS XR commands	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Getting started with Cisco IOS XR software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on the Cisco ASR 9000 Series Router</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR Quality of Service	<i>Modular QoS Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

## Standards

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

## MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml</a>

## RFCs

RFCs	Title
RFC 3411	<i>An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks</i>
RFC 3412	<i>Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i>
RFC 3413	<i>Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Applications</i>
RFC 3414	<i>User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3)</i>
RFC 3415	<i>View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i>
RFC 3416	<i>Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i>
RFC 3417	<i>Transport Mappings for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i>
RFC 3418	<i>Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</i>

## Technical Assistance

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>







## CHAPTER 19

# Configuring Data Collection Manager

This module describes the configuring of the Data Collection Manager feature.

**Table 48: Feature History for Configuring Data Collection Manager**

Release	Modification
Release 5.2.2	This feature was introduced

- [Data Collection Manager, on page 367](#)

## Data Collection Manager

Cisco Data Collection Manager (DCM) is an efficient and reliable data collection agent that is embedded in managed devices, such as routers and switches. DCM works on a push model, which is based on a subscribe-and-notify data pattern, as opposed to the pull model, which is based on a request-and-response data pattern. The Data Collection Manager (DCM) supports advanced on-board data processing that includes baseline calculation, summary calculation, statistical distribution, and percentile computation.

## Data Collection Manager and Bulkstat

The Data Collection Manager (DCM) and the bulkstat module are the vital units of a framework which enables the bulk collection mechanism to include multiple data sources and multiple data export mechanisms.

The Bulkstat client application is implemented using the DCM core services to retrieve data and export it to the user. The Bulkstat client provides the only available user interface for DCM access. The client also provides CLI access through a new set of configuration commands and MIB access through the CISCO-DATA-COLLECTION-MIB.

DCM provides data subscription service for different data sources (such as, SNMP MIB objects and show command outputs). It also provides data retrieval management and data filtering services. With DCM, one source can be allocated for periodically collecting all management data.

Bulkstat, is an application which will use DCM to provide the following:

- Profiles and data-groups for different data-sources.
- Data processing – Summary, Distribution, Percentile and Auto-baseline.
- Data exports – File.

- Calendar scheduling.

## Benefits of DCM

DCM is very useful for Data Retrieval and Export and Performance Management solutions. This list includes all the benefits of DCM.

- **Data export and retrieval:** The Data Collection Manager (DCM) provides data retrieval management to ensure that the data collection does not impact device resources. The DCM can export data in a file format using multiple export protocols such as FTP, TFTP, Secure copy protocol (SCP), and Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP). The DCM provides a query mechanism with which data can be selectively exported based on the configured time interval and other selection criteria. The DCM application also provides data filtering services and exports the filtered data. You can also set primary and secondary destinations for exporting the collected data in a raw or processed format. Snapshots of the collected data can be stored for later retrieval.
- **Performance Management:** The Data Collection Manager (DCM) can be used to manage various aspects of performance management. It can collect data with a high granularity to help the Network Management Server (NMS) make dynamic traffic engineering decisions. DCM can also be used to collect resource variables that are important for effective capacity trend information, such as memory, queue depth, broadcast volume, buffer, Frame Relay congestion notification, and backplane utilization.
- **Troubleshooting:** The streaming function of the DCM can be used for real-time troubleshooting.
- **SLA:** A service level agreement (SLA) includes a what-if analysis for network changes and application changes, a trend for defined performance variables, exception management for defined capacity and performance variables, and QoS management. The DCM can be used to collect periodic data for reporting purposes.

## Bulkstat

Two challenges that network providers usually face are data gathering and data analysis. Network providers need to gather large volumes of data to analyze the performance of the network and to have operational control over their network. Large service providers are strengthening their data gathering and analysis infrastructure. Traditionally, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agents are used to expose management data on managed systems. But, SNMP is not well suited for gathering large volumes of data, especially over short time intervals. For example, service providers charge customers depending on the network usage. Also this data must be available on customer request. Accounting applications based on SNMP polling models consume significant network bandwidth because they poll large volumes of data frequently. The SNMP protocol data unit (PDU) is a complex data type specific to SNMP and is expensive to process because the SNMP objects and tables must be sorted in a lexicographic order. All the entries in SNMP MIB tables are lexicographically ordered by their object identifiers, because there is an implied ordering in the MIB based on the order of the object identifiers. In such cases, the need to continuously poll large or bulk SNMP statistics can be avoided by using applications known as collectors to retrieve data.

The Bulkstat application is one such collector that uses the services of the Data Collection Manager (DCM) to provide the following functions:

- Collecting SNMP MIB object values.
- Processing the collected data to create summary, percentiles, and auto-baselined values.
- Exporting collected data through simple file transfers.

- Scheduling calendar events for data collection and export.

The Bulkstat application provides command-line access through a set of new configuration commands and exclusive MIB access through CISCO-DATA-COLLECTION-MIB to collect SNMP data.

You can configure Bulkstat for the following functions:

- Specify the way Bulkstat retrieves bulk statistics.
- Specify the time interval in seconds at which Bulkstat transfers data to receivers.
- Specify the maximum size of the bulk statistics file.
- Specify the context, instance, and period at which the system retrieves bulk statistics.
- Configure file-related parameters.
- Configure the interface type on which you want to collect statistics.
- View the parameters that Bulkstat uses to collect statistics by using the show bulkstat commands.

## Bulkstat Configuration Elements

The following list shows the elements that you can configure using the Bulkstat interface:

- Data set
- Instance set
- Filter set
- Data group
- Process set
- Data profile
- Calendar Scheduling

### Data Set

This section describes the data set elements that you can configure to collect Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) data and CLI data. Only objects having the same index elements can be grouped in a single object list.

The SNMP data set contains the following fields:

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Objects	Specifies the object to be collected. Multiple objects can be configured to form a data set. The textual name of the object can be used for configuring an object. If the device does not recognize the textual name, the object identifier (OID) format can be used for configuring the name.	Mandatory

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Object Alias	Specifies the optional alias name that each object can have.	Optional

The CLI data set contains the following fields:

Name	Description	Configuration Status
CLI	Specifies the CLI command for which the show output needs to be collected. More than one CLI can be specified in the same data set.	Mandatory

## Filter Set

This section describes the filter configuration per object.

The filter set elements that you can configure to collect Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) data are described here. More than one filter of the same type can be added to the set.

Name	Description	Status
Object match	Specifies the value to be used to match against the value retrieved for the object during collection. The value provided needs to match the type of the object. If there is an error in the type matching, the configuration is not accepted.  More than one value can be specified for an object, and more than one object can have matching values.	Optional

## Instance Set

This section specifies the instance set elements that you can configure to collect Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) data. More than one instance of the same type can be added to the set. Combinations of types of instance set elements are not supported.

The SNMP Instance set contains the following fields:

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Exact	Specifies the instance for which the data should be collected. More than one instance can be specified, but only fully qualified instances should be specified.	Optional

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Wildcard	Specifies all instances for all objects under the object configured in the data set.	Optional
Range	Specifies the start and end instances. All instances within the range, including the start and end, are collected, but only fully qualified instances should be specified.	Optional
Repetition	Specifies the start of the repetition and the number of repetitions. All instances from the start until the number of repetitions within the subtree are collected.	Optional
Interface	Specifies the interface instead of the index. The ifIndex assigned to the interface will be used as an index. This can be used for MIB objects indexed by ifindex.	Optional

## Process Set

Data processing allows users to derive information from raw SNMP data, by calculating summaries and percentiles. Service providers rely on monitored SNMP data to alert network management systems (NMSs) of changing network conditions. By periodically monitoring the device data and comparing it against a set of thresholds, the network can automatically alert the operators, thereby allowing efficient operations.

- **Summary:** You can enable summary processing on the collected object value and calculate minimum, maximum, and average values. A summary is calculated for only those objects that are marked as process capable in the data group and uses the absolute or delta value as per the object configuration.
- **Distribution:** You can enable distribution processing on the collected object value by specifying the object type, minimum value, maximum value, and the number of buckets to distribute the value. Based on the configuration, counters are maintained per bucket and are incremented whenever the data falls into a bucket range.
- **Percentile:** You can enable percentile processing on the collected object value. A percentile is calculated on every process interval expiry. Distribution configuration is mandatory to enable percentile processing. Percentile computation is done assuming that the distribution is normal.
- **Auto-baseline:** You can enable baseline processing on the collected object value. The baseline internally uses all summary, distribution, and percentile calculations to provide baseline values. You can configure either baseline processing or other forms of processing, such as summary, distribution, and percentile calculations. The auto-baseline feature in DCM calculates the baseline values for variables of interest on the device and allows network management applications or network operators to retrieve the baseline values. The baseline values can be displayed in terms of percentiles or a median with standard deviation.

## Data Group

This section describes the data group, which contains the data-group name, data-group type, data set, instance set, filter set, polling interval, SNMP context, and other processing options.

The Data Group elements are:

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Data	Specifies any one of the data types as defined in the topic <b>Data Set</b> .	Mandatory
Instance	Specifies any one of the instance types as defined in the topic <b>Instance Set</b> .	Optional, if not specified. Default behavior of the instance set is wildcard. Only applicable for SNMP.
Filter	Specifies any one of the filter types as defined in the topic <b>Filter Set</b> .	Optional, if not specified. Only applicable for SNMP.
Polling Interval	Specifies the collection periodic interval in seconds. In case of recurring collection, the data is collected at the expiration of the collection interval until the collection is stopped.	Optional
Context	Specifies the management context from which to obtain data for this data group.	Optional
Process Summary	Enables summary processing of the data marked to be processed in the corresponding data-set configuration.	Optional
Process Distribution	Enables distribution processing of the data marked to be processed in the corresponding data-set configuration.	Optional
Process Percentile	Enables percentile processing of the data marked to be processed in the corresponding data-set configuration.	Optional

Name	Description	Configuration Status
Process Auto-baseline	<p>Enables auto-baselining processing of the data marked to be processed in the corresponding data-set configuration. If auto-baseline process is enabled, the other processes, such as summary, distribution, and percentile configurations, if done previously, are removed because auto-baseline process uses these functionalities internally.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Removing this configuration will not reinstate the other configurations that are removed.</p>	Optional
Discard raw	Specifies whether to store raw data. If data is processed, the user can choose to store only process data by setting the option.	Optional

## Data Profile

This section describes the data profile that is used to group multiple data groups. This is done to simplify the configuration and to aggregate data of similar nature. A data profile can have multiple data groups. A data group can have constraints in the data specified in the element. If two sets of data need to be written to the same file, the respective data groups should be linked as part of a single profile.

The Data Profile has these fields:

Name	Description	Status
Data groups	Specifies the data group to be linked to this profile. Multiple data groups can be linked to a single profile.	Mandatory before activating a profile
Transfer Interval	Specifies the transfer periodic interval in seconds. In case of recurring transfer, the data is transferred when the transfer interval expires.	Optional

Name	Description	Status
Process Interval	Specifies the process periodic interval in seconds. The data is processed during every collection interval as soon as it is collected. When the process interval expires, the processed data is written into a file and transferred.	Optional
Primary URL	Specifies the URL of the primary management station. The files containing the collected data are transferred to this URL when the transfer interval expires.	Mandatory
Secondary URL	Specifies the URL of the secondary management station to be used in case the transfer to the primary management station fails.	Optional
Schema	Specifies the file data format. The schema ASCII option is supported.	Optional
Retry	<p>Specifies the number of times that the transfer is retried in case of transfer failures to both primary and secondary management stations. This command has an effect only if the retain command is configured in the profile.</p> <p>The retry interval is computed by dividing the retention time by the number of retries. For example, if the file is retained for 60 minutes and the retry is 6 times, the transfer is attempted every 10 minutes, until the transfer succeeds or the file is removed.</p>	Optional
Buffer-size	Specifies the maximum size to which the file containing the collected data can grow. When it reaches the limit, the file is closed and the transfer is attempted based on the transfer configuration associated with the data group or profile.	Optional
Retention Memory	Specifies the time, in seconds, to retain the file in the memory.	Optional



Name	Description	Status
Retention USB	Specifies the time, in seconds, to retain the file in the USB. This option is available only if the device supports the USB drive.	Optional

## Calendar Scheduling

The Bulkstat application allows you to schedule each subscription for collection. A subscription can be scheduled for one-time collection or periodic collection. A periodic subscription can be repeated infinitely or for a specified number of repetitions. A timer is instantiated for every activated subscription.

The calendar scheduling elements are:

Name	Description	Configuration Status
One shot	Specifies that the data is collected for a specified collection interval.	Optional
Recurring	Specifies that the data is collected regularly at the specified time, day, month, and for a specified collection interval.	Optional

## File Data Export

The file data export feature on the Data Collection Manager (DCM) exports the collected data based on the transfer configurations. Data can be exported in various formats, and Bulkstat files are one such format to collect data. The format in which the data is inserted into the file conforms to the schema-Ascii format described in CISCO-DATA-COLLECTION-MIB and CISCO-BULK-FILE-MIB. The data sequence in which the data is stored is determined based on the sequence in which the data is received.

The Cisco File Transfer module is responsible for transferring the files as per the transfer configuration. A file can be retained in the device whether the transfer was a success or a failure.

## Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Data Set

The first step in configuring the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) periodic data collection and transfer mechanism is to configure one or more data sets. A data set is used to group objects of similar types, based on the data source. The data set is defined outside of the data group. This external definition gives the user the flexibility to use the same data set across multiple data groups and to collect the output for different instances and different contexts.

All objects in an SNMP data set must be indexed by the same MIB index. However, the objects in the data set must not belong to the same MIB or the MIB table.

Perform this task to configure the SNMP Bulkstat data set.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **bulkstat data** *data-set -name* **type snmp**

### 3. `object oid [ alias alias-name ]`

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<code>configure</code>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat data</b> <i>data-set -name</i> <b>type snmp</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat data interface-stats type snmp</b>	Defines an SNMP Bulkstat data set and enters SNMP bulk statistics data set configuration mode. The creation of an SNMP Bulkstat data set creates a row in the cdcDGBaseObjectEntry table in the SNMP MIB.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>object oid [ alias alias-name ]</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-ds-snm) # <b>object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10 alias ifInOctets</b>	Adds a MIB object to the SNMP Bulkstat data set. If the object is already present in the data set, this command replaces the old object configuration with the new configuration.  <b>Note</b> Repeat this command until all objects to be monitored are added to this list.

## Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Filter Set

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) filter set specifies the filter configuration for every SNMP object.

Perform this task to configure the SNMP Bulkstat filter set.

#### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `configure`
2. `bulkstat filter filter-set -name`
3. `match object-name { eq line | start line | not { eq line | start line } }`

#### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<code>configure</code>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat filter</b> <i>filter-set -name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat filter ifType</b>	Defines an SNMP Bulkstat filter set and enters SNMP bulk statistics filter set configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>match object-name { eq line   start line   not { eq line   start line } }</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-fs) # <b>match ifType eq 6767</b>	(Optional) Specifies a value to be used to match against the value retrieved for the object during collection.  <b>Note</b> More than one value can be specified for an object, and more than one object can have match values.

## Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Instance Set

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) instance set specifies the instances for which the data should be collected. Each subscription can collect different entries for specified objects based on the instance configuration. While more than one instance of the same type can be added to the instance set, a combination of different types is not supported.

Perform this task to configure the SNMP Bulkstat instance set.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **bulkstat instance** *instance-set -name type snmp*
3. **exact oid** *oid*
4. **exact interface** *interface-id*
5. **wildcard**
6. **wildcard oid** *oid*
7. **wildcard interface** *interface-id*
8. **repetition oid** *oid max value*
9. **range start** *oid end oid*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat instance</b> <i>instance-set -name type snmp</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat instance</b> <b>exact type snmp</b>	Defines an SNMP Bulkstat instance set and enters SNMP Bulkstat instance set configuration mode. The creation of an SNMP Bulkstat instance set creates a row in the cdcDGInstanceEntry table in the SNMP MIB.  <b>Note</b> An instance created using this command can be linked to more than one data group.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>exact oid</b> <i>oid</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>exact</b> <b>oid 1</b>	(Optional) Indicates that the specified instance, when appended to the object list, is the complete OID.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>exact interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>exact</b> <b>interface Ethernet0/0 sub-if</b>	(Optional) Specifies an interface name and number, for example interface Ethernet 0, instead of specifying the ifIndex OID for the interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>wildcard</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>wildcard</b>	(Optional) Specifies whether an object used for evaluating an expression should be made a wildcard during an event configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>wildcard oid</b> <i>oid</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>wildcard oid 1</b>	(Optional) Indicates that all subindices of the specified OID belong to this schema.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>wildcard interface</b> <i>interface-id</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>wildcard interface Ethernet0/0 sub-if</b>	(Optional) Specifies an interface name and number, for example interface Ethernet 0, instead of specifying the ifIndex OID for the interface.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>repetition oid</b> <i>oid max value</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>repetition oid 1.2.3.4 max 2000</b>	(Optional) Configures data collection to repeat get-next for the maximum number of instances starting from the specified oid instance.
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>range start</b> <i>oid end oid</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-is-snmp) # <b>range</b> <b>start 1.2.3.4 end 1.2.3.6</b>	(Optional) Configures a range of instances for which the data is collected.

## Configuring a Bulkstat Data Group

The Bulkstat data group element is used to group the data set, filter set, and instance set and also to specify the processing options.

Perform this task to configure the Bulkstat data group.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **bulkstat data-group** *data-group-name*
3. **collect type** { { **command** | **expression** } **date** *date-set-name* **filter** *filter-set-name* | **snmp** { **data** *data-set-name* **instance** *instance-set-name* **filter** *filter-set-name* } }
4. **context** *context-name*
5. **interval polling** *polling-interval*
6. **discard**
7. **process**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat data-group</b> <i>data-group-name</i> <b>Example:</b>	Defines a Bulkstat data group and enters Bulkstat data group configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat data-group if-dg</b>	The creation of a Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Bulkstat data group creates a row in the cdcDgEntry table in the SNMP MIB.
Step 3	<b>collect type</b> { { <b>command</b>   <b>expression</b> } <b>date</b> <i>date-set-name</i> <b>filter</b> <i>filter-set-name</i>   <b>snmp</b> { <b>data</b> <i>data-set-name</i> <b>instance</b> <i>instance-set-name</i> <b>filter</b> <i>filter-set-name</i> } }  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-dg) # <b>collect type snmp data interface-stats instance ins-exact filter ifType</b>	Specifies the collection type to collect data from different sources for this data group.
Step 4	<b>context</b> <i>context-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-dg) # <b>context ctx-name</b>	Specifies the management context from which to obtain data for this data group.
Step 5	<b>interval polling</b> <i>polling-interval</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-dg) # <b>interval polling 100</b>	Specifies the collection periodic interval in seconds. In case of recurring collection, the data is collected at the expiration of the collection interval until the collection is stopped.
Step 6	<b>discard</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-dg) # <b>discard</b>	Specifies whether to discard the raw data.
Step 7	<b>process</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-dg) # <b>process</b>	Configures process-related parameters for a data group.

## Configuring a Bulkstat Profile

Perform this task to configure the Bulkstat Profile.

The profile element is used to group multiple data groups. This grouping simplifies the configuration and aggregates data of a similar nature. If two sets of data need to be written to the same file, the respective data groups should be linked as part of a single profile.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **bulkstat profile** *profile-name*
3. **data-group** *data-group name*
4. **interval transfer** { **process** | **raw** } *seconds*
5. **file-format schema ASCII**
6. **file retain** { **disk url** | **memory seconds** }

7. **file size** *bytes*
8. **file transfer** { *retry number* | **url** { *primary url* | *secondary url* } }
9. **enable**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat profile</b> <i>profile-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat profile</b> <b>if-stats</b>	Creates a profile with the given name and enters Bulkstat profile configuration mode. If the profile is already created, this command sets the context for the existing profile.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>data-group</b> <i>data-group name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>data-group if-dg</b>	Specifies the data group to be linked to this profile. Multiple data groups can be linked to a single profile.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>interval transfer</b> { <b>process</b>   <b>raw</b> } <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>interval transfer process 2000</b>	Specifies the transfer periodic interval in seconds. In case of recurring transfer, the data is transferred at the expiration of the transfer interval until the transfer is stopped.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>file-format schema ASCII</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>file-format schema ASCII</b>	Configures the file-related parameter for a profile. Specifies the file data format in ASCII.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>file retain</b> { <b>disk url</b>   <b>memory seconds</b> } <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>file</b> <b>retain memory 1500</b>	Configures the file-related parameter for a profile. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>disk</b> - retains the file in the specified location in the disk for a specified amount of time in seconds.</li> <li>• <b>memory</b> - retains the file in the memory for a specified amount of time in seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>file size</b> <i>bytes</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>file</b> <b>size 2048</b>	Configures the file-related size parameter for a profile. <p><b>size</b> - Specifies the maximum buffer size in bytes. When the limit is reached, the file is closed and transfer is attempted based on the transfer configuration associated with the data group or the profile.</p>
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>file transfer</b> { <i>retry number</i>   <b>url</b> { <i>primary url</i>   <i>secondary url</i> } } <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>file</b> <b>transfer url primary tftp://20.1.1.1/iox</b>	Configures the file-related transfer parameter for a profile. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>primary</b> - specifies the URL of the primary management station. The files containing the collected data are transferred to this URL when the transfer interval expires.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>secondary</b> - specifies the URL to be used in case the transfer to the primary management station fails.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>enable</b>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-profile) # <b>enable</b>	Enables the profile for collection and transfer.

## Configuring Bulkstat Calendar Scheduling

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **bulkstat schedule** *schedule at time-detail* { **oneshot** | **recurring** }
3. **profile** *profile-name start* { **oneshot** | **recurring number** }
4. **profile** *profile-name stop*

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>bulkstat schedule</b> <i>schedule at time-detail</i> { <b>oneshot</b>   <b>recurring</b> }  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config) # <b>bulkstat schedule event1 at 11:30 jan 10 oneshot</b>	Defines the Bulkstat calendar scheduler set and enters Bulkstat event scheduler configuration mode.  For the time-detail option, enter the details of the time as prompted. First the time in the 24-hour clock format, followed by the month and then the date.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>profile</b> <i>profile-name start</i> { <b>oneshot</b>   <b>recurring number</b> }  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-schedule) # <b>profile cpu-process start recurring 5</b>	Creates a profile and sets the condition to enable the profile for a one-time event or enables the profile for multiple events.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>profile</b> <i>profile-name stop</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router (config-bs-schedule) # <b>profile cpu-process stop</b>	Disables the profile.

## Configuration Examples and Usecase Scenarios

The usecase scenarios with examples are discussed here.

## Usecase-1: Collecting MIB Statistics

**Goal:** To collect IF MIB Statistics

Procedure	Example
Step1: Identifying the inputs and other parameters	MIB Objects of interest: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2 (ifDescr)</li> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10 (ifInOctets)</li> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16 (ifOutOctets)</li> </ul> Export Parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interval: 60 seconds</li> <li>• Protocol: TFTP</li> <li>• Server: 10.105.33.135</li> <li>• Path: dcm_data</li> </ul>
Step2: Configuring the <b>Data set if-mib</b> For detailed procedure: <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Data Set, on page 375</a>	<pre>bulkstat data if-mib type snmp object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2 object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10 object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16</pre>
Step3: Configuring the <b>Instance set if-mib</b> For detailed procedure: <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Instance Set, on page 377</a>	<pre>bulkstat instance if-mib type snmp wildcard</pre>
Step4: Configuring <b>Data Group if-group</b> For detailed procedure: <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Data Group, on page 378</a>	<pre>bulkstat data-group if-group interval polling 30 collect type snmp data if-mib instance if-mib</pre>
Step5: Configuring <b>Profile snmp_profile</b> For detailed procedure: <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Profile, on page 379</a>	<pre>bulkstat profile snmp_profile file transfer url primary tftp://10.105.33.135/dcm_data/ interval transfer raw 60 data-group if-group enable</pre>



**Note** Step2 and Step3 can be interchanged.

## Usecase-2: Using Filters

**Goal:** To collect gigabit ethernet interface statistics (using filters)



Procedure	Example
Step1: Identifying the inputs and other parameters	<p>MIB Objects of interest:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2 (ifDescr)</li> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10 (ifInOctets)</li> <li>• 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16 (ifOutOctets)</li> </ul> <p>Export Parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interval: 60 seconds</li> <li>• Protocol: TFTP</li> <li>• Server: 10.105.33.135</li> <li>• Path: dcm_data</li> </ul>
<p>Step2: Configuring the <b>Data set if-mib</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Data Set, on page 375</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat data if-mib type snmp object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2 object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10 object 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16</pre>
<p>Step3: Configuring the <b>Instance set if-mib</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Instance Set, on page 377</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat instance if-mib type snmp wildcard</pre>
<p>Step4: Configuring the <b>Filter set if-mib</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Filter Set, on page 376</a></p>	<p>Setting the filter (in this case, it is - gigabit ethernet interface)</p> <pre>bulkstat filter if-mib match 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2 start "GigabitEthernet"</pre>
<p>Step5: Configuring <b>Data Group if-group</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Data Group, on page 378</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat data-group if-group interval polling 30 collect type snmp data if-mib instance if-mib</pre>
<p>Step6: Configuring <b>Profile snmp_profile</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Profile, on page 379</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat profile snmp_profile file transfer url primary tftp://10.105.33.135/dcm_data/ interval transfer raw 60 data-group if-group enable</pre>



**Note** Step2, Step3 and Step4 can be interchanged.

## Usecase-3: Collecting CLI output in XML format

**Goal:** To collect show cli output in XML format

Procedure	Example
Step1: Identifying the inputs and other parameters	<p>CLI of interest: <b>add cmd show operational AAA xml</b></p> <p>Export Parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interval: 5 minutes</li> <li>• Protocol: TFTP</li> <li>• Server: 10.64.68.12</li> <li>• Path: dcm_data</li> </ul>
<p>Step2: Configuring the <b>Data set process</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring an SNMP Bulkstat Data Set, on page 375</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat data process type command add cmd show operational AAA xml</pre>
<p>Step3: Configuring <b>Data Group cli-group</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Data Group, on page 378</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat data-group cli-group interval polling 60 collect type command data sh snmp</pre>
<p>Step4: Configuring <b>Profile cli_profile</b></p> <p>For detailed procedure:  <a href="#">Configuring a Bulkstat Profile, on page 379</a></p>	<pre>bulkstat profile cli_profile file transfer url primary tftp://10.64.68.12/dcm_data/ interval transfer raw 300 data-group cli-group enable</pre>



## CHAPTER 20

# Configuring Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

This document describes how to periodically transfer selected MIB data from your router to a specified Network Management System (NMS). The periodic MIB data collection and transfer feature is also known as bulk statistics.

*Table 49: Feature History for Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer*

Release	Modification
Release 4.2.0	The periodic MIB data collection and transfer feature was introduced and supported the IF-MIB only.
Release 4.2.1	Additional MIBs were supported.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer, on page 385](#)
- [Information About Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer, on page 386](#)
- [4arg, on page 387](#)
- [How to Configure Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer, on page 387](#)
- [Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer: Example, on page 394](#)

## Prerequisites for Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

To use periodic MIB data collection and transfer, you should be familiar with the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) model of management information. You should also know what MIB information you want to monitor on your network devices, and the OIDs or object names for the MIB objects to be monitored.

# Information About Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

## SNMP Objects and Instances

A type (or class) of SNMP management information is called an object. A specific instance from a type of management information is called an object instance (or SNMP variable). To configure a bulk statistics collection, you must specify the object types to be monitored using a bulk statistics object list and the specific instances of those objects to be collected using a bulk statistics schema.

MIBs, MIB tables, MIB objects, and object indices can all be specified using a series of numbers called an object identifier (OID). OIDs are used in configuring a bulk statistics collection in both the bulk statistics object lists (for general objects) and in the bulk statistics schemas (for specific object instances).

## Bulk Statistics Object Lists

To group the MIB objects to be polled, you need to create one or more object lists. A bulk statistics object list is a user-specified set of MIB objects that share the same MIB index. Object lists are identified using a name that you specify. Named bulk statistics object lists allow the same configuration to be reused in different bulk statistics schemas.

All the objects in an object list must share the same MIB index. However, the objects do not need to be in the same MIB and do not need to belong to the same MIB table. For example, it is possible to group `ifInOctets` and a `CISCO-IF-EXTENSION-MIB` object in the same schema, because the containing tables for both objects are indexed by the `ifIndex`.

## Bulk Statistics Schemas

Data selection for the Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer Mechanism requires the definition of a schema with the following information:

- Name of an object list.
- Instance (specific instance or series of instances defined using a wild card) that needs to be retrieved for objects in the specified object list.
- How often the specified instances need to be sampled (polling interval). The default polling interval is 5 minutes.

A bulk statistics schema is also identified using a name that you specify. This name is used when configuring the transfer options.

## Bulk Statistics Transfer Options

After configuring the data to be collected, a single virtual file (VFile or *bulk statistics file*) with all collected data is created. This file can be transferred to a network management station using FTP or TFTP. You can specify how often this file should be transferred. The default transfer interval is once every 30 minutes. You can also configure a secondary destination for the file to be used if, for whatever reason, the file cannot be transferred to the primary network management station.

The value of the transfer interval is also the collection period (collection interval) for the local bulk statistics file. After the collection period ends, the bulk statistics file is frozen, and a new local bulk statistics file is created for storing data. The frozen bulk statistics file is then transferred to the specified destination.

By default, the local bulk statistics file is deleted after successful transfer to an network management station.

## Benefits of Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

Periodic MIB data collection and transfer (bulk statistics feature) allows many of the same functions as the bulk file MIB (CISCO-BULK-FILE-MIB.my), but offers some key advantages. The main advantage is that this feature can be configured through the CLI and does not require an external monitoring application.

Periodic MIB data collection and transfer is mainly targeted for medium to high-end platforms that have sufficient local storage (volatile or permanent) to store bulk statistics files. Locally storing bulk statistics files helps minimize loss of data during temporary network outages.

This feature also has more powerful data selection features than the bulk file MIB; it allows grouping of MIB objects from different tables into data groups (object lists). It also incorporates a more flexible instance selection mechanism, where the application is not restricted to fetching an entire MIB table.

## 4arg

4arg is Cisco's implementation of Object Size Checking (OSC). OSC is a useful static analysis utility and a critical runtime defense for the detection and prevention of buffer overflows. 4arg captures buffer overflows (at runtime) that are otherwise undetected by code analysis tools and human review. 4arg also carries a reporting and logging component.

4arg refers to a theoretical fourth argument to a string copy function representing the destination buffer size.

## 4arg Messages: Example

An example of a 4arg message:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router:Dec 1 12:00:00.802 : foo[123]:  
%OS-DATACORRUPTION-1-DATAINCONSISTENCY : copy error : pkg/bin/foo :  
(PID=12345) : -Traceback= 4bd43404 4bac7e04 4000c100
```



**Note** If you witness a traceback, please report the incident to Cisco TAC as soon as possible. Include the log message exactly as printed in the console.

## How to Configure Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

### Configuring a Bulk Statistics Object List

The first step in configuring the Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer Mechanism is to configure one or more object lists.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server mib bulkstat object-list** *list-name*
3. **add** {oid | *object-name*}
4. **commit**

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server mib bulkstat object-list</b> <i>list-name</i>  <b>Example:</b> snmp-server mib bulkstat object-list ifMib	Defines an SNMP bulk statistics object list and enters bulk statistics object list configuration mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>add</b> {oid   <i>object-name</i> }  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-objects)# add 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.11 RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-objects)# add ifAdminStatus RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-objects)# add ifDescr	<p>Adds a MIB object to the bulk statistics object list. Repeat as desired until all objects to be monitored in this list are added.</p> <p><b>Note</b> All the objects in a bulk statistics object list have to be indexed by the same MIB index. However, the objects in the object list do not need to belong to the same MIB or MIB table.</p> <p>When specifying an object name instead of an OID (using the add command), only object names with mappings shown in the <b>show snmp mib object</b> command output can be used.</p>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**What to do next**

Configure a bulk statistics schema.

## Configuring a Bulk Statistics Schema

The second step in configuring periodic MIB data collection and transfer is to configure one or more schemas.

**Before you begin**

The bulk statistics object list to be used in the schema must be defined.

## SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server mib bulkstat schema** *schema-name*
3. **object-list** *list-name*
4. Do one of the following:

- **instance exact** {interface *interface-id* [sub-if] | oid *oid*}
- **instance wild** {interface *interface-id* [sub-if] | oid *oid*}
- **instance range** start *oid* end *oid*
- **instance repetition** *oid* max *repeat-number*

5. poll-interval *minutes*

6. commit

## DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	configure	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server mib bulkstat schema</b> <i>schema-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server mib bulkstat schema intE0 RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)#</pre>	Names the bulk statistics schema and enters bulk statistics schema mode.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>object-list</b> <i>list-name</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# object-list ifMib</pre>	Specifies the bulk statistics object list to be included in this schema. Specify only one object list per schema. If multiple object-list commands are executed, the earlier ones are overwritten by newer commands.
<b>Step 4</b>	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>instance exact</b> {interface <i>interface-id</i> [sub-if]   oid <i>oid</i>}</li> <li>• <b>instance wild</b> {interface <i>interface-id</i> [sub-if]   oid <i>oid</i>}</li> <li>• <b>instance range</b> start <i>oid</i> end <i>oid</i></li> <li>• <b>instance repetition</b> <i>oid</i> max <i>repeat-number</i></li> </ul> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# instance wild oid 1 or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# instance exact interface FastEthernet 0/1.25 or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# instance range start 1 end 2 or RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# instance repetition 1 max 4</pre>	Specifies the instance information for objects in this schema: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>instance exact</b> command indicates that the specified instance, when appended to the object list, represents the complete OID.</li> <li>• The <b>instance wild</b> command indicates that all subindices of the specified OID belong to this schema. The wild keyword allows you to specify a partial, “wild carded” instance.</li> <li>• The <b>instance range</b> command indicates a range of instances on which to collect data.</li> <li>• The <b>instance repetition</b> command indicates data collection to repeat for a certain number of instances of a MIB object.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> Only one <b>instance</b> command can be configured per schema. If multiple <b>instance</b> commands are executed, the earlier ones are overwritten by new commands.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>poll-interval</b> <i>minutes</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-sc)# poll-interval 10	Sets how often data should be collected from the object instances specified in this schema, in minutes. The default is once every 5 minutes. The valid range is from 1 to 20000.
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**What to do next**

Configure the bulk statistics transfer options.

## Configuring Bulk Statistics Transfer Options

The final step in configuring periodic MIB data collection and transfer is to configure the transfer options. The collected MIB data are kept in a local file-like entity called a VFile (virtual file, referred to as a bulk statistics file in this document). This file can be transferred to a remote network management station at intervals you specify.

**Before you begin**

The bulk statistics object lists and bulk statistics schemas must be defined before configuring the bulk statistics transfer options.

**SUMMARY STEPS**

1. **configure**
2. **snmp-server mib bulkstat transfer-id** *transfer-id*
3. **buffer-size** *bytes*
4. **format** {bulkBinary | bulkASCII | schemaASCII}
5. **schema** *schema-name*
6. **transfer-interval** *minutes*
7. **url primary** *url*
8. **url secondary** *url*
9. **retry** *number*
10. **retain** *minutes*
11. **enable**
12. **commit**

**DETAILED STEPS**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>snmp-server mib bulkstat transfer-id</b> <i>transfer-id</i>  <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# snmp-server mib bulkstat transfer bulkstat1	Identifies the transfer configuration with a name ( <i>transfer-id</i> argument) and enters bulk statistics transfer configuration mode.



	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>buffer-size</b> <i>bytes</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# buffersize 3072	(Optional) Specifies the maximum size for the bulk statistics data file, in bytes. The valid range is from 1024 to 2147483647 bytes. The default buffer size is 2048 bytes. <b>Note</b> If the maximum buffer size for a bulk statistics file is reached before the transfer interval time expires, all additional data received is deleted. To correct this behavior, you can decrease the polling frequency, or increase the size of the bulk statistics buffer.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>format</b> {bulkBinary   bulkASCII   schemaASCII} <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# format schemaASCII	(Optional) Specifies the format of the bulk statistics data file (VFile). The default is schemaASCII. <b>Note</b> Transfers can only be performed using schemaASCII (cdcSchemaASCII) format. SchemaASCII is a human-readable format that contains parser-friendly hints for parsing data values.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>schema</b> <i>schema-name</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# schema ATM2/0-IFMIB RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# schema ATM2/0-CAR RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# schema Ethernet2/1-IFMIB	Specifies the bulk statistics schema to be transferred. Repeat this command as desired. Multiple schemas can be associated with a single transfer configuration; all collected data are placed in a single bulk data file (VFile).
<b>Step 6</b>	<b>transfer-interval</b> <i>minutes</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# transfer-interval 20	(Optional) Specifies how often the bulk statistics file are transferred, in minutes. The default value is once every 30 minutes. The transfer interval is the same as the collection interval.
<b>Step 7</b>	<b>url</b> <i>primary url</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# url primary ftp://user:password@host/folder/bulkstat1	Specifies the network management system (host) that the bulk statistics data file is transferred to, and the protocol to use for transfer. The destination is specified as a Uniform Resource Locator (URL). FTP or TFTP can be used for the bulk statistics file transfer.
<b>Step 8</b>	<b>url</b> <i>secondary url</i> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# url secondary tftp://10.1.0.1/tftpboot/user/bulkstat1	(Optional) Specifies a backup transfer destination and protocol for use in the event that transfer to the primary location fails. FTP or TFTP can be used for the bulk statistics file transfer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 9</b>	<b>retry number</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# retry 1	<p>(Optional) Specifies the number of transmission retries. The default value is 0 (in other words, no retries). If an attempt to send the bulk statistics file fails, the system can be configured to attempt to send the file again using this command.</p> <p>One retry includes an attempt first to the primary destination then, if the transmission fails, to the secondary location. For example, if the retry value is 1, an attempt is made first to the primary URL, then to the secondary URL, then to the primary URL again, then to the secondary URL again. The valid range is from 0 to 100.</p> <p>If all retries fail, the next normal transfer occurs after the configured transfer-interval time.</p>
<b>Step 10</b>	<b>retain minutes</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# retain 60	<p>(Optional) Specifies how long the bulk statistics file should be kept in system memory, in minutes, after the completion of the collection interval and a transmission attempt is made. The default value is 0. Zero (0) indicates that the file is deleted immediately after the transfer is attempted. The valid range is from 0 to 20000.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If the retry command is used, you should configure a retain interval larger than 0. The interval between retries is the retain interval divided by the retry number. For example, if <b>retain 10</b> and <b>retry 2</b> are configured, two retries are attempted once every 5 minutes. Therefore, if retain 0 is configured, no retries are attempted.</p>
<b>Step 11</b>	<b>enable</b> <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-bulk-tr)# enable	<p>Begins the bulk statistics data collection and transfer process for this configuration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For successful execution of this action, at least one schema with non-zero number of objects must be configured.</li> <li>Periodic collection and file transfer begins only if this command is configured. Conversely, the <b>no enable</b> command stops the collection process. A subsequent <b>enable</b> starts the operations again.</li> <li>Each time the collection process is started using the <b>enable</b> command, data is collected into a new bulk statistics file. When the <b>no enable</b> command is used, the transfer process for any collected data immediately begins (in other words, the existing bulk statistics file is transferred to the specified management station).</li> </ul>
<b>Step 12</b>	<b>commit</b>	

**What to do next**

**Note** If the maximum buffer size for a bulk statistics file is reached before the transfer interval time expires, the transfer operation is still initiated, but any bulk statistics data received after the file was full, and before it was transferred, are deleted. To correct this behavior, you can decrease the polling frequency, or increase the size of the bulk statistics buffer.

If **retain 0** is configured, no retries are attempted. This is because the interval between retries is the retain value divided by the retry value. For example, if **retain 10** and **retry 2** are configured, retries are attempted once every 5 minutes. Therefore, if you configure the retry command, you should also configure an appropriate value for the retain command.

## Monitoring Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. `show snmp mib bulkstat transfer transfer-name`

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<code>show snmp mib bulkstat transfer transfer-name</code>	<p>(Optional) The show command for this feature lists all bulk statistics virtual files (VFiles) on the system that have finished collecting data. (Data files that are not complete are not displayed.)</p> <p>The output lists all of the completed local bulk statistics files, the remaining time left before the bulk statistics file is deleted (remaining retention period), and the state of the bulk statistics file.</p> <p>The “STATE” of the bulk statistics file is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Queued--Indicates that the data collection for this bulk statistics file is completed (in other words, the transfer interval has been met) and that the bulk statistics file is waiting for transfer to the configured destination(s).</li> <li>• Retry--Indicates that one or more transfer attempts have failed and that the file transfer will be attempted again. The number of retry attempts remaining are displayed in parenthesis.</li> <li>• Retained--Indicates that the bulk statistics file has either been successfully transmitted or that the configured number of retries have been completed.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		To display only the status of a named transfer (as opposed to all configured transfers), specify the name of the transfer in the transfer-name argument.

### show snmp mib bulkstat transfer Sample Output

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show snmp mib bulkstat transfer
```

```
Transfer Name : ifmib
Retained files
```

```
File Name                               : Time Left (in seconds)   :STATE
-----
ifmib_Router_020421_100554683 : 173 : Retry (2 Retry attempt(s) Left)
```

## Periodic MIB Data Collection and Transfer: Example

This example shows how to configure periodic MIB data collection and transfer:

```
snmp-server mib bulkstat object-list cempo
add cempMemPoolName
add cempMemPoolType
!
snmp-server mib bulkstat schema cempWild
object-list cempo
instance wild oid 8695772
poll-interval 1
!
snmp-server mib bulkstat schema cempRepeat
object-list cempo
instance repetition 8695772.1 max 4294967295
poll-interval 1
!
snmp-server mib bulkstat transfer-id cempt1
enable
url primary tftp://223.255.254.254/auto/tftp-sjc-users3/dseeniva/dumpdcm
schema cempWild
schema cempRepeat
transfer-interval 2
!
```

This example shows sample bulk statistics file content:

```
Schema-def cempt1.cempWild "%u, %s, %s, %d" Epochtime instanceoid
1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.221.1.1.1.1.3 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.221.1.1.1.1.2
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491515, 8695772.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491515, 8695772.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491515, 8695772.3, image, 12
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491575, 8695772.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491575, 8695772.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempWild: 1339491575, 8695772.3, image, 12
Schema-def cempt1.cempRepeat "%u, %s, %s, %d" Epochtime instanceoid
```

```
1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.221.1.1.1.1.3 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.9.221.1.1.1.1.2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 8695772.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 8695772.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 8695772.3, image, 12
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 26932192.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 26932192.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 26932192.3, image, 12
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 35271015.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 35271015.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 35271015.3, image, 12
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 36631989.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 36631989.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 36631989.3, image, 12
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 52690955.1, processor, 2
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 52690955.2, reserved, 11
cempt1.cempRepeat: 1339491515, 52690955.3, image, 12
```





## CHAPTER 21

# Configuring Cisco Discovery Protocol

*Cisco Discovery Protocol* (CDP) is a media- and protocol-independent protocol that runs on all Cisco-manufactured equipment including routers, bridges, access and communication servers, and switches. Using CDP, you can view information about all the Cisco devices that are directly attached to the device.

This module describes the new and revised tasks you need to implement CDP on your Cisco IOS XR network.

For more information about CDP on the Cisco IOS XR software and complete descriptions of the CDP commands listed in this module, refer to [Related Documents, on page 405](#). To locate documentation for other commands that might appear in the course of running a configuration task, search online in *Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List*.

**Table 50: Feature History for Implementing CDP on Cisco IOS XR Software**

Release	Modification
Release 3.7.2	This feature was introduced.
Release 3.9.0	No modification.

This module contains the following topics:

- [Prerequisites for Implementing CDP, on page 397](#)
- [Information About Implementing CDP, on page 398](#)
- [How to Implement CDP on Cisco IOS XR Software, on page 399](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Implementing CDP, on page 404](#)
- [Additional References, on page 404](#)

## Prerequisites for Implementing CDP

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

## Information About Implementing CDP

CDP is primarily used to obtain protocol addresses of neighboring devices and discover the platform of those devices. CDP can also be used to display information about the interfaces your router uses. CDP is media- and protocol-independent, and runs on all equipment manufactured by Cisco, including routers, bridges, access servers, and switches.

Use of SNMP with the CDP MIB allows network management applications to learn the device type and the SNMP agent address of neighboring devices and to send SNMP queries to those devices. CDP uses the CISCO-CDP-MIB.

CDP runs on all media that support Subnetwork Access Protocol (SNAP), including LAN, Frame Relay, and ATM physical media. CDP runs over the data link layer only. Therefore, two systems that support different network-layer protocols can learn about each other.

Each device configured for CDP sends periodic messages, known as *advertisements*, to a multicast address. Each device advertises at least one address at which it can receive SNMP messages. The advertisements also contain time-to-live, or hold-time, information, which indicates the length of time a receiving device holds CDP information before discarding it. Each device also listens to the periodic CDP messages sent by others to learn about neighboring devices and determine when their interfaces to the media go up or down.

CDP Version-2 (CDPv2) is the most recent release of the protocol and provides more intelligent device tracking features. These features include a reporting mechanism that allows for more rapid error tracking, thereby reducing costly downtime. Reported error messages can be sent to the console or to a logging server, and can cover instances of unmatching native VLAN IDs (IEEE 802.1Q) on connecting ports, and unmatching port duplex states between connecting devices.

CDPv2 **show** commands can provide detailed output on VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) management domain and duplex modes of neighbor devices, CDP-related counters, and VLAN IDs of connecting ports.

Type-length-value fields (TLVs) are blocks of information embedded in CDP advertisements. [Table 51: Type-Length-Value Definitions for CDPv2, on page 398](#) summarizes the TLV definitions for CDP advertisements.

**Table 51: Type-Length-Value Definitions for CDPv2**

TLV	Definition
Device-ID TLV	Identifies the device name in the form of a character string.
Address TLV	Contains a list of network addresses of both receiving and sending devices.
Port-ID TLV	Identifies the port on which the CDP packet is sent.
Capabilities TLV	Describes the functional capability for the device in the form of a device type; for example, a switch.
Version TLV	Contains information about the software release version on which the device is running.
Platform TLV	Describes the hardware platform name of the device, for example, Cisco 4500.



TLV	Definition
VTP Management Domain TLV	Advertises the system's configured VTP management domain name-string. Used by network operators to verify VTP domain configuration in adjacent network nodes.
Native VLAN TLV	Indicates, per interface, the assumed VLAN for untagged packets on the interface. CDP learns the native VLAN for an interface. This feature is implemented only for interfaces that support the IEEE 802.1Q protocol.
Full/Half Duplex TLV	Indicates status (duplex configuration) of CDP broadcast interface. Used by network operators to diagnose connectivity problems between adjacent network elements.

# How to Implement CDP on Cisco IOS XR Software

## Enabling CDP

To enable CDP, you must first enable CDP globally on the router and then enable CDP on a per-interface basis. This task explains how to enable CDP globally on the router and then enable CDP on an interface.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **cdp**
3. **interface** *type interface-path-id*
4. **cdp**
5. **commit**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>cdp</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# cdp	Enables CDP globally.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>interface</b> <i>type interface-path-id</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface pos 0/0/0/1	Enters interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>cdp</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# cdp	Enables CDP on an interface.
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	

## Modifying CDP Default Settings

This task explains how to modify the default version, hold-time setting, and timer settings.



### Note

The commands can be entered in any order.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure**
2. **cdp advertise v1**
3. **cdp holdtime** *seconds*
4. **cdp timer** *seconds*
5. **commit**
6. (Optional) **show cdp**

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>configure</b>	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>cdp advertise v1</b>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# cdp advertise v1	Configures CDP to use only version 1 (CDPv1) in communicating with neighboring devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By default, when CDP is enabled, the router sends CDPv2 packets. CDP also sends and receives CDPv1 packets if the device with which CDP is interacting does not process CDPv2 packets.</li> <li>• In this example, the router is configured to send and receive only CDPv1 packets.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>cdp holdtime</b> <i>seconds</i>  <b>Example:</b>  RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# cdp holdtime 30	Specifies the amount of time that the receiving networking device will hold a CDP packet sent from the router before discarding it. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By default, when CDP is enabled, the receiving networking device holds a CDP packet for 180 seconds before discarding it.</li> </ul>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p><b>Note</b> The CDP hold time must be set to a higher number of seconds than the time between CDP transmissions, which is set with the <b>cdp timer</b> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, the value of hold-time for the <i>seconds</i> argument is set to 30.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>cdp timer</b> <i>seconds</i> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router(config)# cdp timer 20</pre>	<p>Specifies the frequency at which CDP update packets are sent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>By default, when CDP is enabled, CDP update packets are sent at a frequency of once every 60 seconds.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> A lower timer setting causes CDP updates to be sent more frequently.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this example, CDP update packets are configured to be sent at a frequency of once every 20 seconds.</li> </ul>
<b>Step 5</b>	<b>commit</b>	
<b>Step 6</b>	(Optional) <b>show cdp</b> <b>Example:</b> <pre>RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp</pre>	<p>Displays global CDP information.</p> <p>The output displays the CDP version running on the router, the hold time setting, and the timer setting.</p>

## Monitoring CDP

This task shows how to monitor CDP.



**Note** The commands can be entered in any order.

### SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show cdp entry** { \* | *entry-name* } [**protocol** | **version**]
2. **show cdp interface** [*type interface-path-id* | **location node-id**]
3. **show cdp neighbors** [*type interface-path-id* | **location node-id**] [**detail**]
4. **show cdp traffic** [**location node-id**]

### DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>show cdp entry</b> { *   <i>entry-name</i> } [ <b>protocol</b>   <b>version</b> ] <b>Example:</b>	Displays information about a specific neighboring device or all neighboring devices discovered using CDP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp entry *	
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>show cdp interface</b> [ <i>type interface-path-id</i>   <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp interface pos 0/0/0/1	Displays information about the interfaces on which CDP is enabled.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>show cdp neighbors</b> [ <i>type interface-path-id</i>   <b>location node-id</b> ] [ <b>detail</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp neighbors	Displays detailed information about neighboring devices discovered using CDP.
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>show cdp traffic</b> [ <b>location node-id</b> ] <b>Example:</b> RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp traffic	Displays information about the traffic gathered between devices using CDP.

## Examples

The following is sample output for the **show cdp neighbors** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater

Device ID         Local Intrfce   Holdtme    Capability   Platform   Port ID
router1           Mg0/0/CPU0/0    177        T S          WS-C2924M  Fa0/12
router2           PO0/4/0/0       157        R            12008/GRP  PO0/4/0/1
```

The following is sample output for the **show cdp neighbors** command. In this example, the optional *type instance* arguments are used in conjunction with the **detail** optional keyword to display detailed information about a CDP neighbor. The output includes information on both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp neighbors POS 0/4/0/0 detail

-----
Device ID: uut-user
SysName : uut-user
Entry address(es):
IPv4 address: 1.1.1.1
IPv6 address: 1::1
IPv6 address: 2::2
Platform: cisco 12008/GRP, Capabilities: Router
Interface: POS0/4/0/3
Port ID (outgoing port): POS0/2/0/3
Holdtime : 177 sec

Version :
```

```
Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 0.0.0[Default]
Copyright (c) 2005 by cisco Systems, Inc.

advertisement version: 2
```

The following is sample output for the **show cdp entry** command. In this example, the optional *entry* argument is used to display entry information related to a specific CDP neighbor.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp entry router2

advertisement version: 2

-----
Device ID: router2
SysName : router2
Entry address(es):
Platform: cisco 12008/GRP, Capabilities: Router
Interface: POS0/4/0/0
Port ID (outgoing port): POS0/4/0/1
Holdtime : 145 sec

Version :
Cisco IOS XR Software, Version 0.48.0[Default]
Copyright (c) 2004 by cisco Systems, Inc.

advertisement version: 2
```

The following is sample output for the **show cdp interface** command. In this example, CDP information related to Packet over SONET/SDH (POS) interface 0/4/0/0 is displayed.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp interface pos 0/4/0/0

POS0/4/0/0 is Up
  Encapsulation HDLC
  Sending CDP packets every 60 seconds
  Holdtime is 180 seconds
```

The following is sample output for the **show cdp traffic** command:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp traffic

CDP counters :
  Packets output: 194, Input: 99
  Hdr syntax: 0, Chksum error: 0, Encaps failed: 0
  No memory: 0, Invalid packet: 0, Truncated: 0
  CDP version 1 advertisements output: 0, Input: 0
  CDP version 2 advertisements output: 194, Input: 99
  Unrecognize Hdr version: 0, File open failed: 0
```

The following is sample output for the **show cdp traffic** command. In this example, the optional **location** keyword and *node-id* argument are used to display information about the traffic gathered between devices using CDP from the specified node.

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp traffic location 0/4/cpu0

CDP counters :
  Packets output: 16, Input: 13
```

```
Hdr syntax: 0, Chksum error: 0, Encaps failed: 0
No memory: 0, Invalid packet: 0, Truncated: 0
CDP version 1 advertisements output: 0, Input: 0
CDP version 2 advertisements output: 16, Input: 13
Unrecognize Hdr version: 0, File open failed: 0
```

## Configuration Examples for Implementing CDP

### Enabling CDP: Example

The following example shows how to configure CDP globally and then enable CDP on Packet over SONET/SDH (POS) interface 0/3/0/0:

```
cdp
 interface POS0/3/0/0
  cdp
```

### Modifying Global CDP Settings: Example

The following example shows how to modify global CDP settings. In this example, the timer setting is set to 20 seconds, the hold-time setting is set to 30 seconds, and the version of CDP used to communicate with neighboring devices is set to CDPv1:

```
cdp timer 20
 cdp holdtime 30
 cdp advertise v1
```

The following example shows how to use the **show cdp** command to verify the CDP global settings:

```
RP/0/RSP0/CPU0:router# show cdp

Global CDP information:
  Sending CDP packets every 20 seconds
  Sending a holdtime value of 30 seconds
  Sending CDPv2 advertisements is not enabled
```

## Additional References

The following sections provide references related to implementing CDP on Cisco IOS XR software.

**Related Documents**

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco IOS XR CDP commands	<i>CDP Commands on Cisco IOS XR Software</i> module of <i>System Management Command Reference for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>
Cisco IOS XR commands	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Commands Master List</i>
Getting started with Cisco IOS XR Software	<i>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router Getting Started Guide</i>
Information about user groups and task IDs	<i>Configuring AAA Services on Cisco IOS XR Software</i> module of <i>System Security Configuration Guide for Cisco ASR 9000 Series Routers</i>

**Standards**

Standards	Title
No new or modified standards are supported by this feature, and support for existing standards has not been modified by this feature.	—

**MIBs**

MIBs	MIBs Link
—	To locate and download MIBs using Cisco IOS XR software, use the Cisco MIB Locator found at the following URL and choose a platform under the Cisco Access Products menu: <a href="http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/ctk/mibs.shtml">http://cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/ctk/mibs.shtml</a>

**RFCs**

RFCs	Title
No new or modified RFCs are supported by this feature, and support for existing RFCs has not been modified by this feature.	—

**Technical Assistance**

Description	Link
The Cisco Technical Support website contains thousands of pages of searchable technical content, including links to products, technologies, solutions, technical tips, and tools. Registered Cisco.com users can log in from this page to access even more content.	<a href="http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html">http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html</a>

